

Chương 12

MỆNH ĐỀ VÀ CỤM TỪ (CLAUSES AND PHRASES)

A. CỤM TỪ VÀ MỆNH ĐỀ CHỈ MỤC ĐÍCH (PHRASES AND CLAUSES OF PURPOSE)

I. CỤM TỪ CHỈ MỤC ĐÍCH (Phrases of purpose)

1. Để diễn tả mục đích khẳng định, ta dùng cụm từ bắt đầu bằng *to-infinitive*, *in order to* hoặc *so as to*.

to-infinitive		
in order to	+	verb (bare-inf.)
so as to		

I went out **to post** letter

Tôi ra ngoài để gửi thư.

We shouted **in order to warn** everyone of the danger.

Chúng tôi hét lên để báo cho mọi người về sự nguy hiểm.

They gave me some money, **so as to buy** some food.

Họ đã cho tôi ít tiền để mua một ít thức ăn.

2. Để diễn tả mục đích phủ định ta dùng cụm từ bắt đầu bằng *so as not to* hoặc *in order not to*.

She is hurrying **in order not to miss** the bus.

(Cô ta đang đi vội để không bị lỡ xe buýt.)

He studied hard **so as not to fail** in the exam.

(Anh ấy học chăm chỉ để không bị thi rớt.)

3. **For + danh từ** cũng có thể được dùng để nói đến mục đích của ai khi làm điều gì đó.

I went to the store **for some bread**.

(Tôi đi đến cửa hàng để mua một ít bánh mì)

[= I went to the store **to buy some bread**.]

Chúng ta có thể dùng *to-infinitive* hoặc *for + verb-ing* để nói về công dụng của một vật.

This knife is only used **to cut/for cutting** bread.

(Con dao này chỉ được dùng để cắt bánh mì.)

+ Nhưng chúng ta không dùng **for + verb-ing** để nói về một hành động cụ thể.

I used this knife **to cut** bread.

Tôi dùng con dao này để cắt bánh mì.

[~~NOT I used this knife for cutting bread.~~]

Cấu trúc **For + object + to-infinitive** có thể được dùng để nói đến mục đích liên quan hành động của một người nào khác.

I left the door unlocked for Harry **to get in**

(Tôi đã không khóa cửa để Harry vào được)

II. MỆNH ĐỀ TRẠNG NGŨ CHỈ MỤC ĐÍCH (Adverb clauses of purpose)

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ mục đích là mệnh đề phụ được dùng để chỉ mục đích của hành động ở mệnh đề chính. Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ mục đích thường được bắt đầu bằng **so that** hoặc **in order that**.

S + V +	so that	+ S +	will/would	+ V (bare-inf)
	in order that		can/could	
			may/might	

She wants to stay here **so that** she can perfect her English.

(Cô ấy muốn sống ở đây để cô có thể hoàn thiện vốn tiếng Anh)

We wore warm clothes **in order that** we might not get cold.

(Chúng tôi mặc quần áo ấm để không bị lạnh)

- **will/ can/may** được dùng để diễn đạt mục đích ở hiện tại (present purpose) và **would/ could / might** được dùng để diễn đạt mục đích ở quá khứ (past purpose).

Put the milk in the refrigerator **so that** it **won't** spoil.

(Hãy cho sữa vào tủ lạnh để sữa không bị hỏng)

We **moved** to London **so that** we **could** visit our parents more often.

(Chúng tôi chuyển đến London để có thể thăm cha mẹ thường xuyên hơn.)

- Đôi khi thì hiện tại đơn (present simple) mang nghĩa tương lai cũng có thể được dùng sau **so that/in order that**.

Send the letter express **so that** she **gets/will get** it before Tuesday.

(Hãy gửi thư nhanh để cô ấy nhận được vào trước thứ Ba)

Lưu ý: Khi mệnh đề chính và mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ mục đích không cùng chủ ngữ thì không nên dùng cụm từ chỉ mục đích (phrase of purpose). Nhưng ta có thể dùng cấu trúc **For + object + to-infinitive**.

Ex: I left the door unlocked **so that** Harriet **could get in**

Or: I left the door unlocked **for** Harriet **to get in**.

EXERCISES

1. Put one suitable word in each space. Contractions count as one word.

1. I wrote the date in my diary.....*so.that*.....I wouldn't forget it.
2. Most tourists come herevisit the ancient temples.
3. Mary called a meeting.announce the team.
4. The thief..... in black so that nobody see him.
5. Jack came to me.....advice.
6. Our teacher made us sit far apart so that we.....cheat.
7. I'll leave the box open so that you.....help yourself.
8. Lisa got up early so that she.....finish her homework.

2. Combine the ideas, using a clause of purpose.

1. Rachel wanted to watch the news. She turned on the TV.
2. I'll post the card today. I want it to get there on Daniel's birthday.
3. Please turn down the radio. I want to be able to get to sleep.
4. She locked the door. She didn't want to be disturbed.
5. I gave her my address. I wanted her to contact me.
6. I'm going to cash a check. I want to make sure that I have enough money to go shopping.
7. Please arrive early. We want to be able to start the meeting on time.
8. I slowed down. I wanted the car behind to be able to overtake.
9. Jackson is planning to take a semester off. He wants to travel in Europe.
10. The man spoke very slowly. He wanted me to understand what he said
11. I whispered. I didn't want anybody else to hear our conversation.
12. I'll give you a map. I want you to find the way all right.
13. Please be quiet. I want to be able to hear what Sharon is saying.
14. The little boy pretended to be sick. He wanted to stay home from school.
15. I turned off the TV. I wanted my roommate to study in peace and quiet.

3. Rewrite each sentence so that it contains to word in bold.

1. I went to the shops to get some eggs.

for

.....

2. Nicola came here for a meeting with the director.

to

.....

3. We went on holiday to have a rest.

for

.....

4. Mike plays chess for relaxation.

to

.....

5. I opened the window to let in some air.

for

.....

6. Cristina went shopping to buy some new clothes.

for

.....

7. I went to a private school for English lessons.

to

.....

8. Sam went to a specialist to get treatment.

for

.....

4. Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence.

1. Paul had to go to the doctor's, and left work early.

Paul...*left work early*.....so that...*he could go*.....to the doctor's.

2. The school was rebuilt because it wasn't large enough.

The school.....in order to..... larger.

3. Sophia wanted Jack to call her, and gave him her phone number.

Sophia.....so that..... her.

4. I might get sunburnt, so I'll put on some suntan oil.

I'll.....so that.....sunburnt.

5. Cathy hid the presents and nobody saw them.

Cathy.....so that.....them.

6. We wanted people to dance, so we had the party in a large hall.

We.....so that.....dance.

7. Dick wanted to get a good seat, so he arrived early.

Dick.....so that.....a good seat.

8. I couldn't see well in the cinema, and changed seats.

I.....so that.....better.

9. We didn't want to feel hungry, so we took some sandwiches.

We took.....so that we.....

10. Harry wanted his friends to notice him so he wore a funny hat.

Harry.....so that..... him.

5. Change phrases of purpose to clauses of purpose or vice versa.

1. Melanie was hurrying in order not to miss her bus.
2. Ah borrowed an eraser so that he could erase a mistake in his composition
3. Most people work to earn money.
4. I wish we had a garden for the children to play in.
5. She is learning English so that she can study in the United States.
6. The staff are working at weekends so as not to delay the project any further.
7. Can we stop for me to buy a newspaper?
8. We moved to London so that we could visit our parents more often.
9. We're having to borrow money in order to pay our bills.
10. I left the door open so that Harry could get in.
11. I'm going to be very careful so that I won't have an accident.
12. The government took these measures in order to reduce crime.
13. He wore glasses and false beard so that he wouldn't be recognized.
14. I lowered the volume on the TV set so as not to disturb my neighbors.
15. Yesterday I took my umbrella so that I wouldn't get wet.

6. Comment on what each person says. Use the word in brackets.

1. Ilona : I'm learning English. I want to get a better job. (to)
Ilona is learning English to get a better job.
2. Claude : I study encyclopedias. Then I can answer quiz questions, (so that)
3. Vicky : I'm saving up. I'm planning a holiday. (for)
4. Nick : I keep a dog. It guards the house. (to)
5. Olivia : I booked a babysitter. I wanted to go out for the evening. (so that)
6. Jessica: I'm going on a diet. I want to lose weight. (in order to)
7. Trevor: I often switch off the heating. It. saves money. (to)
8. Sarah : I had to go to Birmingham. I had a business meeting. (for)
9. Emma: I wore boots because I didn't want my feet to get wet. (so that)
10. Mark : I'm saving my money. I'm planning to travel in Europe next Summer. (in order to)

B. CỤM TỪ VÀ MỆNH ĐỀ CHỈ KẾT QUẢ (PHRASES AND CLAUSES OF RESULT)

I. CỤM TỪ CHỈ KẾT QUẢ (Phrases of result)

1. **TOO** (*quá...không thể*): được dùng trước tính từ (adjective) hoặc trạng từ (adverb).

too + adj/adv + to-infinitive

She is **too young** to get married

Cô ấy quá trẻ để kết hôn.

They spoke **too quickly** to understand

Họ nói nhanh quá không thể hiểu được.

- *Too much* và *too many* (noun) thường được dùng trước danh từ (noun)

Andrew spent **too much time** working.

(Andrew đã dành quá nhiều thời gian cho công việc)

There are **too many people** at the entrance.

(Có quá nhiều người ở lối ra vào)

2. **ENOUGH** (đủ ...để có thể): được dùng sau tính từ và trạng từ.

Adj/adv + enough + to-infinitive

Mary is **old enough** to do what she wants.

(Mary đã đủ lớn để có thể làm những gì cô ta muốn)

He didn't jump **high enough** to win a prize.

(Anh ta nhảy chưa đủ cao để có thể đoạt giải.)

Enough thường đứng trước danh từ.

enough + noun + to-infinitive

I have **enough strength** to lift that box.

(Tôi đủ khỏe để nhấc cái thùng đó.)

We haven't got **enough money** to go on holiday.

(Chúng tôi không có đủ tiền để đi nghỉ mát.)

+ *Enough* có thể được dùng không có danh từ theo sau nếu như nghĩa của câu đã rõ ràng.

I'll lend you some money if you haven't go **enough**.

(Tôi sẽ cho bạn mượn ít tiền nếu bạn không có đủ)

Lưu ý: Cụm từ với *for* có thể được dùng sau *too* và *enough*.

too + adj/ adv + for + noun/pronoun (+ to -infinitive)
adj/ adv + enough + for + noun/pronoun (+ to -infinitive)

The food was too hot for me to eat.

Thức ăn quá nóng tôi không ăn được.

I haven't enough money for holiday

Tôi chưa có đủ tiền để đi du lịch.

II. MỆNH ĐỀ TRẠNG NGỮ CHỈ KẾT QUẢ (Adverb clauses of result)

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ kết quả là mệnh đề phụ được dùng để chỉ kết quả do hành động của mệnh đề chính gây ra.

1. SO ... THAT (*quá...đến nỗi; đến nỗi mà*)

Subject + verb + so + adj/ adv + main clause	that + subject + verb adverbial clause of result
--	--

He ran so quickly that I could not catch him.

(Nó chạy nhanh đến nỗi tôi không thể bắt kịp nó)

He played the violin with such skill that everybody admired him.

(Anh ta chơi đàn violông hay đến nỗi mọi người đều thán phục)

The car was so expensive that I couldn't buy it.

Chiếc ô tô đắt quá tôi không thể mua được.

Khi tính từ là *much, many, few, little* thì có thể có danh từ theo sau:

so many/few + plural countable noun + that so much/little + uncountable noun + that
--

She had so many children that she couldn't remember their dates of birth.

(Bà ta có nhiều con đến nỗi bà ta không thể nhớ ngày sinh của chúng)

There were so few people at the meeting that it was canceled.

(Có ít người tham dự cuộc họp đến nỗi nó bị hủy bỏ)

He has invested so much money in the project that he can't abandon it now.

(Anh ta đã đầu tư vào dự án này nhiều tiền đến nỗi bây giờ anh ta không thể từ bỏ nó.)

I have got so little time that I can't manage to have lunch with you.

(Tôi có ít thời gian đến nỗi tôi không thu xếp để ăn trưa với anh được)

- Một cấu trúc khác của "SO ... THAT"

S + V + so + adj + a + singular count. noun + that

It was so hot a day that we decided to stay indoors.

(Trời nóng đến nỗi chúng tôi quyết định ở nhà không đi đâu cả.)

It was so interesting a book that he couldn't put it down.

(Cuốn sách hay đến nỗi anh ta không thể đặt nó xuống)

S + V + such + (a/an) + adjective + noun + that + S + V

It was **such a heavy piano that** we couldn't move it.

(Chiếc dương cầm nặng đến nỗi chúng tôi không thể di chuyển nó)

They had **such fierce dogs that** no one dared to go near their house.

(Họ có những con chó dữ đến nỗi không ai dám đi gần nhà họ)

It was **such horrible weather that** we spent whole day indoors.

(Thời tiết khó chịu đến nỗi chúng tôi ở trong nhà suốt ngày)

Chúng ta cũng có thể dùng *such* trước danh từ không có tính từ.

She's **such a baby that** we never dare to leave her alone.

(Nó trẻ con đến nỗi chúng tôi không bao giờ dám để nó một mình)

He showed **such concern that** people took him to be a relative.

(Anh ta tỏ ra lo lắng đến nỗi mọi người tưởng anh ta là họ hàng thân thích.)

Lưu ý:

- Không dùng *a/an* trước danh từ số nhiều (plural nouns) và danh từ không đếm được (uncountable nouns).

They are ~~such~~ old shoes. [NOT ... ~~such an old shoes~~]

It was ~~such~~ lovely weather. [NOT ... ~~such a lovely weather~~]

- So được dùng với *many, much, few, little*; **such** được dùng với *a lot (of)*.

Why did you buy **so much** food?

(Sao bạn mua nhiều thức ăn quá vậy?)

= Why did you buy **such a lot of** food?

- That có thể được bỏ.

She was **so** angry (that) she couldn't speak.

(bà ta giận đến mức không nói được)

EXERCISES

1. Complete the answers to the questions. Use *too* or *enough* with the word in brackets.

1. A: Is she going to get married?

B: No, she's not _____.(old)

2. A: I need to talk to you about something.

B: Well, I'm afraid I'm _____ to you now. (busy)

3. A: Let's go to the cinema.

B: No, it's _____ to the cinema. (late)

4. A: Why don't we sit in the garden?

B: It's not _____ in the garden, (warm)

5. A: Would you like to be a politician?

B: No, I'm _____ a politician, (nice)

6. A: Do you want to play tennis today?

B: No, I haven't got _____ tennis today. (energy)

7. A: Did you hear what he was saying?

B: No, we were _____ what he was saying, (far away)

8. A: Can he read a newspaper in English?

B: No, he doesn't know _____ a newspaper. (English)

9. A: Why don't you put the wallet in your pocket?

B: It's _____ in my pocket. (big)

10. A: I think you should apply for the job.

B: I'm afraid I haven't got _____. (qualifications)

2. Make one sentence from two. Use too or enough and a phrase with for or a to-infinitive.

1. We couldn't eat the food. It was very hot.

2. A taxi would have been best. But I didn't have much money.

3. Sarah can't take a day off. She's very busy.

4. A picnic would be nice. But it's wet.

5. Nobody could move the piano. It was very heavy.

6. I don't wear this coat in winter. It isn't warm.

7. All my guests will need chairs. But I haven't got very many.

8. I can't explain the situation. It's complicated.

9. Three people can't sit on this sofa. It isn't wide.

10. I couldn't carry the equipment. I had such a lot.

11. We couldn't climb over the wall. It was very high.

12. Natasha wants to be a professional musician. She's very good.

13. We shouldn't swim in this river. The water isn't clean.

14. You can't see some things without a microscope. They are very small.

15. He didn't get the job. He wasn't experienced.

3. Put in *so*, *such* or *such a*.

1. Mark has.....beautiful eyes that she fell in love with him at first sight.

2. My wife is.....intelligent that she can run her own business now.

3. Jill and I hadstimulating conversations that I was immediately attracted to her.

4. His family was..... a welcoming group of people that I immediately felt accepted.
5.witty was her husband that she couldn't stop laughing in their first conversation.
6. Jack had.....few financial difficulties that I found him very stable.
7. Rhonda had.....many friends that I was sure she was a special person.
8. I had.....an easy feeling to be there that I wanted to go back there again.
9. He was.....patient with children that he became their best friend.
10. We had.....a good time together that we'll never forget it.
11. The children had.....much fun at the carnival that they begged to go again.
12. The food at the hotel was.....awful. I've never eaten..... awful food.
13. The test was.....easy that everyone got a high score.
14. I didn't realize you lived.....long way from the city center.
15. I feel like I have.....little energy that I wonder if I'm getting sick.

4. Combine the sentences using *so... that*

1. The weather was hot. You could fry an egg on the sidewalk.
2. I couldn't understand her. She talked too fast.
3. Grandpa held me tightly when he hugged me. I couldn't breathe for a moment.
4. There were few people at the meeting. It was canceled.
5. Ted couldn't get to sleep last night. He was worried about the exam.
6. Jerry got angry. He put his fist through the wall.
7. I have many problems. I can use all the help you can give me.
8. I can't figure out what this sentence says. His handwriting is illegible.
9. It took us only ten minutes to get there. There was little traffic.
10. Too many people came to the meeting. There were not enough seats for everyone.

5. Combine the sentences using *such ... that*.

1. We took a walk. It was a nice day.
2. It was an expensive car. We couldn't afford to buy it.
3. I don't feel like going to class. We're having beautiful weather.
4. The classroom has comfortable chairs. The students find it easy to fall asleep.
5. The tornado struck with great force. It lifted automobiles off the ground.

6. This is good coffee. I think I'll have another cup.

7. Karen is a good pianist. I'm surprised she didn't go into music professionally.

8. It was a good book. I couldn't put it down.

9. We did a lot of gymnastics. We couldn't walk afterwards.

10. They were beautiful flowers. We took a photograph of them.

6. Match the sentences and combine them, using *so* or *such*.

A	B
1. Sarah was late home.	- All the tickets sold out.
2. Mike hadn't cooked for a long time.	- He wouldn't speak to anyone.
3. The piano was heavy.	- He'd almost forgotten how to.
4. Tom was annoyed about United losing.	- It kept all the neighbors awake.
5. The band was a big attraction.	- Mark had already gone to bed.
6. Vicky had a lot of work to do.	- You could hear it from miles away.
7. The party made a lot of noise.	- We spent the whole day indoors.
8. She speaks English well	- Mike and Harriet couldn't move it.
9. It was horrible weather.	- She was sure she'd never finish it.
10. The music was loud.	- You would think it was her native language.

**C. CỤM TỪ & MỆNH ĐỀ CHỈ NGUYÊN NHÂN HOẶC LÝ DO
(PHRASES AND CLAUSES OF CAUSE OR REASON)**

I. CỤM TỪ CHỈ NGUYÊN NHÂN HOẶC LÝ DO (Phrases of cause or reason)

Cụm từ chỉ nguyên nhân hoặc lý do thường được bắt đầu bằng các giới từ **because of, due to** hoặc **owing to** (do; vì; bởi vì)

because of due to/owing to	+ noun/ Pronoun/ gerund phrase
---	---------------------------------------

We didn't go out **due to** the cold weather.

(Vì trời lạnh nên chúng tôi không đi chơi.)

They are here **because of** us.

(Họ ở đây vì chúng tôi)

Owing to his carelessness we had an accident.

(Do sự bất cẩn của anh ta mà chúng tôi bị tai nạn)

She stayed home **because of** feeling unwell.

(Cô ấy ở nhà vì cảm thấy không được khỏe)

ThichTiengAnh.Com - Website chia sẻ đề thi, tài liệu Tiếng Anh hay, mới nhất
II. MỆNH ĐỀ TRẠNG NGỮ CHỈ NGUYÊN NHÂN HOẶC LÝ DO
(Adverb clauses of cause or reason)

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ nguyên nhân hoặc lý do thường được nối với mệnh đề chính bằng các liên từ: **because, since, as, seeing that** (do; vì; bởi vì).

because/ since/ as/ seeing that + subject + verb

Tom took the train to Auckland **because** he hated flying.

(Tom đón tàu đến Auckland bởi vì anh ấy ghét đi máy bay)

As it was getting late, we decided to come home.

(Bởi vì trời sắp tối nên chúng tôi quyết định về nhà)

Since he was late, I decided to go without him.

(Bởi vì anh ấy đến muộn nên tôi không đi cùng anh ấy)

Seeing that I have no money, I can't buy the book.

(Vì không có tiền, tôi không thể mua cuốn sách ấy)

Lưu ý:

- **Since, as, seeing that** thường được dùng khi người nghe/người đọc đã biết lý do hoặc lý không phải là phần quan trọng trong câu. Sự nhấn mạnh thuộc mệnh đề chính.

Since you won't help me, / must do the job myself.

(Vì anh không giúp tôi nên tôi phải tự làm việc đó)

We watched TV all evening **as** we had nothing to do.

(Chúng tôi xem ti vi suốt buổi tối vì chúng tôi chẳng có việc gì để làm)

- **Because** được dùng để nhấn mạnh lý, cung cấp thông tin mới mà người nghe/người đọc chưa biết. Sự nhấn mạnh thuộc mệnh đề chỉ lý do.

Joe started jogging **because** his doctor told him to.

(Joe bắt đầu chạy bộ vì bác sĩ bảo anh ta làm thế.)

Because they live near us, we see them quite often.

(Vì họ sống gần chúng tôi nên chúng tôi thường gặp họ)

- Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ lý do có thể đứng trước hoặc sau mệnh đề chính. Khi mệnh đề trạng ngữ đứng trước, giữa hai mệnh đề có dấu phẩy (,).

Because it was cold, I turned the heating on.

Or: I turned the heating on **because** it was cold.

(Tôi bật máy sưởi lên vì trời lạnh.)

- Khi đổi từ mệnh đề sang cụm từ, nếu 2 chủ ngữ giống nhau ta có thể dùng cụm danh động từ (gerund phrase).

She stayed at home **because she was sick**.

→ She stayed at home **because of being sick**.

(Cô ta ở nhà vì bị bệnh)

1. Match the two halves of the sentence. Then write the full sentence, using the word in brackets. Add commas where necessary.

A	B
1. Yesterday was a public day	- she was very popular, (since)
2. We didn't want to wake anybody up	- we ate out. (as)
3. We didn't know what time it was	- it explains everything very clearly. (because)
4. It was a nice day	- none of us had a watch, (because)
5. The door was open	- the teacher decided to give it again, (since)
6. You paid for the theater tickets	- she missed the bus. (because)
7. Oil is an irreplaceable natural resource	- we went for a walk by the sea. (as)
8. We didn't see Lisa for a long time	- we didn't recognize her. (because)
9. Lilian was late for work	- we must do whatever we can to conserve it. (since)
10. Sonia was tired	- we came in very quietly, (as)
11. Eve had an attractive personality	- she felt weak, (because)
12. Mother had burnt the dinner	- we didn't have to go to work, (since)
13. It's a really useful book	- please let me pay for our dinner, (as)
14. Ellie hadn't fully recovered yet	- she'd been working very hard, (because)
15. All the students had done poorly on the test	- I walked in. (since)

2. Rewrite these sentences, using *because*.

1. Due to the cold weather, we stayed home.
2. Most people hear jogging is a good exercise, so they begin to jog.
3. People like to live in this country because of its healthy climate.
4. A computer can be used for various purposes, so it becomes very popular nowadays.
5. Stacey retired in 1987, partly because of ill health.
6. We were late for the meeting due to the heavy traffic.
7. Harry had to stay in hospital because of his broken leg.
8. Our leader couldn't attend the meeting, so it was canceled.

3. Combine each pair of sentences without changing their order. Put the word in brackets either at the beginning or in the middle.

1. I'm going to move abroad. The weather is so awful here. (because)
.....
2. My father gave up his job. His health is poor. (on account of)
.....
3. I'd worked all weekend. I had Monday off. (seeing)
.....
4. I didn't buy the coat. It was so expensive. (as)
.....
5. I feel much more confident. I'm qualified. (now)
.....
6. The car is in excellent condition. It's a bargain. (because of)
.....
7. I can't talk now. I'm working. (because)
.....
8. There is so much street crime. You had better take a taxi. (since)
.....
9. Joshua helped us. He was being kind. (out of)
.....
10. People are staying at home. They are afraid of terrorism. (because of)
.....

4. Change clauses of reason to phrases of reason.

1. Jim had to give up jogging because he had sprained his ankle severely.
2. The water in most rivers is unsafe to drink because it's polluted.
3. We had to stay in London an extra day because it was foggy at the airport.
4. Bill has to do all of the cooking and cleaning because his wife is ill.
5. We all have received the best of everything because our parents are generous.
6. I couldn't get to sleep last night because it was noisy in the next apartment.
7. John has to sit in the front row in class because he has poor eyesight.
8. We stopped our car because the traffic lights turned red.
9. She couldn't see the road because the wall was too high.
10. We postponed our trip because the driving conditions were bad.
11. Sarah will not walk across a bridge because she's afraid of heights.
12. Mark's doctor has advised him to exercise regularly because he is overweight.
13. Piranhas can devour an entire cow in several minutes because their teeth are extremely sharp.

14. Most students couldn't do the final exam because it was extremely difficult.

15. John succeeded in his exam because he worked hard and methodically.

D. CỤM TỪ VÀ MỆNH ĐỀ CHỈ SỰ TƯƠNG PHẢN (PHRASES AND CLAUSES OF CONCESSION)

I. CỤM TỪ CHỈ SỰ TƯƠNG PHẢN (Phrases of concession)

Cụm từ chỉ sự tương phản thường được bắt đầu bằng các giới từ **in spite** hoặc **despite** (mặc dù, cho dù, bất chấp).

In spite of	+ noun/ pronoun/ gerund phrase
Despite	

In spite of/Despite the rain, we enjoyed our holiday.

(Mặc dù trời mưa, chúng tôi vẫn thích thú trong kỳ nghỉ)

I didn't get the job **despite** my qualifications.

(Tôi không nhận được công việc đó mặc dù có đủ bằng cấp)

Các cụm từ *in spite of / despite this, in spite of/ despite that, in spite of/ despite what, in spite of/ despite the fact (that)*, v.v. thường được theo sau bởi một mệnh đề (clause).

She wasn't well, but **in spite of/ despite this** she went to work.

(Cô ấy không được khỏe, nhưng dù vậy cô ấy vẫn đi làm.)

In spite of/ Despite what I said yesterday, we're still good friends.

(Dù hôm qua tôi đã nói gì đi nữa thì chúng ta vẫn mãi là bạn thân)

I couldn't sleep **in spite of/ despite** the fact (that) I was very tired.

(Tôi không thể ngủ dù thật sự là tôi rất mệt)

Lưu ý: Mệnh đề có **despite** hoặc **in spite of** có thể được đặt ở trước hoặc sau mệnh đề chính.

In spite of/ Despite the rain, we enjoyed our holiday.

We enjoyed our holiday **in spite of/ despite** the rain.

II. MỆNH ĐỀ TRẠNG NGỮ CHỈ SỰ TƯƠNG PHẢN (Adverb clauses of concession)

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ sự tương phản là mệnh đề phụ chỉ sự tương phản của hai hành động trong câu. Mệnh đề này thường được bắt đầu bằng các từ: **though, although, even though, no matter, whatever/ whoever/ wherever/ ...**

1. **Though, although, even though** (Dù, mặc dù, cho dù)

although/ though/even though + subject + verb
--

Although he smokes 40 cigarettes a day, she is quite fit.

Mặc dù hút 40 điếu thuốc một ngày, anh ta vẫn hoàn toàn khỏe mạnh

Even though I was really tired, I couldn't sleep.

Cho dù tôi thật sự mệt, nhưng tôi vẫn không thể chợp mắt được.

Though they lack official support, they continue their struggle.

(Dù cho họ không được chính quyền ủng hộ, họ vẫn tiếp tục đấu tranh)

Lưu ý:

- Trong đàm thoại, chúng ta có thể dùng **though** ở cuối câu với nghĩa tương đương với *but* hoặc *however*.

The house isn't very nice. I like the garden **though**.

(Ngôi nhà không đẹp lắm. Thế nhưng tôi thích khu vườn)

[= but I like the garden]

I see him every day. I've never spoken to him **though**.

(Tôi gặp anh ta mỗi ngày. Tuy vậy tôi chưa bao giờ nói chuyện với anh ta.)

[= but I've never spoken to him]

- **Even though** được dùng để nhấn mạnh sự tương phản (*even though* có nét nghĩa mạnh hơn *although/ though*).

Even though I didn't understand a word, I kept smiling.

(Mặc dù tôi chẳng hiểu một từ nào, tôi vẫn mỉm cười.)

2. No matter, whatever (*Dù, cho, bất kể*)

No matter + what/ who/ when/ where/ why/ how (adj/ adv) + subject + verb

Whatever (+ noun)/ whoever/ whenever/ wherever/ however (+ adj) + subject + verb

No matter who you are, I still love you.

(Dù em có là ai đi nữa, anh vẫn yêu em)

Don't trust him, **no matter what** he says.

Phone me when you arrive, **no matter how** late it is.

(Hãy gọi điện cho tôi khi anh đến cho dù có muộn mấy đi chăng nữa)

Whatever problems you have, you can always come to me for help.

(Bất kể bạn gặp vấn đề gì, bạn luôn có thể đến nhờ tôi giúp đỡ.)

Whatever you say, I don't think he's the right man for you.

(Cho dù bạn có nói gì đi nữa tôi cũng nghĩ anh ta không phải là người thích hợp với bạn)

I'm not opening the door, **whoever** you are.

(Dù ông là ai đi nữa tôi cũng sẽ không mở cửa)

However much he eats, he never gets fat.

(Dù anh ta có ăn nhiều thế nào đi nữa anh ta cũng không bao giờ bị béo)

Lưu ý:

- Mệnh đề bắt đầu bằng *although, though, even though* có thể đứng trước hoặc sau mệnh đề chính.

- Mệnh đề bắt đầu bằng *no matter* hoặc *whatever* thường được đặt trước mệnh đề chính.

EXERCISES

1. Underline the correct word or phrase in each sentence.

1. I read the book you suggested. I didn't enjoy it, *although/however*.
2. *In spite of/Although* we warned him, Harry still got lost.
3. *Although/However* I like it here, I won't stay here long.
4. Cars are convenient. *On the other hand/Whereas*, they cause pollution.
5. I didn't have much time, *but/however* I managed to visit lots of places.
6. Catherine won the race, *although/despite* falling over.
7. *Although/In spite of* the delay, the train arrived on time.
8. I didn't manage to jump over the wall, *although/yet* I tried twice.

2. Complete each sentence with one suitable word.

1. Tim felt tired, he stayed up to finish his homework.
2. Sam didn't like skating, he went with his friends all the same.
3. I found French hard at first....., I soon started to enjoy it.
4. Jane kept running, though she knew she couldn't win.
5. Mike was lost, but he..... refused to look at the map.
6. Carol went to see the film, she had seen it before.
7. the rain, the school sports were a great success.
8. Helen won the swimming competition, in..... of her cold.

3. Complete the sentences with *although/ in spite of/ because/ because of*.

1. *Although*.....it rained a lot, we enjoyed our holiday.
2. Daniel forgot his passport.....having it in his list.
3. I couldn't get to sleep.....the noise.
4.I had nothing for lunch but an apple, I ate dinner early.
5. A lot of things went wrong.....all our careful plans.
6. She wasn't wearing a coat.....it was quite cold.
7. He only accepted the job.....the salary, which was very high.
8. I went home early.....I was feeling unwell.
9. I knew the truth, I decided not to tell them.

10. The villagers refused to leave.....the drought.
11. We decided not to go out for a mealwe were simply too tired.
12. Have you really got no money.....the fact that you've had a
13. Sarah can't climb up the tree.....her fear of heights.
14. Matthew looked quite fresh,he'd been playing squ
15.his age, John was not hired.....he had the sary qualifications.

4. Rewrite each sentence beginning as shown. Do not change the meaning.

1. Although it was snowing, we went out for a walk.
Despite *the snow, we went out for a walk*.....
2. Some experts think prices will fall, but others disagree.
While.....
3. Even though they were losing at half-time, City won in the end.
Despite.....
4. Despite the heat, Diana wore her winter clothes.
Although.....
5. Whereas last summer was good, this summer it's rained all the time.
Last summer was good.....
6. James had a headache, but he still read until late.
In spite of.....
7. Although Jon hadn't studied, he did well in the test.
Jon hadn't studied.....
8. Despite the cold weather, we all went for a walk.
Although.....
9. John has done well in French, but not so well in Maths.
While.....
10. I tried to persuade her. I didn't succeed, however.
Although
11. It was raining, but I went swimming anyway.
In spite of.....
12. Ann felt ill, but insisted on going to work.
Despite.....
13. In spite of his early lead, Hudson lost the race.
Although
14. I'm not going to pay, although I know that I should.
While

15. We expected Larry to accept the job, but he didn't.

Even though Larry

5. Make one sentence from two. Use the word(s) in brackets in your sentences.

1. I enjoyed the film. The story was silly. (*in spite of*)
2. We live in the same street. We hardly ever see each other. (*despite*)
3. My foot was injured. I managed to walk to the nearest village. (*although*)
4. They have very little money. They are happy. (*in spite of*)
5. I got very wet in the rain. I had an umbrella. (*even though*)
6. I couldn't sleep. I was tired. (*despite*)
7. He liked the sweater. He decided not to buy it. (*though*)
8. I didn't get the job. I had all the necessary qualifications. (*in spite of*)
9. Nick used to smoke. He seems to be in good health. (*although*)
10. I had turned on the air conditioner. It was still hot in the room, (*even though*)
11. Laura wants to fly. She feels afraid. (*in spite of the fact*)
12. Trevor didn't notice the sign. It was right in front of him. (*even though*)
13. I'm no better. I've taken the pills. (*despite the fact*)
14. Matthew doesn't know any French. It was one of his school subjects, (*though*)
15. Henry's friend is a millionaire. He hates spending money, (*despite*)
16. We couldn't get tickets. We queued for an hour. (*in spite of*)
17. I'd met her twice before. I didn't recognize her. (*although*)
18. Laura felt unwell. She went on working. (*in spite of this*)
19. I told the absolute truth. No one would believe me. (*even though*)
20. The goods were never delivered. We had received the promise. (*despite*)

6. Change clauses of concession to phrases,

1. Mr. Pike doesn't wear glasses though he is over sixty.
2. Although he had much experience in machinery, he didn't succeed in repairing this machine.
3. Although it got dark, they continued to work.
4. Although it was noisy, I kept on studying.
5. Although it rained heavily, I went to school on time.
6. Although he is strong, I'm not afraid of him.
7. Everybody has great regard for him though he is poor.
8. Although he had not finished the paper, he went to sleep.
9. Though he had been absent frequently, he was managed to pass the test.
10. He didn't stop his car though the traffic lights turned red.

7. Rewrite the sentences, using the word in brackets.

1. They are very rich, but they aren't happy. (*no matter*)
2. I'd rather have a room of my own though it's small. (*however*)
3. He got good jobs, but he was not satisfied. (*no matter*)
4. If you should do any job, you should do it devotedly. (*whatever*)
5. Anyone who gains the most points wins the competition. (*whoever*)
6. Although he had taken any kinds of exercise, he got fatter and fatter, (*whatever*)
7. Although he lived anywhere else, he always thought of his homeland, (*no matter*)
8. My roof leaks every time it rains, (*whenever*.)
9. He may say something, but don't trust him. (*no matter*)
10. You should study hard although you encounter difficulties. (*whatever*)
11. Although she is very intelligent, she can't answer my question. (*no matter*)
12. She would still love him even though he behaved very badly. (*however*)
13. Although the papers print any nonsense, some people always believe it. (*whatever*)
14. I'll find him, wherever he has gone, (*no matter*)
15. Phone me when you arrive, no matter how late it is. (*however*)

**E. AS IF, AS THOUGH, IT'S HIGH TIME,
IT'S TIME, WOULD RATHER**

1. AS IF, AS THOUGH

a. *As if, as though* được dùng để diễn đạt một người hoặc một vật nào đó trông như thế nào, nghe như thế nào, cảm thấy như thế nào..v...v.

Ann **sounds as if/ as though** she's got a cold.

Giọng An nghe có vẻ cô ấy bị cảm lạnh

The house **look as if** nobody was living in it.

Ngôi nhà trông có vẻ như không có người ở.

b. *As if, as though* được dùng để diễn tả một điều không thật hoặc trái với thực tế.

* Điều không có thật ở hiện tại

S + Vpresent + as if/as though + S + Vpast simple

The old lady dresses as if it **was/ were** winter even in the summer.

(*Ngay trong mùa hè mà quý bà đó vẫn mặc như thể đang mùa đông.*)

→ but it isn't winter

He talks as though he **knew** where she was.

(Anh ta nói như thể anh ta biết cô ta ở đâu.)

→ but he doesn't know

They look at me as if I **was/ were** mad.

(Họ nhìn tôi như thể tôi bị điên)

→ but I'm not

Lưu ý:

- Were có thể được dùng thay thế *was* (với các chủ từ *I, he, she, it*).

He ran as if he **was/were** running for his life.

(Anh ta chạy như thể đang gặp nguy)

- Động từ đứng trước *as if/ as though* có thể ở thì quá khứ mà không có sự thay đổi thì trong mệnh đề giả định.

They **look/ looked** at me as if I **were** mad.

* Điều không có thật ở quá khứ

S + Vpast + as if/as though + S + Vpast perfect

Tom looked tired as if he **had worked** very hard.

(Trông Tom có vẻ mệt mỏi như thể anh ta đã làm việc rất vất vả.)

→ but he didn't work hard

He talked about Rome as though he **had been** there himself.

(Anh ta nói về Rome như thể là chính anh ta đã đến đó.)

→ but he hasn't been to Rome

2. IT'S TIME, IT'S HIGH TIME

It's time/It's high time có thể được theo sau bởi:

a. Động từ nguyên mẫu có to (to-infinitive)

It's time/It's high time + (for + object) + to-infinitive

It's time to buy a new car.

(Đã đến lúc phải mua xe mới rồi.)

It's high time for the children to go to bed.

(Đã đến giờ bọn trẻ đi ngủ rồi)

b. Mệnh đề (động từ chia ở quá khứ nhưng mang nghĩa hiện tại)

It's time/It's high time + S + Vpast simple

Ten o'clock - It's time you **went** home.

(10 giờ rồi. Đã đến lúc bạn phải về nhà)

It's high time we **set** out.

(Đã đến lúc chúng ta lên đường.)

It's time the children were in bed.

(Đã đến giờ bọn trẻ đi ngủ.)

Lưu ý: Were có thể được dùng thay cho was.

It's time I was/ were in bed.

(Đã đến giờ tôi đi ngủ.)

3. WOULD RATHER

a. **Would rather** (thích...hơn) được dùng để diễn đạt những gì mà một người nào đó muốn thực hiện trong một tình huống cụ thể (không được dùng trong trường hợp tổng quát.) **Would rather (do) = would prefer (to do).**

* Ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai

S + would rather (+not) + V bare-inf.... (+-than+ V bare-inf)

I would rather stay at home tonight.

(Tôi nay tôi thích ở nhà hơn.)

Would you rather have tea or coffee?

(Bạn thích dùng trà hay cà phê hơn?)

I'm tired. I'd rather not go out this evening.

(Tôi mệt. Chiều nay tôi không thích đi chơi)

John would rather go for a swim than play tennis.

(John thích đi bơi hơn chơi quần vợt)

We'd rather walk than take a bus.

(Chúng tôi thích đi bộ hơn là đi xe buýt)

* Ở quá khứ

S + would rather (+ not) + have + V_{past participle} (+than)

We went by sea but I'd rather have gone by air.

(Chúng tôi đã đi bằng tàu thủy nhưng tôi thích đi bằng máy bay hơn)

→ I wanted to go by air but I didn't get my wish.

Tommy would rather have gone skiing than fishing last weekend.

(Kỳ nghỉ cuối tuần trước, Tommy đã thích đi trượt tuyết hơn là đi câu)

→ but he didn't get his wish

b. **Would rather** (mong; muốn) còn được dùng để diễn đạt nghĩa một người muốn người khác làm điều gì đó.

* Ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai

S + would rather (that) + S + V_{past simple}

I'd rather you went home now.

(Tôi muốn anh về nhà ngay bây giờ.)

I'd rather you **didn't tell** anyone what I said.

(Tôi không muốn bạn kể với bất kỳ ai những gì tôi đã nói.)

We'd rather she **was/ were** here tomorrow.

(Chúng tôi muốn cô ta có mặt ở đây vào ngày mai.)

* Ở quá khứ

S + would rather (that) + S + Vpast perfect

Roberto would rather we **hadn't left** yesterday.

(Roberto muốn hôm qua chúng tôi đã không ra đi.)

→ but we left yesterday

I would rather you **had met** my future wife.

(Tôi muốn là bạn đã gặp vợ sắp cưới của tôi.)

→ but you didn't meet

EXERCISES

1. Use the sentences in the box to make sentences with *as if*.

it has just been cut	he hadn't eaten for a week
it never gets fed	I'm going to be sick
she was enjoying it	she didn't want to come
he's been up all night	he meant what he was saying
they're going to get married	someone has been smoking here

- Carol had a bored expression on her face during the concert. She didn't look
- I don't think he was joking. He looked.....
- The grass is very short. It looks.....
- That poor dog looks.....
- I've just eaten too many chocolates. Now I'm feeling ill.
I feel.....
- I phoned Emma and invited her to the party but she wasn't very enthusiastic about it. She sounded.....
- Tom looks really awful. He looks.....
- Peter was extremely hungry and ate his dinner very quickly.
He ate.....
- From what Emma said, it sounds
- Do you smell something burning? It smells

2. Complete the sentences with *as if/ as though*.

1. Tim isn't the boss but he acts..... the boss.
2. The hole in my shirt wasn't made by a bullet, but it looks
by a bullet.
3. Barbara has met me many times before, but she looked at me
never me before.
4. I'm 20 years old, so please don't talk to mea-child.
5. She heard everything I said, but she went right on talking
a word I'd said.
6. Mark has many friends, but he looks so depressed..... a friend
in the world.
7. It was a long time ago that we first met but I remember it..... yesterday.
8. Steve has only met Nicole once but he talks about her..... a close
friend.
9. When Joanna came in from the rainstorm, she looked a shower
with her clothes on.
10. She will be here, but she spokehere.

3. Read the situation and write sentences with *It's time + clause (somebody did something)*.

1. You think the children should be in bed. It's already 11 o'clock.
2. You haven't had a holiday for a very long time. You need one now.
3. You're waiting for Mary. She is late. Why isn't she here yet?
4. You're sitting on a train waiting for it to leave the station. It's already five
minutes late.
5. You enjoy having parties. You haven't had one for a long time.
6. The company you work for is badly run. You think there should be some
changes.
7. It's 10 o'clock and Tim is still in bed. You think he should get up now.
8. You want your parents to stop treating Tommy like a child. He's 18 years
old.
9. You and your friends enjoy the picnic. But it's too late. You must go home
immediately.
10. The windows are very dirty. You think they should be cleaned now.

4. Complete the sentences with the suggestions in the list.

be an engineer	study Chinese
not go out	stay home
lie on the beach	not tell you.
go to an opera	

go out with their friends.....stay home with their parents

1. I went to the movies last night. I prefer opera to movies. I would rather
2. I studied French when I was in high school only because my parents wanted me to. I would rather.....
3. Jack's parents want him to become a doctor, but he'd rather
4. I know you want to know, but I'd rather.....I told Marge that I'd keep it a secret.
5. Sometimes teenagers would rather.....than
6. I would rather.....right after dinner at the restaurant last night, but my friends insisted on going to the cinema.
7. Tonight, I'd really rather..... I want to get a good night's sleep for the first time all week.
8. I don't want to do anything energetic. I'd rather.....

5. Choose the correct answer.

1. John would rather _____ free tomorrow.
A. is B. was C. be D. have been
2. I would rather he _____ her to his birthday party last Sunday.
A. have invited B. had invited C. invited D. would invite
3. We'd better take an umbrella with us because it looks as if it _____
A. is going to rain B. would rain
C. is raining D. rained
4. It's time we all _____ now.
A. had gone B. go C. should go D. went
5. It's high time you _____ the tea ready.
A. have got C. got C. get D. had got
6. I don't like Nick. He talks as if he _____ everything.
A. knew B. had known C. knows D. will know
7. I'd rather you _____ me now.
A. had paid B. is paying C. paid D. pay
8. You're very selfish. It's high time you _____ that you're not the most important person in the world.
A. realize B. had realized C. have realized D. realized
9. When I told them my plan, they looked at me as if I _____ mad.
A. was B. am C. had been D. will be
10. Jack spent his money as if he _____ a lottery.
A. won B. had won C. has won D. wins

11. Peter would rather _____ on a mattress than on the floor.
A. to sleep B. sleeping C. sleep D. have slept
12. The medicine made me feel dizzy. I felt as though the room _____ around and around.
A. were spinning B. will spin
C. spins D. is spinning
13. It's time for everybody _____ to bed.
A. go B. to go C. going D. went
14. Did you go to the concert last night? ~ Yes, but I'd rather _____ to the concert.
A. not go B. haven't gone
C. not have gone D. not had gone
15. It was so quiet that it seemed as if the earth _____
A. had stopped B. would stop
C. stopped D. had been stopped

6. Write the sentences, beginning with the words given.

1. I wasn't run over by a ten-ton truck.
I feel terrible. I feel as if.....
2. I like to eat at home better than to go to the restaurant.
I'd rather.....
3. I'd rather to go to the concert tonight.
I'd prefer.....
4. He spent his money like a billionaire.
He spent his money as if.....
5. We must go home now, it's a little late.
It's high time.....
6. You should review your lessons for the exams.
It's time you.....
7. English is not her native tongue.
She speaks English as if.....
8. I want you to stop fighting.
I wish.....
9. They didn't tell me the truth.
I'd rather.....
10. He'll come to my house tonight.
I'd rather.....

F. MỆNH ĐỀ SAU *WISH* VÀ *IF ONLY* (CLAUSE AFTER WISH AND IF ONLY)

Wish (ước gì, mong) và **if only** (ước gì, giá mà) thường được dùng để diễn đạt ước muốn (**if only** mạnh hơn và rõ ràng hơn **wish**). Sau **wish** và **if only**, là một mệnh đề chỉ sự ao ước, hoặc một điều kiện không có thật. Mệnh đề sau *wish* và *if only* được xem như một mệnh đề danh từ (noun clause).

Sau *wish* và *if only* có 3 loại mệnh đề được dùng để chỉ sự ao ước ở tương lai, hiện tại và quá khứ.

1. Ao ước ở tương lai (Future wish): mong muốn điều gì đó xảy ra hoặc muốn người nào đó làm điều gì đó.

Subject + wish(es)	+ subject + would (not) + verb (bare.inf)
It only	

I wish you **would** stop smoking.

(Tôi mong anh bỏ thuốc lá)

Tom wishes his neighbors **wouldn't** make so much noise.

(Tom ước gì những người hàng xóm của anh ấy không ồn ào như thế)

If only Jane **would** take the trip with me next Sunday.

(ước gì Chủ nhật tới Jane đi du lịch với tôi)

If only it **would** stop raining.

Ước gì trời ngừng mưa.

Lưu ý:

- Chủ ngữ của *wish* không thể cùng chủ ngữ với *would* do đó chúng ta không thể nói / *wish I would..* nhưng chúng ta có thể dùng *could*.

I wish I **could** attend your wedding next week.

[~~NOT I wish I would attend your wedding next week~~]

- *I wish...would...* được dùng khi nói về hành động và sự thay đổi, *would* không được dùng khi nói về một tình trạng.

I **wish** something exciting **would** happen.

(Tôi mong điều gì đó thú vị sẽ xảy ra.)

→ Cho hành động ở tương lai

But: My life isn't interesting. I wish my life **was** more interesting.

(Cuộc sống của tôi thật buồn tẻ. Ước gì cuộc sống của tôi thú vị hơn)

[~~NOT...my life would be more interesting~~]

2. Ao ước ở hiện tại (Present wish): diễn đạt mong ước về một điều không có thật hoặc không thể thực hiện được trong hiện tại.

Subject + wish(es) If only	+ subject + verb (Past simple)
---	---------------------------------------

I wish I **was/ were** rich. (*Ước gì tôi giàu*) → but I am poor now.

I wish I **could** swim. (*Ước gì tôi biết bơi.*) → but I can't.

If only Ben **was/ were** here, (*Ước gì có Ben ở đây*) → but Ben isn't here.

If only we **knew** where to look for him.

(*Giá mà chúng tôi biết phải tìm anh ta ở đâu...*) → but we don't know.

Lưu ý:

- **Would** không được dùng để diễn đạt mong ước về hiện tại, nhưng chúng ta có thể dùng *could*.

I feel so helpless. If only I **could** speak the language.

(*Tôi cảm thấy mình thật vô dụng. Giá mà tôi nói được ngôn ngữ đó.*)

[NOT If ~~only~~ I ~~would~~...]

- **Were** có thể được dùng thay cho *was* (I, he, she, it was/ were), nhất là trong lối văn trịnh trọng.

I wish I **was/ were** taller, I might be better at basketball.

(*Ước gì tôi cao hơn, tôi có thể chơi bóng rổ hay hơn*)

3. **Ao ước ở quá khứ (Past wish):** diễn đạt mong ước về một điều đã xảy ra trong quá khứ hoặc diễn đạt sự hối tiếc về một điều gì đó đã không xảy ra.

Subject + wish(es) If only	+ subject + Verb (Past perfect)
---	--

I wish I **hadn't failed** my exam last year.

(*Giá như năm ngoái tôi đã không thi rớt*)

→ but I failed my exam last year.

She wishes she **had had** enough money to buy the house.

→ but she didn't have enough money to buy it.

If only I **had met** her yesterday. (*Giá như hôm qua tôi đã gặp cô ấy*)

→ but I didn't meet her.

If only David **had been** a bit more carefully, he'd have been all right.

(*Giá như David cẩn thận hơn một chút, thì anh ta đã bình yên vô sự rồi.*)

Lưu ý:

- Chúng ta có thể dùng *could have + past participle* để diễn tả mong ước về quá khứ.

I wish I **could have been** at the wedding, but I was in New York.

(*Tôi ước tôi có thể dự đám cưới, nhưng tôi đã ở New York.*)

If only I wasn't/ weren't so fat. (*Giá mà tôi không quá mập*)

If only I weren't so fat, I would be able to get into this dress.

(*Giá mà tôi không quá mập, tôi đã có thể mặc chiếc áo đầm này.*)

- Wish có thể được dùng ở quá khứ mà không thay đổi thể giả định.

He **wished he knew** her address.

(*Anh ta ước gì anh ta biết địa chỉ của cô ấy*)

→ He was sorry he didn't know her address.

EXERCISES

1. Underline the most suitable verb form in each sentence.

1. I'm sunburnt. I wish I hadn't sunbathed/didn't sunbathe for so long.
2. I don't feel well. I wish I *could stay*/stayed at home tomorrow.
3. I'm not a good swimmer, but I wish I *could swim*/would swim well.
4. I wish I *had*/have a puppy or a kitten!
5. I wish I *could see*/saw you tomorrow, but it's impossible.
6. I wish Jim *didn't sit*/doesn't sit next to me. He's so annoying!
7. If only we *had*/would have some money we could take the bus.
8. I hope you *enjoyed*/enjoy yourselves at the dance tomorrow.
9. I wish I *can*/could speak English better!
10. I hope *I'll*/I'd win the lottery!
11. I wish Peter *doesn't live*/didn't live/wouldn't live so far away from the town centre. We'll have to take a taxi.
12. I feel rather cold. I wish I *brought*/had brought my pullover with me.
13. What a pity. I wish we *don't have to*/didn't have to/wouldn't have to leave.
14. I wish you *tell*/told/had told me about the test. I haven't done any revision,.
15. I wish the people next door *hadn't made*/wouldn't make/couldn't make so much noise. I can't hear myself think!
16. Darling, I love you so much! I wish we *are*/had been/would be/could be together always!
17. I'm sorry I missed your birthday party. I really wish I *come*/came/had come/would come.
18. I like my new boss but I wish she *gave*/would give/could give me some more responsibility.
19. Having a lovely time in Brighton. I wish you *are*/were/had been here.
20. This car was a complete waste of money. I wish I *didn't buy*/hadn't bought it.

2. Put each verb In brackets into a suitable verb form.

1. This train journey seems endless! I wish we (go) by car.
2. I wish I (have)..... the money to buy some new clothes, but I can't afford any at the moment.
3. I wish the government (do)..... something about the pollution in the city.
4. I'm getting really soaked! I wish I (not forget)..... my umbrella.
5. I wish you (not do)..... that! It's a really annoying habit.
6. That was a lovely meal, but I wish I (not eat).....so much.
7. I wish I (study)..... harder for my exams. I'm not going to pass.
8. I wish you (not leave).....your dirty shoes in your bedroom!
9. I'm afraid I have no idea where Diana has gone. I wish I (know)
10. I really enjoyed our trip to the theatre. I wish we (go) more often.
11. I'm soaked to the skin! If only I (bring)..... an umbrella!
12. This pullover was cheap. I wish I (buy)..... two of them!
13. I like your school. I wish I (go)..... there too.
14. I must get in touch with Sue. If only I (know)..... her phone number!
15. This bus is really slow! I wish we (take).....the train.
16. I'm disappointed in this camera. I wish I (not buy).....it.
17. I answered three questions well. If only I (finish)..... the whole test!
18. I can't understand Marie! I wish I (speak)..... French.

3. Put the verbs into the correct form.

1. I feel sick. I wish.....so much cake.
2. I'm fed up with this raining. I wish.....raining. (it/stop)
3. Its a difficult question. I wishthe answer. (I/ know)
4. I should have listened to you. I wishyour advice. (I/ take)
5. I wish.....here. She'd be able to help us. (Ann/be)
6. Aren't they ready yet? I wish.....(they/ hurry up)
7. It would be nice to stay here. I wish.....to go now. (we/ not/ have)
8. When we were in London last year, I didn't have time to see all the things we wanted to see. I wish more time. (we/have)
9. It's freezing today. I wish..... so cold. I hate cold weather. (it/ not/ be)
10. What's her name again? I wish..... remember her name. (I/can)
11. What I said was stupid. I wish..... anything. (I/not/say)
12. You're driving too fast. I wish..... a bit. (you/slow down)

13. It was a terrible film. I wish..... to see it. (we/ not/ go)
14. You're always tired. I wish..... to bed so late. (you/not/go)
15. I spent all my money. I wish..... it. (I/ save)
16. Vicky's work isn't going well. She wishes..... better. (it/be)
17. I looked everywhere for the key. I wish..... it. (I/find)
18. The phone has been ringing for five minutes. I wish it.
(somebody/ answer)
19. It's very crowded here. I wish..... so many people. (there/not/be)
20. I wish me about the dance, I would have gone. (you/tell)

4. Complete what people are saying about their situation.

1. Amy isn't as confident as Laura, but she would like to be.
Amy to Laura: I wish.....you.
2. Julia drove to the airport, but she missed her plane because she didn't get up early enough.
Julia: If only.....earlier.
3. Rick and Emily can't afford a new computer, but Rick would really like one.
Rick to Emily: I wish.....
4. Chloe very much wants to contact an old friend, but she doesn't have the address.
Chloe: If only.....the address.
5. Nicola and Kirsty had a secret, but Nicola is annoyed because Kirsty told everyone.
Nicola to Kirsty: I wish.....
6. Adam never locks the front door, and Oliver is complaining to him about it.
Oliver to Adam: I wish.....
7. The DVD player won't work, and Carl is desperate to play his DVD.
Carl: If.....work.
8. Unfortunately Kate couldn't be at Tim's wedding, although she regrets not being there.
Kate to Tim: I wish

5. For each situation, write a sentence with *wish* or *if only*

1. Ann isn't here. I need to see her now.
2. John would like to be a pilot when he grows up.
3. I'm sorry I didn't come to the party last night.
4. I regret that you didn't give me a chance to tell you the truth.
5. Mayr is afraid she won't be able to attend your wedding next week.
6. I regret I didn't learn to play a musical instrument.

7. You drive too fast. I'd like you to drive more slowly.
8. It is raining. I want to go out, but not in the rain.
9. I'd like to buy this book but I don't have enough money to buy it.
10. I live in a big city, but I don't like it.
11. Nam was sorry that he didn't accept the job.
12. I have to work tomorrow but I'd like to stay at home.
13. I feel sick because I ate too much ice-cream.
14. It's pity that you were not here last week.
15. A lot of people drop litter in the street.
16. I'd like to take some photographs but I didn't bring my camera.
17. It's cold and I hate cold weather.
18. I can't go to the party and I'd like to.
19. I regret I didn't apply for that job.
20. My life isn't interesting.

6. Choose the correct answer.

1. A: Could you lend me some money?
B: I wish I.....you some money for your rent, but I'm broke myself
A. can lend B. would lend C. could lend D. will lend
2. A: Are we lost?
B: I think so. I wish we.....a map with us today.
A. were bringing B. brought
C. had brought D. would bring
3. A: What are you doing later this afternoon?
B: I wish I.....the answer of that question.
A. knew B. know C. could know D. would know
4. A: I told your mother that you had left your job.
B: Well, I wish you.....her. It's none of your business.
A. wouldn't tell B. didn't tell C. hadn't told D. doesn't tell
5. A: I wish you.....making that noise. It's bothering me.
B: Sorry, I'll stop it right now.
A. would stop B. are going to stop
C. stop D. can stop
6. A: These figures are too complicated to work out in your head.
B: Yes, a calculator.
A. I wish we would have B. if only we had
C. if only we had had D. I wish we have

7. A: You look so tired.

B: Yes, I'm really sleepy today. I wish I.....Bob to the airport late last night.

- A. didn't have to take B. weren't taking
C. hadn't had to take D. didn't take

8. A: It's raining. I wish it.....

B: Me too. If only the sun.....so that we could go swimming.

- A. stopped/ shined B. would stop/ were shining
C. had stopped/ had shined D. would stop/ would shine

9. A: Did you study for that test? .

B: No, but now I wish I.....because I flunked it.

- A. had studied B. studied C. would study D. have studied

10. A: My feet are killing me! I wish I.....more comfortable shoes.

B: Yeah, me too. I wish I.....that we were going to have to walk this much.

- A. had worn/ knew B. am wearing/ had known
C. were wearing/ would know D. wore/ had known

G. MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ (RELATIVE CLAUSES)

Mệnh đề quan hệ (relative clauses) còn được gọi là mệnh đề tính ngữ (adjective clauses), là mệnh đề phụ được dùng để bổ nghĩa cho danh từ đứng trước. Mệnh đề quan hệ đứng ngay sau danh từ mà nó bổ nghĩa và được bắt đầu bằng các đại từ quan hệ (relative pronouns) *who, whom, which, whose, that* hoặc các trạng từ quan hệ (relative adverbs) *when, where, why*.

I. CÁCH DÙNG ĐẠI TỪ QUAN HỆ VÀ TRẠNG TỪ QUAN HỆ TRONG MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ (Uses of relative pronouns and relative adverbs in relative clauses)

1. Đại từ quan hệ (Relative pronouns)

Khi các đại từ *who, whom, whose, which, that* được dùng để giới thiệu mệnh đề quan hệ, chúng được gọi là đại từ quan hệ (relative pronouns).

a. **Who:** được dùng làm chủ ngữ (subject) hoặc tân ngữ (object) thay cho danh từ chỉ người.

The man **who** saw the accident yesterday is my neighbour.

(Người [mà] đã trông thấy tai nạn hôm qua là hàng xóm của tôi.)

The girl **who** spoke to you is my sister.

Người mà anh nói chuyện là chị gái tôi.

b. Whom (mà): dùng thay cho danh từ chỉ người, làm tân ngữ. *Who* và *that* rất thường thay thế *whom* trong trường hợp này:

The man **whom** I saw yesterday is John.

The man **who** I saw yesterday is John.

The man **that** I saw yesterday is John.

(Người [mà] tôi đã gặp hôm qua là John).

Chúng ta có thể bỏ luôn *whom, who, that* trong câu trên, đặc biệt trong đàm thoại:

The man I saw yesterday is John.

c. Which (mà): được dùng thay cho danh từ chỉ đồ vật, con vật, sự vật; làm chủ ngữ hoặc tân ngữ:

The horse **which** I recently bought is an Arab.

(Con ngựa tôi vừa mua là một con ngựa Ả Rập)

The street **which** leads to my house is rather slippery.

(Con đường dẫn tới nhà tôi khá trơn trượt)

d. Whose: được dùng để chỉ sự sở hữu cho danh từ chỉ người hoặc vật đứng trước. *Whose* được dùng như từ hạn định đứng trước danh từ thay cho các tính từ sở hữu *his, her, its, their*. **Whose + noun** có thể làm chủ ngữ hoặc tân ngữ trong mệnh đề quan hệ.

A child **whose** parents are dead is called an orphan.

(Một đứa trẻ mà cha mẹ của nó chết được gọi là một đứa trẻ mồ côi)

The house **whose** windows are broken is mine.

(Căn nhà có cửa sổ bị vỡ là căn nhà của tôi).

e. That: được dùng thay cho cả danh từ chỉ người và danh từ chỉ vật. *That* có thể thay thế *who, whom, which* trong mệnh đề quan hệ xác định (defining relative clauses).

The architect **who/ that** designed this building is very famous.

(Kiến trúc sư thiết kế tòa nhà này rất nổi tiếng)

That is the bicycle **which/ that** belongs to Tom.

(Đó là chiếc xe đạp của Tom)

* Đặc biệt trong các trường hợp sau đây, *that* thường được dùng hơn:

- Khi đi sau các hình thức so sánh cực cấp:

He was **the best man that** I have ever seen.

(Anh ấy là người tốt nhất tôi đã từng gặp)

John was **the most intelligent man that** ever studied at this school.

(John là người thông minh nhất đã từng học ở trường này)

- Khi đi sau: *all, same, any, only, the first, the last, It is/It was:*

I have said **all that** I want to say.

(Tôi đã nói tất cả những gì tôi muốn nói)

You are the **only person** that can help me.

(Anh là người duy nhất có thể giúp tôi.)

Any boys that want to succeed must work hard.

(Bất cứ đứa trẻ nào muốn thành công phải làm việc cần mẫn)

It is his wife that makes the decisions in his family.

(Chính bà vợ ông ấy quyết định mọi chuyện trong gia đình)

It was the first time that John heard of it.

(Đây là lần đầu tiên John nghe về chuyện ấy.)

- Khi đi sau các đại từ bất định (indefinite pronouns) như: *no one, nobody, nothing, somebody, someone, anybody...*

She always had **everything that** she wanted.

(Cô ấy luôn luôn có mọi thứ mình muốn)

He never says **anything that** is worth listening to.

(Anh ta chẳng bao giờ nói được điều gì đáng cho người khác lắng nghe)

It was not for **nothing that** he studied carpentry.

(Anh ấy học nghề mộc chẳng phải để chơi.)

- Khi danh từ đi trước bao gồm cả người lẫn vật:

He talked of **the people and the places that** he had visited.

(Câu ấy nói về những người và những nơi cậu ấy đã đến thăm)

f. of which (của vật đó): dùng để chỉ sở hữu cho danh từ chỉ vật đứng trước, không dùng cho người:

This is the dictionary the cover **of which** has come off.

(Đây là cuốn từ điển bìa của nó đã bong ra)

Two rabbits came out of the hole, both **of which** the dog killed immediately.

(Hai con thỏ chạy ra ngoài lỗ hang, cả hai đều bị chó cắn chết lập tức)

Như thế chúng ta có thể dùng cả *whose* và *of which* để chỉ sở hữu cho vật đứng trước:

We crossed the river the current **of which** was very rapid.

(Chúng tôi băng qua một dòng sông chảy xiết)

2. Trạng từ quan hệ (Relative adverbs)

Các trạng từ *when, where* và *why* có thể được dùng để giới thiệu mệnh đề quan hệ sau các danh từ chỉ thời gian, nơi chốn và lý do.

a. Where (= in/ at which): được dùng thay cho danh từ chỉ nơi chốn.

The place **where** we met was an old pagoda.

(Nơi chúng tôi đã gặp nhau là một ngôi chùa cổ)

Mary would like to live in a country **where** it never snows.

(Mary thích sống ở một nước không có tuyết)

b. When (= on/ at/ in which): được dùng thay cho danh từ chỉ thời gian.

Sunday is the day **when** I am least busy.

(Chủ nhật là ngày tôi ít bận rộn nhất)

There are times **when** joking is not permissible.

(Có những lúc người ta không được phép đùa)

c. Why (= for which): thường được dùng chỉ lý do, thay cho *the reason*.

The reason **why** he did it is obscure.

(Lý do tại sao anh ta làm điều đó thì không rõ)

Lưu ý:

- **When** và **why** có thể được bỏ, hoặc thay bằng **that**.

I'll never forget the day (**that**) I met her.

The reason (**that**) I didn't phone you was that I didn't have your phone number.

- **Where** có thể bỏ hoặc thay bằng *that* khi *where* đứng sau các từ *somewhere, anywhere, everywhere, nowhere*, và *place* (không được bỏ khi *where* đứng sau các từ khác.)

Have you got somewhere (**that**) I can lie down for an hour?

(Bạn có chỗ nào cho tôi ngả lưng một tiếng đồng hồ không?)

We need a place (**that**) we can stay for a few days.

(Chúng tôi cần một nơi để ở lại vài ngày)

[NOT ~~We need a house (that) we can stay for a few days.~~]

- Không dùng giới từ (prepositions) trong mệnh đề quan hệ bắt đầu bằng các trạng từ quan hệ *where, when* và *why*.

The building **where** he lives is very old.

[NOT....~~in where he lives or where he lives in~~]

But: The building in which he lives is very old.

I'll never forget the day **when** I met you.

[NOT ...~~on when I met you or when I met you on~~]

But: I'll never forget the day on which I met you .

- **Where** có thể được dùng mà không có danh từ chỉ nơi chốn đi trước.

Put it **where** we can all see it.

(Hãy đặt nó ở nơi mà tất cả chúng ta đều nhìn thấy.)

II. GIỚI TỪ TRONG MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ (Prepositions in relative clauses)

Trong mệnh đề quan hệ (relative clauses), khi đại từ quan hệ làm tân ngữ

ThichTiengAnh.Com - Website chia sẻ đề thi, tài liệu Tiếng Anh hay, mới nhất
(object) của giới từ thì giới từ thường có hai vị trí: trước các đại từ quan hệ *whom* và *which* hoặc sau động từ.

1. Trong lối văn trang trọng, giới từ đứng trước các đại từ quan hệ *whom* và *which*.

The man **to whom** my mother is talking is my form teacher.

(Người đàn ông mà mẹ tôi đang nói chuyện là giáo viên chủ nhiệm của tôi.)

The restaurant **to which** we normally go is closed today.

(Nhà hàng mà chúng tôi thường đến hôm nay đóng cửa.)

Mr Carter, **to whom** I spoke on the phone last night, is very interested in our plan.

(Ông Carter, người mà tôi đã nói chuyện điện thoại tối qua, rất quan tâm đến kế hoạch của chúng ta.)

Fortunately we had a map, **without which** we would have got lost

(May thay chúng tôi có một tấm bản đồ, không có nó chắc hẳn chúng tôi đã bị lạc đường.)

2. Trong lối nói thân mật, giới từ thường đứng sau động từ trong mệnh đề quan hệ.

That's the man **who(m)/ that** I was talking about.

(Đó là người mà tôi thường nói đến)

The picture **that/ which** she was looking at was famous.

(Bức tranh mà cô ấy đang xem rất nổi tiếng)

Sandra, **who(m)** we had been wait for, finally arrived.

(Cuối cùng thì Sandra, người mà chúng tôi đang đợi, cũng đã đến)

Yesterday we visited the City Museum, **which** I'd never been to before.

(Hôm qua chúng tôi đi tham quan Nhà bảo tàng thành phố, nơi mà trước đây tôi chưa bao giờ đến.)

- Trong mệnh đề xác định, các đại từ quan hệ làm tân ngữ của giới từ (*who(m)/ which/that*) thường được bỏ và giới từ luôn đứng sau động từ.

That's the man I was talking about.

The picture she was looking at was famous.

Was that the restaurant you normally go to?

(Có phải kia là nhà hàng mà bạn thường đến ăn?)

Lưu ý:

- Giới từ không được đặt trước *that* hoặc *who*.

She is the woman **who** I told you about

(Bà ấy là người mà tôi đã nói với bạn.)

[NOT ...~~the woman about who~~...]

The bus **that** I'm waiting for is late.

(Chuyến xe buýt mà tôi đang đợi đến trễ.)

[NOT ~~The bus for that...~~]

Mr. Jones, **who** I am working for, is very generous.

(Ông Jones, tôi đang làm việc cho ông ta, rất tốt bụng)

[NOT ... , ~~for who I'm working,~~...]

- Với cụm động từ (phrasal verb) thì giới từ không được dùng trước *whom* và *which*.

Did you find the word **which/ that** you were looking up?

(Anh đã tìm ra từ mà anh muốn tra chưa?)

[NOT ... ~~the word up which you were looking~~]

The child **who(m)/ that** I have looked after for a year is very naughty.

(Đứa bé mà tôi đã chăm sóc một năm nay rất bướng bỉnh.)

[NOT ~~The child after whom I have looked~~...]

- Giới từ *without* không được dùng ở vị trí sau động từ.

The woman **without whom** I can't live is Jane.

(Người phụ nữ mà tôi không thể sống thiếu cô ấy chính là Jane.)

[NOT ~~The woman who(m) I can't live without~~ ...]

3. Trong mệnh đề không xác định, các cụm từ chỉ số lượng *all of / most of / neither of / many of*... có thể được dùng với *whom, which* và *whose*.

Mary has three brothers, **all of whom** are married.

(Mary có 3 anh em trai, tất cả đều đã lập gia đình.)

[NOT ~~all of who~~]

I Tom tried on three jackets, **none of which** fitted him.

(Tom thử 3 chiếc áo vét, không chiếc nào vừa với anh ấy.)

[NOT ~~none of that~~]

Two men, **neither of whom** I had ever seen before, came into my office.

(Hai người đàn ông, những người mà trước đây tôi chưa bao giờ gặp, bước vào văn phòng của tôi.)

She had a teddy-bear, **both of whose** eyes were missing.

(Cô ấy có một con gấu nhồi bông, cả hai con mắt của nó đều bị mất.)

III. CÁC LOẠI MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ (Kinds of relative clauses)

Có hai loại mệnh đề quan hệ: mệnh đề quan hệ xác định (defining relative clause) và mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định (non-defining relative clause).

1. Mệnh đề quan hệ xác định (Defining relative clauses)

Mệnh đề quan hệ xác định là mệnh đề được dùng để xác định danh từ đứng

trước đó. Mệnh đề xác định là mệnh đề cần thiết cho ý nghĩa của câu, không có nó câu sẽ không đủ nghĩa.

That is the house **that I would like** to buy.

The book **which you lent me** was very interesting.

I do not know the town **where he was born**.

Living in a house **whose walls were made of glass** would be horrible.

(Sống trong nhà tường làm bằng kính thật là khủng khiếp)

- Trong mệnh đề quan hệ xác định, chúng ta có thể bỏ các đại từ quan hệ làm tân ngữ *who(m), which, that* và các trạng từ *when, why*, nhất là trong lối văn thân mật.

The woman you met yesterday works in advertising.

The book you lent me was very interesting.

Do you remember the day we met each other?

2. Mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định (Non-defining relative clauses)

Mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định là mệnh đề cung cấp thêm thông tin về một người, một vật hoặc một sự việc đã được xác định. Mệnh đề không xác định là mệnh đề không nhất thiết phải có trong câu, không có nó câu vẫn đủ nghĩa. Mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định được phân ranh giới với mệnh đề chính bằng các dấu phẩy (,) hoặc dấu gạch ngang (-).

The sun, **which at midday was hot**, made the traveler thirsty. .

(Mặt trời-nóng vào lúc giữa trưa-dã làm người lữ hành khát nước.)

Karl Marx, **who wrote Das Kapital**, is a German philosopher.

(Các Mác, người đã viết bộ Tư bản, là một nhà triết học Đức)

This is George, **whose sister is my best friend**.

(Đây là George, chị của cậu ấy là bạn thân của tôi)

- Không dùng đại từ quan hệ *that* trong mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định (non-defining relative clause).

Ms Smith, **who(m) you met at our house**, is going to marry next week.

(Cô Smith, người mà anh đã gặp tại nhà chúng tôi, sẽ kết hôn vào tuần tới.)

[NOT ..., ~~that you met at our house~~,...]

Harry told me about his new job, **which he's enjoying very much**.

(Harry kể cho tôi nghe về công việc mới mà anh ta rất thích)

[NOT ..., ~~that he's enjoying very much~~]

- Không thể bỏ các đại từ quan hệ làm tân ngữ *who(m), which, that* và các trạng từ *where, when, why* của mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định (non-defining relative clause).

ThichTiengAnh.Com - Website chia sẻ đề thi, tài liệu Tiếng Anh hay, mới nhất
Peter, **who(m)** everybody suspected, turned out to be innocent.

(Peter, người bị mọi người nghi ngờ, hóa ra không có tội)

[NOT Peter, everybody suspected, ...]

We stayed at the Grand Hotel, **which** Ann recommended to us.

(Chúng tôi ở tại khách sạn Grand mà Ann đã giới thiệu)

[NOT ... the Grand Hotel, Ann recommended to us]

Trong mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định (non-defining clauses), **which** có thể được dùng để bổ nghĩa cho cả câu.

It rained all night, **which** was good for the garden.

(Mưa suốt đêm, điều đó tốt cho khu vườn.)

[**which** có nghĩa 'the fact that it rained all night']

Max isn't home yet, **which** worries me.

(Max chưa về nhà, điều này làm tôi lo lắng.)

IV. DẠNG RÚT GỌN CỦA MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ (Reduced forms of relative clauses)

Mệnh đề quan hệ có thể được rút gọn bằng cách dùng cụm phân từ (participle phraser), cụm danh từ (noun phrases) hoặc cụm động từ nguyên mẫu (infinitive phrases).

1. Cụm phân từ (Participle phrases)

Mệnh đề quan hệ có thể được rút gọn bằng cách dùng cụm phân từ hiện tại hoặc quá khứ (present/ past participle phrases).

a. Hiện tại phân từ (present participle) có thể được dùng khi:

Động từ trong mệnh đề quan hệ ở thì tiếp diễn.

That man, **who is sitting** next to Mandy, is my uncle.

→ That man, **sitting** next to Mandy, is my uncle.

(Người đang ngồi cạnh Mandy là chú của tôi)

A lorry **which was carrying** pipes has overturned.

→ A lorry **carrying** pipes has overturned.

(Chiếc xe tải chở ống đã bị lật)

- Động từ trong mệnh đề quan hệ diễn đạt hành động hoặc sự việc có tính thường xuyên, lâu dài.

The road **that joins/ joined** the two villages is/ was very narrow.

→ The road **joining** the two villages is/ was very narrow.

(Con đường nối liền hai ngôi làng rất hẹp)

Boys **who attend/ attended** this school have/ had to wear uniform.

→ Boys **attending** this school have/ had to wear uniform.

- Động từ trong mệnh đề diễn đạt ước muốn, hy vọng, mong đợi, v.v.

Fans **who hope** to buy tickets have been queuing all night.

→ Fans **hoping** to buy tickets have been queuing all night.

(*Những người hâm mộ hy vọng mua được vé đã xếp hàng suốt đêm.*)

Bill, **who wanted** to make an impression on Ann, took her to the Portrait Gallery.

→ Bill, **wanting** to make an impression on Ann, took her...

(*Bill, người muốn gây ấn tượng với Ann, đã đưa cô ấy đến phòng trưng bày ảnh chân dung.*)

Lưu ý: Không dùng hiện tại phân từ để diễn đạt hành động đơn trong quá khứ.

The police wanted to interview the people **who saw** the accident.

(*Cảnh sát muốn thẩm vấn những người chứng kiến vụ tai nạn*)

[NOT ... ~~the people seeing the accident~~]

b. Quá khứ phân từ (past participial) được dùng khi động từ trong mệnh đề quan hệ ở dạng bị động (passive form).

The boy **who was injured** in the accident was taken to the hospital.

→ The boy **injured** in the accident was taken to the hospital.

(*Cậu bé bị thương trong vụ tai nạn đã được đưa tới bệnh viện*)

Most of the goods **which are made** in this factory are exported.

→ Most of the goods **made** in this factory are exported.

(*Phần lớn hàng hóa được sản xuất tại nhà máy này đều được xuất khẩu*)

Some of the people **who have been invited** to the party can't come.

→ Some of the people **invited** to the party can't come.

(*Một số người được mời dự tiệc không đến được*)

2. Cụm danh từ (Noun phrases)

Mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định (non-defining relative clause) có thể được rút gọn bằng cụm danh từ.

George Washington, **who was the first president of the United States**, was a general in the army.

→ George Washington, **the first president of the United States**, was a general in the army.

(*George Washington, tổng thống đầu tiên của Hoa Kỳ, từng là một vị tướng trong quân đội*)

We visited Barcelona, **which is a city in northern Spain**.

→ We visited Barcelona, **a city in northern Spain.**

(Chúng tôi đến tham quan Barcelona, một thành phố ở miền bắc Tây Ban Nha)

3. Cụm động từ nguyên mẫu (Infinitive phrases)

Mệnh đề quan hệ xác định (defining relative clause) có thể được rút gọn bằng cụm động từ nguyên mẫu (*to-infinitive* hoặc *for + object + to-inf*). To-infinitive có thể được dùng :

- Sau các từ **first, second,...; last, next; only;** và dạng so sánh nhất (superlatives).

The captain was the last man **who left** the ship.

→ The captain was the last man **to leave** the ship.

(Thuyền trưởng là người cuối cùng rời tàu)

New Zealand was the first country **which gave** women the vote.

→ New Zealand was the first country **to give** women the vote.

(New Zealand là quốc gia đầu tiên công nhận quyền bầu cử của phụ nữ.)

The guest on our show is the youngest golfer **who won** the Open.

→ The guest on our show is the youngest golfer **to win** the Open.

(Khách mời của chương trình là vận động viên chơi gôn trẻ tuổi nhất vừa đoạt giải mở rộng.)

- Khi muốn diễn đạt mục đích (purpose) hoặc sự cho phép (permission).

The children need a big yard **which they can play in.**

→ The children need a big yard **to play in.**

(Bọn trẻ cần một cái sân rộng để chơi đùa.)

Here is a form **that you must fill in.**

→ Here is a form **for you to fill in.**

(Đây là mẫu đơn để anh điền vào.)

I don't like him playing in the streets; I wish we had a garden **that he could play in.**

→ I don't like him playing in the streets; I wish we had a garden **for him to play in.**

(Tôi không thích nó chơi đùa ngoài đường; tôi ước gì chúng tôi có một khu vườn để nó chơi đùa trong sân.)

EXERCISES

1. Underline the correct word in each sentence.

1. An old man, who/which was carrying a suitcase, knocked at the door.
2. The winner, which/whose bike was an unusual design, won a medal.
3. The girl who/which spoke to me turned out to be in my class.
4. The museum, which/whose was in a beautiful building, was closed.
5. A policewoman that/which we asked told us how to get there.
6. I The boy whose/whom house I was staying at was an old friend.
7. The last person which/whose pen I borrowed didn't get it back.
8. My friend Jack, that/who/whose parents live in Glasgow, invited me to spend Christmas in Scotland.
9. Here's the computer program that/whom/whose I told you about.
10. I don't believe the story that/who/whom she told us.
11. Peter comes from Witney, that/who/which is near Oxford.
12. This is the gun with that/whom/which the murder was committed.
13. Have you received the parcel whom/whose/which we sent you?
14. Is this the person who/which/whose you asked me about?
15. That's the girl that/who/whose brother sits next to me at school.
16. The meal, that/which/whose wasn't very tasty, was quite expensive.
17. We didn't enjoy the play that/who/whose we went to see.

2. Put a suitable relative pronoun in each space, or leave the space blank where possible.

1. The friend....Whose.....house I stayed in is coming to stay with us.
2. The guidebook.....we bought explained everything.
3. The couple.....house I bought both worked in my office.
4. I'd like you to tell me.....you were talking to.
5. The girl.....ruler I had borrowed wanted, it back.
6. I can't remember.....I lent my bike to.
7. Do you knowCatherine works for?
8. My bike..... I had left at the gate, had disappeared.
9. The shoes.....I bought were the ones.....I tried on first.
10. The bag in.....the robbers put the money was found later.
11. The medicine.....the doctor gave me had no effect at all.
12. Peter,.....couldn't see the screen, decided to change his seat.
13. I really liked that tea.....you made me this morning.

14. What was the name of your friend.....tent we borrowed?
15. The flight.....Joe was leaving on was cancelled.
16. This is the kind of language.....is used by deaf and dumb people.
17. "Dumb" is the word used in English for someone.....is unable to speak
18. The chimpanzee,.....name was Washoe, learned about 160 signs.
19. My father,.....is a doctor, is fifty years old now..
20. Another person.....work has become well known is Roger Fouts.

3. Underline any relative pronouns that can be left out in these sentences.

1. I think that my boss is the person who I admire most.
2. Harry, who was tired, went to bed very early.
3. We're taking the train that leaves at 6.00.
4. Have you seen the book that I left here on the desk?
5. The film which we liked most was the French one.
6. My radio, which isn't very old, has suddenly stopped working.
7. The clothes which you left behind are at the reception desk.
8. The couple who met me at the station took me out to dinner.
9. Last week I ran into an old friend who I hadn't seen for ages.
10. Don't cook the meat that I put in the freezer - it's for the dog.

4. Replace the relative pronouns in italics with that, where possible.

1. This is the magazine *which* I told you about.
.....
2. John's flat, *which* is in the same block as mine, is much larger.
.....
3. The girl *whose* bag I offered to carry turned out to be an old friend.
.....
4. The policeman *who* arrested her had recognised her car.
.....
5. I work with someone *who* knows you.
.....
6. We don't sell goods *which* have been damaged.
.....
7. Brighton, *which* is on the south coast, is a popular holiday resort.
.....
8. I don't know anyone *whose* clothes would fit you.
.....

9. There's a cafe near here *which* serves very good meals.

.....
10. People *who* park outside get given parking tickets.
.....

5. Combine the following pairs of sentences by means of relative pronouns

1. You sent me a present. Thank you very much for it. (Thank you very much for...)
2. She was dancing with a student. He had a slight limp.
3. Romeo and Juliet were lovers. Their parents hated each other.
4. This is Mrs Jones. Her son won the championship last year.
5. The man was sitting at the desk. I had come to see this man.
6. His girlfriend turned out to be an enemy spy. He trusted her absolutely.
7. The car crashed into a queue of people. Four of them were killed.
8. The roads were crowded with refugees. Many of them were wounded.
9. He wanted to come at 2 a.m. This didn't suit me at all.
10. They gave me four very bad tires. One of them burst before I had driven four miles.
11. Who lives in the house? It has a white door.
12. We visited a patient. His eyesight had been restored by the surgeon.
13. The girls should go to the main office. Their names begin with the letters A-K.
14. The countries will not be helped. They have very large debts.
15. The people will be compensated. Their houses were damaged by the bomb.
16. The shop will make a big profit. Its turnover is the largest.
17. The player changed their shirts at half-time. Their shirts were dirty.
18. Those people should go on strike. They are ill treated
19. The car was involved in an accident. It had a white roof
20. The guard was punished. He let a prisoner escape.

6. Combine the following pairs or groups of sentences, using relative pronouns.

1. Tom had been driving all day. He was tired and wanted to stop.
2. Jack's tires were very old. He wanted to stick to the tarred road.
3. He gave orders to the manager. The manager passed them on to the foreman.
4. She said that the men were thieves. This turned out to be true.

5. The lorry crashed into a bus-load of schoolchildren. Six of them were slightly injured.
6. The Smiths were given rooms in the hotel. Their house had been destroyed in the explosion.
7. The river bed is uneven and you may be in shallow water one moment and in deep water the next. This makes it unsafe for non-swimmers.
8. He paid me 5 dollars for cleaning ten windows. Most of them hadn't been cleaned for at least a year.
9. Tom came to the party in patched jeans. This surprised the other guests. Most of the other guests were wearing evening dress.
10. I missed the train. I usually catch this train. And I had to travel on the next. This was a slow train.

7. Combine the sentences by using relative adverbs.

1. This is the place. The accident occurred there.
2. 7:05 is the time. My plane arrives at that time.
3. I'll show you the second-hand bookshop. You can find valuable books in this shop.
4. The reason is to invite you to my party. I'm phoning you for this reason.
5. Mark likes to travel at night. The roads are quiet at that time.
6. The Riverside Restaurant is very beautiful. I once had lunch with Henry in this restaurant.
7. She doesn't want to speak to the cause. She divorced her husband for this cause.
8. The days were the saddest ones. I lived far from home on those days.
9. A cafe is a small restaurant. People can get a light meal there.
10. You didn't tell us the reason. We had to cut down our daily expenses for that reason.

8. Change the relative clauses to phrases.

1. Do you know the woman who is coming toward us?
2. The road that joins the two villages is very narrow.
3. Most of the goods that are made in this factory are exported.
4. My grandmother, who is old and sick, never goes out of the house.
5. Kuala Lumpur, which is the capital city of Malaysia, is a major trade center in Southeast Asia.
6. The woman who lived here before us is a romantic novelist.
7. The scientists who are researching the causes of cancer are making progress.

8. Our solar system is in a galaxy that is called the Milky Way.
9. All students who don't hand in their papers will fail in the exam.
10. Simon Bolivar, who was a great South American general, led the fight for independence early in the 19th century.
11. Some of the people who have been invited to the party can't come.
12. Ann is the woman who is responsible for the error.
13. Mr. Jackson, who has been working in the company for over ten years, was nominated as the new director.
14. English has an alphabet that consists of 26 letters.
15. We noticed a pile of stones which had been left in the road.

9. Change the relative clauses to phrases, using to-infinitive or infinitive phrases (for + O + to-infinitive).

1. We used to have a room in which we could play music.
2. The child will be happier if he has someone that he can play with.
3. David was the only person who offered his help.
4. We had to sit on the ground because we hadn't anything that we could sit on.
5. She didn't have anyone to whom she could send cards.
6. There is a big yard that your children can play in.
7. Emma Thompson is the most famous actress who will appear on stage here.
8. We have some picture books that children can read.
9. He was the second man who was killed in this way.
10. Here are some novels that she should read.

10. Replace the clauses in italics by an infinitive or infinitive phrase.

1. We had a river *in which we could swim*.
2. The child is lonely; he would be happier if he had someone *that he could play with*.
3. I don't much care for cooking for myself; if I had a family *that I had to cook for* I'd be more interested.
4. I've got a bottle of wine but I haven't got anything *that I could open it with*
5. I have some letters *that I must write*.
6. I don't want to go alone and I haven't anyone *that I can go with*.
7. I don't like him playing in the street; I wish we had a garden *that he could play in*.
8. He was the first man *who left the burning building*.

9. The floor is dusty but I haven't got a brush that I can sweep it with.

10. The fifth man *who was interviewed* was entirely unsuitable.

11. Complete the sentences using reduced noun clauses.

1. Her date is arriving in ten minutes. She doesn't know what clothes she should wear.

She doesn't know.....

2. Joe has gained a lot of weight. He went to the doctor for advice.

The doctor told him.....

3. There are several English schools for Kyoko to choose from.

She cannot make a decision.

Kyoko is not sure.....

4. They want to adopt a child but they don't know much about the procedure.

They go to a lawyer.

The lawyer told them.....

5. Ben is failing his economics class. He went to talk to the professor.

The professor advised told him.....

6. She forgot the time of her dental appointment.

She doesn't know.....

7. Jane is new in town. She wants to buy a new dress but she isn't sure about the stores.

Jane doesn't know.....

8. "My dog's sick! Help!" cried Linda.

Linda didn't know.....

9. I can't stop smoking. Please give me some advice.

Please tell me.....

10. Share a problem you have with your friend then offer advice to each other.

Tell your friend.....

12. Find any errors in noun clause construction and verb tense. Correct the errors.

1. A few students asked the teacher why was there going to be a final exam.

2. The teacher told to the students that it is crucial that they learn to take tests.

3. According to the students, however, it was more important that they were given more class time.

- 4. The president told the press to not worry about the recent problems because the economy was strong and healthy.
- 5. What is my father's annual income is none of your business.
- 6. This is exactly that I noticed at my age.
- 7. What are we in such a situation is only an example for our children.
- 8. That at what age a parent should suggest her child break away and live independently is that a parent should consider

13. Comment on each situation. Use the to-infinitive structure.

- 1. David offered his help. No one else did.
David was *the only person to offer his help.*
- 2. Oliva's daughter swam a length of the pool. No other girl as young as her did that.
Oliva's daughter was.....
- 3. The secretaries got a pay rise. No one else did.
The secretaries were.....
- 4. The pilot left the aircraft. Everyone else had left before him.
The pilot was.....
- 5. Mrs. Harper became Managing Director. No other woman had done that before.
Mrs. Harper was.....
- 6. Daniel applied for the job. No other candidate as suitable as him applied.
Daniel was.....
- 7. Janet solved the puzzle. She did it before everyone else.
Janet was.....
- 8. Mark wrote a letter of thanks. No one else did.
Mark was.....

14. Complete the sentences, using present participle, past participle or to infinitive of the verbs in the box.

overlook	blow	call	strike	live	offer	read	ring	sit
study	work	leave	fill	survive	play	block	publish	

- 1. An obstacle is somethingyour way.
- 2. I was woken up by a bell.....

3. Baseball is a game..... mainly in the USA.
4. Here is an application form for you..... in.
5. Somebody..... Jack phoned while you were out.
6. Ian has got a brother in a bank in London and a sister..... economics at the university in Manchester.
7. There was a tree..... down in the storm last night.
8. The captain was the last..... the sinking ship.
9. Life must be very unpleasant for people..... near busy airport.
10. When I entered the waiting room, it was empty except for a young man
11. The photographs..... in the newspaper were extraordinary.
12. The air-hostess was the only person the plane crash.
13. Two out of three people..... by lightning survive
14. We have an apartment..... the park.
15. A few days after the interview, I received a letter..... me a job.

15. Make one sentence from each group of sentences, beginning as shown.

1. The hotel was full of guests. The hotel was miles from anywhere. The guests had gone there to admire the scenery.
The hotel, which *.was.miles.from.anywhere,.was.full.of.guests.....*
2. I lent you a book. It was written by a friend of mine. She lives in France.
The book I *.Who.had.gone.there.to.admire.the.scenery.....*
3. A woman's jewels were stolen. A police officer was staying in the same hotel. The woman was interviewed by him.
The woman whose.....
4. A goal was scored by a teenager. He had come on as substitute. This goal won the match.
The goal which.....
5. I was sitting next to a boy in the exam. He told me the answers.
The boy I
6. My wallet contained over #100. It was found in the street by a schoolboy. He returned it.
My wallet.....
7. My friend Albert has decided to buy a motorbike. His car was stolen last week.
My friend Albert.....
8. Carol is a vegetarian. I cooked a meal for her last week. She enjoyed it.
Carol,.....

16. Put one suitable word in each space, or leave the space blank where possible.

Murder At The Station by Lorraine Small. Episode 5. Trouble on the 6.15.
The story so far: Jane Platt, (1).....*who*..... is travelling to London because of a mysterious letter, is the only person (2)..... witnesses a murder at Victoria Station. The detective to (3)..... she gives her statement then disappears. Jane goes to an office in Soho to answer the letter (4)..... she had received. There she discovers that her uncle Gordon, (5)..... lives in South America, has sent her a small box (6)..... she is only to open if in trouble. Jane, (7)..... parents have never mentioned an Uncle Gordon, is suspicious of the box, (8).....she gives to her friend Tony. They go to Scotland Yard and see Inspector Groves, (9).....has not heard of the Victoria Station murder, (10).....was not reported to the police. Jane gives Inspector Groves the murdered man's ticket (11)..... she found beside his body. Then Jane and Tony decide to go to Redhill, (12)..... was the town (13)..... the murdered man had come from. On the train they meet a man, (14)..... face is somehow familiar to Jane, (15)..... says he knows her Uncle Gordon.

Chương 13 **CÂU (SENTENCES)**

I. ĐỊNH NGHĨA (Definition)

Câu là một nhóm từ thường bao gồm một chủ ngữ và một động từ, diễn đạt một lời nói, câu hỏi hoặc mệnh lệnh.

II. PHÂN LOẠI CÂU (Classification of sentences)

Câu có thể được phân loại theo cấu trúc hoặc công dụng.

1. Phân loại câu theo cấu trúc (Sentence classified according to structures)

Khi phân loại theo cấu trúc, câu gồm 4 loại: câu đơn, câu hợp, câu phức và câu phức hợp.

1.1. Câu đơn (Simple sentences):

Câu đơn là câu chỉ có một động từ được chia (finite verb).

The little boy **looks** very happy.

Cậu bé trông rất hạnh phúc.

John **gets up** nearly in the morning.

John thường dậy rất sớm.

1.2. Câu kép (Compound sentences): Câu kép là câu gồm hai hoặc nhiều mệnh đề độc lập được kết nối với nhau bằng liên từ (and, but, for, nor, or, so, yet, ...) hoặc bằng một dấu chấm phẩy.

The moon was bright **and** we could see our way.

Trăng sáng và chúng tôi có thể nhìn thấy lối đi..

Night came on **and** rain fell heavily **and** we all got very wet.

Khi màn đêm buông xuống, cơn mưa trở nên nặng hạt, tất cả chúng tôi bị ướt hết.

Đôi khi câu kép được rút gọn vì có một bộ phận nào đó ở mệnh đề này được lặp lại ở mệnh đề kia.

Tom is sitting **and** (he is) eating a banana.

Tom đang ngồi ăn một quả chuối.

One side will attack, **and** the other (will) defend.

Bên này sẽ tấn công và bên kia phòng ngự.

Các mệnh đề của câu kép cũng có thể được nối với nhau bằng dấu phẩy (,), dấu chấm phẩy (;) hoặc dấu hai chấm (:) thay vì các liên từ như trên:

The rain fell softly, the house was quiet.

Căn nhà yên tĩnh trong khi cơn mưa rơi lất phất.

All day long he thought of his father; every night he dreamed of him.

Cả ngày cậu ấy nghĩ về người cha, đêm nào cậu cũng mơ về người ấy.

I went to bed early: the long journey had tired me.

Tôi đi ngủ sớm vì chuyến đi dài ngày đã làm tôi mệt mỏi.

1.3. Câu phức (Complex sentences)

Câu phức là câu có một mệnh đề chính và một hay nhiều mệnh đề phụ.

The man whom you saw yesterday is John's brother.

Người anh đã gặp hôm qua là anh trai của John.

All that she dreams comes true.

Tất cả những điều nàng mơ ước đều biến thành sự thật.

The man who knows no foreign language knows nothing about his mother tongue. (Goethe)

Người không biết ngoại ngữ thì không biết gì về tiếng mẹ đẻ của mình cả.

1.4. Câu phức hợp (Compound-complex sentences)

Câu phức hợp là câu có hai hay nhiều mệnh đề chính và một hay nhiều mệnh đề phụ.

As the morning was fine, and he had an hour on his hands, he crossed the river by the ferry, and strolled along a footpath through some meadows.

Vì buổi sáng đẹp trời và được rảnh rỗi một giờ, anh ấy đi qua sông bằng đò và tản bộ trên con đường mòn chạy qua những cánh đồng cỏ

Câu trên có hai mệnh đề phụ:

(1) As the morning was fine

(2) (As) he had an hour on his hands

Và hai mệnh đề chính

(3) he crossed the river by the ferry

(4) (he) strolled along a footpath through some meadows.

2. Phân loại câu theo công dụng (Sentence classified according to usage)

Khi phân loại theo công dụng, câu gồm 4 loại: câu trần thuật, câu nghi vấn, câu mệnh lệnh và câu cảm thán.

2.1. Câu trần thuật (Declarative sentences)

Câu trần thuật là câu dùng để nói lên ý nghĩ, tình cảm của mình hoặc để thuật lại một sự việc nào đó. Câu trần thuật có thể ở dạng khẳng định (affirmative) hoặc phủ định (negative).

The farmer is feeding the chickens.

Người nông dân đang cho gà ăn.

Câu phủ định được tạo thành bằng cách thêm *not* vào trợ động từ (*be, have, do,*

ThichTiengAnh.Com - Website chia sẻ đề thi, tài liệu Tiếng Anh hay, mới nhất
must, can, ...) hoặc dùng các trạng từ phủ định *never, hardly, scarcely, ...* trước động từ chính.

Mary **does not** know the answer.

(Mary không biết câu trả lời)

John **never** drinks tea in the morning.

(John không bao giờ uống trà vào buổi sáng)

Câu phủ định cũng có thể được tạo thành bằng cách thêm *fail* vào trước động từ nguyên mẫu (chủ yếu trong văn viết):

John **failed** to keep his word.

(John không giữ lời hứa)

Chúng ta cần nhớ từ phủ định *not* đi sau động từ chính không nhất thiết làm cho câu nói trở thành phủ định. Chúng ta hãy so sánh:

He didn't decide to go. [Câu phủ định]

He decided not to go. [Câu khẳng định]

[= He had a decision - a decision not to go]

Trong thực hành, đôi khi chúng ta thấy người Anh-Mĩ dùng hình thức phủ định kép (double negative):

I can't not obey. [= I have to obey]

(tôi không thể nào không tuân lệnh)

Not many people have nowhere to live.

[= Most people have somewhere to live]

2.2. Câu nghi vấn (Interrogative sentences)

Câu nghi vấn là câu dùng để hỏi. Câu nghi vấn có các loại sau đây:

a. **Câu hỏi Có/Không (Yes/No questions):** là câu hỏi mà câu trả lời là có hoặc không (yes or no).

Is he a student? Yes, he is/No, he isn't.

Does he like coffee? Yes, he does/ No, he doesn't.

Câu hỏi Có/Không còn được chia thành hai tiểu loại:

* Câu hỏi xác định (Affirmative questions)

Trong dạng câu hỏi này, trợ động từ (*auxiliary verbs: be, have, will, can, may, must, ...*) thường được đặt trước chủ ngữ (subject):

Auxiliary verb + subject + verb?

Is he a student?

Does he like coffee?

Can he play tennis?

Cách trả lời cho câu hỏi xác định: trả lời *yes* có nghĩa là đúng và *no* có nghĩa là không đúng.

Are you a student?

(Bạn có phải là học sinh không?)

~ **Yes, I am.** (Vâng, đúng vậy.)

~ **No, I am not.** I left school last year.

(Không, không phải. Tôi đã tốt nghiệp năm ngoái)

*** Câu hỏi phủ định (negative questions)**

Câu hỏi phủ định được thành lập bằng cách thêm **not (n't)** vào sau trợ động từ.

Isn't he a student?

(Anh ấy không phải là sinh viên sao?)

Doesn't he like coffee?

(Cậu ấy không thích cà phê à?)

Can't you play tennis?

(Anh không chơi quần vợt được sao?)

Câu hỏi phủ định ngoài việc diễn tả sự phủ định thông thường như trong các ví dụ trên còn diễn tả sự ngạc nhiên (surprise) hay nghi ngờ (disbelief):

Haven't you finished your work yet?

(Anh chưa làm xong công việc à?)

[Hàm ý người nói nghĩ rằng lẽ ra anh ta đã phải làm xong việc]

Isn't your car working?

(Xe anh không chạy được à?)

[Có thật là xe anh hỏng rồi không? Trước đây tôi vẫn cho là nó chạy tốt đấy]

Câu hỏi phủ định còn diễn tả mong đợi của người nói rằng người nghe sẽ đồng ý với mình. Khi trông thấy một cô gái đẹp đi ngang qua, người ta có thể hỏi:

Isn't she pretty?

(Cô ta đẹp đấy chứ?)

Người nghe có thể đồng ý như người nói mong đợi (Yes, she is) nhưng cũng có thể là không (You may think so, but I don't).

- Cách trả lời cho câu hỏi phủ định: trả lời **No** có nghĩa là đúng và **Yes** có nghĩa là không đúng.

Haven't you repaired the car yet?

(Anh chưa sửa xe sao?)

~ **No.** I haven't had time.

(Chưa. Tôi không có thời gian.)

~ **Yes,** I did it yesterday.

(Không, tôi đã sửa nó hôm qua rồi.)

Lưu ý: Đôi khi câu hỏi *yes/ no*, đặc biệt là các câu hỏi với các động từ tình thái, được dùng để đưa ra lời gợi ý, lời yêu cầu, lời đề nghị, lời mời hoặc xin phép.

Shall we eat out tonight?

(*Tối nay chúng ta ra ngoài ăn nhé?*)

→ Lời gợi ý (suggestion)

Could you wait a moment, please?

(*Anh vui lòng đợi một chút có được không?*) → lời yêu cầu (request)

Can I carry your bag?

(*Tôi xách hộ túi cho bạn nhé?*) → lời đề nghị (offer)

Would you like to come to the party?

(*Anh đến dự tiệc nhé?*) → lời mời (invitation)

May I go out?

(*Tôi có được phép ra ngoài không?*) → xin phép (asking permission)

b. Câu hỏi Wh- (Wh -- questions)

Câu hỏi Wh- là loại câu hỏi bắt đầu bằng các nghi vấn từ (question words) *who, whom, which, what, where, when, why, how, ...*

Question word + auxiliary verb + subject + verb ?
--

What is happiness?

(*Hạnh phúc là gì?*)

Where do you come from?

(*Chị từ đâu đến?*)

- Khi *who, what, which* làm chủ ngữ của câu hỏi, không dùng trợ động từ *do (do, does, did)* và trật tự của từ giống trong câu trần thuật.

Who telephoned you last night?

(*Tối qua ai đã gọi điện cho anh vậy?*)

[NOT ~~Who did telephone...~~]

What will happen next?

(*Chuyện gì sẽ xảy ra nữa đây?*)

Which bus goes to the city center?

(*Xe buýt nào đi vào trung tâm thành phố?*)

[NOT ~~Which bus does go...~~]

- Động từ chính *be* cũng đứng trước chủ ngữ trong câu hỏi.

Where is Kitty? (Kitty đâu?)

What was that noise? (Tiếng ồn đó là tiếng gì vậy?)

* Một số cụm từ dùng để hỏi: *what time, what kind of, what sort of, what colour, how often, how long, how far, how high, how much, how many, how old, v.v*

What time is your friend arriving?

(*Mấy giờ bạn của anh sẽ đến?*)

How much money did you spend?

(*Anh đã tiêu hết bao nhiêu tiền?*)

Lưu ý: Khi chúng ta hỏi về thông tin, chúng ta thường nói **Do you know...?** hoặc **Could you tell me...?** v.v. Nếu bạn bắt đầu câu hỏi bằng các cụm từ này, thì trật tự của từ trong câu sẽ khác với câu hỏi đơn.

Where **has Tom gone**? (*Tom đi đâu vậy?*)

But. Do you know where **Tom has gone**?

(*Anh có biết Tom đi đâu không?*)

c. Câu hỏi kể (Declarative questions):

Câu hỏi kể là loại câu hỏi mang hình thức của câu kể, lên giọng ở cuối câu:

You've got some money? (*Anh có tiền chứ?*)

You live here? (*Anh sống ở đây à?*)

He didn't finish the work? (*Anh ấy chưa xong việc à?*)

d. Câu hỏi đuôi (Tag questions/ Question tags)

Câu hỏi đuôi (question tags) là câu hỏi ngắn được thêm vào cuối câu trần thuật (statements). Câu hỏi đuôi thường được dùng để kiểm tra điều gì đó có đúng hay không, hoặc để yêu cầu sự đồng ý.

You haven't seen Mary today, **have you**?

(*Hôm nay anh chia tay Mary phải không?*)

Trong câu hỏi đuôi, trợ động từ khi kết hợp với *not* phải được tính lược (isn't, aren't, doesn't, can't...) và chủ từ của đuôi phải là một đại từ. Phần đuôi này được thành lập theo nguyên tắc sau:

- Nếu động từ trong câu kể là *be*, phần đuôi sẽ là:

Be + not + chủ từ

Father is here, **isn't he**?

(*Ba ở đây, phải không?*)

- Nếu động từ trong câu kể là *be + not*, phần đuôi sẽ là:

Be + chủ từ

Father isn't here, **is he**?

(*Ba không ở đây, phải không?*)

- Nếu động từ trong câu kể là các động từ khác ở dạng khẳng định, phần đuôi sẽ là:

Do/Does/Did not + chủ từ

You like coffee, **don't you**?

(*Anh thích cà phê, phải không?*)

- Nếu các động từ này ở dạng phủ định, phần đuôi sẽ là:

Do/Does/Did + chủ từ

You don't like coffee, **do you?**

(Anh không thích cà phê, phải không?)

- Nếu câu kể bao gồm các trợ động từ (auxiliary verbs) ở dạng khẳng định, phần đuôi là:

Trợ động từ + not + chủ từ

You can speak English, **can't you?**

(Anh có thể nói được tiếng Anh, phải không?)

- Nếu các trợ động từ này ở dạng phủ định, phần đuôi sẽ là:

Trợ động từ + chủ từ

You can't speak English, **can you?**

(Anh không thể nói tiếng Anh, phải không?)

* Cách trả lời câu hỏi đuôi: câu trả lời **YES** có nghĩa câu khẳng định là đúng, và **No** có nghĩa câu phủ định là đúng.

Claire is married, **isn't she?**

(Claire đã kết hôn phải không?)

~ **Yes**, she has just married. (vâng, cô ấy vừa mới kết hôn)

~ **No**, of course she isn't. (Không, dĩ nhiên là cô ấy chưa kết hôn.)

Andrew hasn't got many friends, **has he?**

(Andrew không có nhiều bạn phải không?)

- **No**. (Vâng) [= He hasn't got many friends.]

~ **Yes**. (Không phải) [= He has a lot of friends.]

Lưu ý:

- Câu hỏi đuôi của *I am* là **aren't I?**

I am late, aren't I? (Tôi bị muộn phải không?) [= am I not]

- *There* có thể làm chủ ngữ của câu hỏi đuôi.

There's something wrong, **isn't there?**

(Có điều gì không ổn phải không?)

- Sau *Let's ...* dùng câu hỏi đuôi **shall we?**

Let's go for a walk, shall we? (Chúng ta đi dạo nhé?)

- Sau câu mệnh lệnh (Do .../Don't do ...), câu hỏi đuôi thường là **will you?**

Give me a hand, will you?

(Giúp tôi một tay được không?)

Don't make any noise, will you?

(Đừng làm ồn được không?)

ThichTiengAnh.Com - Website chia sẻ đề thi, tài liệu Tiếng Anh hay, mới nhất
- *won't you?* Thường được dùng trong lời mời (nhất là trong tiếng Anh của người Anh)

Do sit down, **won't you?** (*Mời ngồi*)

- *Can/ can't you? could you? Hoặc would you?* Cũng có thể được dùng trong câu mệnh lệnh khẳng định.

Wait here a moment, **can you?**

(*Đợi ở đây một lát, được chứ?*)

Open the window, **would you?**

(*Hãy mở cửa sổ, được chứ?*)

- Câu hỏi đuôi khẳng định được dùng sau những câu có các đại từ hoặc trạng từ phủ định *never, nothing, nobody, no, none, hardly, scarcely, little.*

You **never** say what you're thinking, **do you?**

(*Bạn không bao giờ nói ra những điều bạn nghĩ phải không?*)

It's **no** good, **is it?** (*Điều đó không tốt phải không?*)

Nothing was said, **was it?** (*Không ai nói gì phải không?*)

- Đại từ *it* được dùng trong câu hỏi đuôi thay cho *all, nothing và everything.*

Everything can happen, **can't it?**

(*Mọi chuyện đều có thể xảy ra, đúng không?*)

- Đại từ *they* được dùng thay cho *anyone, nobody, no one, somebody, someone, everybody, everyone.*

Someone had recognized him, **hadn't they?**

(*Có người đã nhận ra anh ta phải không?*)

No one would object, **would they?**

(*Không ai phản đối phải không?*)

* Ý nghĩa và ngữ điệu (meaning and intonation)

Trong văn nói, ý nghĩa của câu hỏi đuôi tùy thuộc vào ngữ điệu.

- Nếu bạn xuống giọng ở câu hỏi đuôi có nghĩa là bạn không thật sự đặt câu hỏi, bạn chỉ muốn người nghe đồng ý với bạn.

It's a nice day **isn't it?** - Yes, lovely

(*Một ngày đẹp trời phải không? – vâng, thật đẹp*)

Tom doesn't look well today, **doesn't he?** - No, he looks very tired

(*Hôm nay Tom có vẻ không khỏe phải không? – Vâng, anh ấy có mệt*)

- Nếu lên giọng ở câu hỏi đuôi, thì đó là câu hỏi thật sự.

You haven't seen Mary today, **have you?** - No, I'm afraid not seen.

(*hôm nay anh chưa gặp Mary phải không? – Vâng tôi chưa gặp*)

- Câu trần thuật phủ định + câu hỏi đuôi khẳng định (negative statement + positive tag) thường được dùng để hỏi về điều gì đó, hoặc yêu cầu ai làm điều gì. Câu hỏi được lên giọng ở phần cuối câu.

You don't know where Karen is, **do you?**

(*bạn không biết Karen ở đâu à?*)

You couldn't lend me a pound, **could you?**

(*Anh không thể cho tôi mượn một bảng à?*)

e. Câu hỏi rút gọn (Short questions)

Câu hỏi rút gọn là hình thức rút gọn của câu hỏi Có / không.

John is here. **Is Bill?**

(John ở đây, còn Bill?)

I can't be there this afternoon. **Can you?**

(*Tôi không thể đến đó chiều nay được. Anh có thể đến được không?*)

f. Câu hỏi phản ứng (Reactive questions)

Câu hỏi phản ứng là loại câu hỏi diễn tả phản ứng của người nghe đối với một phát ngôn nào đó:

- Where's the rest of the money? (*Tiền còn lại đâu rồi?*)

- I'm afraid it's all spent, sir. (*Tôi e rằng đã tiêu hết cả rồi, thưa ông*)

- Oh, It's all spent, **is it?** (*Ồ, tiêu hết rồi à?*)

Câu hỏi phản ứng thường bắt đầu với *oh* hoặc *so*, và khác với câu hỏi đuôi ở chỗ cả hai thành phần (*It's all spent* và *is it*) đều cùng là khẳng định hoặc phủ định. Câu hỏi phản ứng cũng có thể phân chia giữa hai người nói: người thứ nhất nói thành phần đầu, người thứ hai biểu lộ phản ứng bằng thành phần còn lại:

A: - She cries. (*Cô ấy khóc*)

B: - **Does she?** (*Thế à?*)

A: - I've broken a cup.

(*Tôi đã làm vỡ cái tách*)

B: - Oh, you have, **have you?** (*Thế à?*)

A: - You mustn't talk to me like that.

(*Anh không được nói với tôi như thế*)

B: - Oh, I mustn't, **mustn't I?**

(*Không được à?*)

g. Câu hỏi lựa chọn (Alternative questions)

Câu hỏi lựa chọn bắt đầu với một trợ động từ (*Do/Does/Did/Is/Are...*) và chứa liên từ *or*:

Do you like your coffee black or white?

(*Anh thích cà phê đen hay cà phê sữa?*)

Is this answer right or wrong?

(*Câu trả lời này đúng hay sai?*)

Yếu tố lựa chọn có thể nằm ở chủ từ:

Did Italy or Brazil win the World Cup?

Did Italy win the "World Cup or Brazil?

(Ai đã đoạt giải thế giới, ý hay Brazil)

Khi yếu tố lựa chọn nằm ở động từ, chúng ta có thể dùng *or not*:

Are you coming or not?

(Anh đến hay không?)

Khi yếu tố lựa chọn buộc phải thay đổi cách dùng thì, chúng ta phải lặp lại đây đủ thành phần đi trước:

Is it raining or has it stopped?

(Trời đang mưa hay đã tạnh rồi?)

h. Câu hỏi đáp lại (reply questions)

Chúng ta thường có thể đáp lại một câu kể bằng một câu hỏi ngắn để biết thêm thông tin.

I'm going out. - **Who with?** *(Tôi sẽ đi chơi. ~ Với ai?)*

Anne is leaving her job. ~ **When?** *(Anne sẽ thôi việc. ~ Khi nào?)*

Can you talk to Tom this afternoon? ~ **Why me?**

(Chiều nay anh nói chuyện với Tom được không? ~ Sao lại là tôi?)

Câu hỏi ngắn gồm trợ động từ + đại từ (auxiliary verb + pronoun) cũng có thể được dùng để bày tỏ sự chú ý hoặc quan tâm. Dạng câu hỏi này không phải để hỏi thông tin mà chỉ cho thấy phản ứng của người nghe với những điều đã được nói.

We had a lovely holiday. - **Did you?**

(Chúng tôi đã có kỳ nghỉ thật thú vị. ~ Vậy sao?)

I've got a headache. ~ **Have you?** I'll get you an aspirin.

(Tôi bị đau đầu. ~ Thế à? Để tôi lấy cho bạn một viên aspirin.)

Để hỏi lại điều mới được nói, ta lặp lại điều nghe được và lên giọng cuối câu. Nếu chỉ muốn hỏi một phần trong câu, thì ta có thể đặt từ để hỏi thay cho phần ta muốn hỏi.

I'm getting married. ~ **You're getting married?**

(Tôi sẽ kết hôn. ~ bạn sẽ kết hôn à?)

She's invited thirteen people to dinner. ~ She's invited **how many?**

(Cô ấy đã mời 13 người đến ăn tối. - Cô ấy mời bao nhiêu người?)

i. Câu hỏi tu từ (Rhetorical questions)

Câu hỏi tu từ được dùng như một biện pháp tu từ (làm cho câu văn trở nên bóng bẩy, ngụ ý, lôi cuốn người đọc) và không đòi hỏi câu trả lời. Câu hỏi tu từ khẳng định thường hàm ý phủ định và câu hỏi tu từ phủ định thường hàm ý khẳng định.

Is that a reason for despair?

(Đó là lí do để tuyệt vọng sao?)

[= Đó chắc chắn không phải là lí do để tuyệt vọng]

Who knows?

(*Ai biết được?*) [= Không ai biết cả]

Is no one going to defend him?

(Không có ai bênh vực anh ta sao?)

[= *Chắc rằng một người nào đó sẽ bênh vực anh ta.*]

Câu hỏi Yes - No phủ định thường ám chỉ một tình huống khẳng định.

Haven't I done enough for you?

(*Tôi làm chưa đủ cho bạn hay sao?*)

[= I have done enough for you.]

2.3. Câu cầu khiến (Imperative sentences)

Câu cầu khiến dùng để diễn tả yêu cầu, mệnh lệnh, cấm đoán... Có hai loại câu cầu khiến:

a. Câu mệnh lệnh (Command): thường bắt đầu bằng các động từ ở dạng nguyên thể.

Open the door! (*Hãy mở cửa*)

Switch on the light! (*Bật đèn lên!*)

- Câu mệnh lệnh khẳng định (Affirmative imperative) thường bắt đầu bằng động từ nguyên mẫu không to (bare-infinitive).

Verb (bare-inf.) + object/ preposition

Bring another chair. (*Hãy mang lại cái ghế khác*)

Open the door. (*Hãy mở cửa*)

Get out of here. (*Hãy ra khỏi đây*)

Hurry up or we'll be late. (*Hãy nhanh lên nếu không chúng ta sẽ bị muộn.*)

+ **Do** có thể được đặt trước động từ nguyên thể để nhấn mạnh câu mệnh lệnh khẳng định.

Do sit down. (*Ngồi xuống*).

Do be quiet. (*Im lặng nào*)

* Câu mệnh lệnh phủ định (negative imperative) được thành lập bằng *do not (don't)* + động từ nguyên mẫu.

Don't + verb (bare-inf) + object

Don't smoke in class! (*Đừng hút thuốc trong lớp!*)

Don't be late! (*Đừng đến trễ!*)

→ Câu mệnh lệnh thường không có chủ ngữ, nhưng chúng ta có thể dùng danh từ hoặc đại từ để nhấn mạnh hoặc chỉ rõ chúng ta đang nói với ai.

Somebody tell me the truth.

(*Ai đó hãy cho tôi biết sự thật đi.*)

ThichTiengAnh.Com - Website chia sẻ đề thi, tài liệu Tiếng Anh hay, mới nhất
Mary come here - everybody else stay where you are.

(Mary đến đây – còn những người khác hãy ở nguyên vị trí)

Don't **anybody** say a word. (Không ai được nói lời nào.)

[NOT ~~Anybody~~ don't say ...]

- **You** được dùng trước câu mệnh lệnh để nhấn mạnh sự thuyết phục hoặc sự giận dữ.

You be quiet! (Mày hãy im đi!)

You mind your own business, and leave this to me!

(Mày hãy lo công chuyện của mày đi, còn việc này hãy để cho tao!)

- Chủ từ có thể được diễn đạt bằng một danh từ đứng cuối cụm từ.

Eat your breakfast, **boys**. (Các cậu bé, hãy ăn điểm tâm đi.)

Come in, **Tom**. (Vào đi Tom)

→ **always** và **never** có thể đứng trước câu mệnh lệnh.

Always remember what I told you

(Hãy luôn nhớ những điều tôi đã nói với anh)

Never speak to me like that again.

(Đừng bao giờ nói với tôi như thế nữa.)

→ Câu mệnh lệnh có thể được thành lập với **Let (+ object) + bare-infinitive.**)

Let me see. (Hãy để tôi xem nào)

Let's (Let us) go home. (Chúng ta hãy về nhà.)

Let's not open the door. (Chúng ta đừng mở cửa)

[= Don't let's open the door.]

Let them go by train. (Hãy để họ đi bằng xe lửa.)

b. Câu yêu cầu (Requests)

Câu yêu cầu là hình thức câu khiến lịch sự, nhã nhặn rất thông dụng trong giao tiếp. Câu yêu cầu có rất nhiều dạng khác nhau. Trong các ví dụ sau đây, tất cả đều hàm ý: “Anh làm ơn cho tôi mượn một cuốn sách, ngày mai tôi sẽ trả”. Mức độ lịch sự của những câu này ít nhiều có khác nhau:

- | | |
|--|--------------------------|
| 1. Please lend | me a book till tomorrow. |
| 2. Will you lend | me a book till tomorrow? |
| 3. Can you lend | me a book till tomorrow? |
| 4. Could you lend | me a book till tomorrow? |
| 5. Would you like to lend | me a book till tomorrow? |
| 6. Would you lend | me a book till tomorrow? |
| 7. Would you mind lending | me a book till tomorrow? |
| 8. Would you be kind enough to lend | me a book till tomorrow? |
| 9. Would you be good enough to lend | me a book till tomorrow? |

10. **Would** you be so kind as to lend me a book till tomorrow?

11. **Would** you be so good as to lend me a book till tomorrow?

2.4. Câu cảm thán (Exclamatory sentence)

Câu cảm thán là câu được dùng để diễn đạt cảm xúc hay thái độ (ngạc nhiên, tán phục, tội nghiệp, khinh miệt, ghê tởm, thú vị...) của một người trước một người, sự vật hoặc sự việc nào đó.

How fast he runs! (*Anh ấy chạy nhanh thật!*)

What a lovely girl! (*Cô gái đáng yêu quá!*)

Câu cảm thán thường được thành lập với *how, what, so, such* và hình thức câu hỏi phủ định.

a. Câu cảm thán với *how* (Exclamations with how)

How + adjective

How beautiful! (*Thật đẹp quá!*)

How expensive! (*Thật đắt quá!*)

How + adjective/ adverb + subject + verb

How cold the night is! (*Đêm thật lạnh quá!*)

How old he is! (*Ông ấy già quá!*)

How fast she speaks! (*Cô ấy nói nhanh quá!*)

How well John writes! (*John viết hay quá!*)

How + subject + verb

How you've grown! (*Cháu lớn nhanh quá!*)

b. Câu cảm thán với *what* (Exclamations with what)

What + a/an + (adjective)+ singular countable noun

What a terrible noise. (*Tiếng ồn kinh khủng quá!*)

What an intelligent girl! (*Thật là một cô gái thông minh!*)

What a nuisance! (*Thật phiền toái!*)

What + (adjective) + uncountable/plural noun

What awful weather! (*Thời tiết khó chịu làm sao.*)

What lovely flowers! (*Hoa đẹp quá!*)

What rubbish! (*Thật là đồ rác rưởi!*)

What (+ a/ an) + adjective + noun + subject + verb

What a beautiful smile your sister has!

(*Chị của bạn có nụ cười đẹp quá!*)

What nice shoes you've got on!

(*Đôi giày của bạn đang mang đẹp quá!*)

What rubbish he writes!

(*Anh ta viết tệ làm sao!*)

c. Câu cảm thán với so và such (Exclamation with so and such)

so	+	adjective
such (+ a/ an)	+	adjective + noun

He is **so** fat! (*Anh ta mập quá.!*)

It was **such** a boring speech! (*Bài diễn văn buồn tẻ quá!*)

She has **such** an expensive coat!

(*Cô ấy có cái áo khoác đắt tiền làm sao!*)

Không dùng *a / an* trước danh từ số nhiều (plural noun) và danh từ không đếm được (uncountable noun).

You have **such** good books! (*Bạn có những cuốn sách hay làm sao!*)

Such có thể được dùng trước danh từ không có tính từ.

She's **such** a baby! (*Cô ấy trẻ con quá!*)

d. Dạng câu hỏi phủ định (Negative question forms)

Dạng câu hỏi phủ định cũng có thể tạo thành câu cảm thán.

Isn't the weather nice! (*Thời tiết đẹp quá!*)

Hasn't she grown! (*Cô bé lớn nhanh quá!*)

e. Một số các từ ngữ thường dùng được xem như từ cảm thán.

Chúng được xem như từ rút gọn của câu cảm thán:

Goodbye = God be with ye. [ye = you]

(*Cầu Chúa phù hộ anh*)

Farewell = May you fare well, [fare = go]

(*Chúc anh đi bình yên*)

Well done = You have done well.

(*Anh chơi hay quá!*)

III. CHỨC NĂNG VÀ TRẬT TỰ TỪ TRONG CÂU (Function and order of words in the sentences)

1. Chức năng của từ trong câu (Functions of words in the sentences)

a. Chủ ngữ (Subjects)

Chủ ngữ là từ hoặc cụm từ chỉ người, sự vật hoặc sự việc thực hiện hoặc chịu trách nhiệm cho hành động của động từ trong câu và thường đứng trước động từ. Mỗi câu trong tiếng Anh đều phải có chủ ngữ, tuy nhiên trong câu mệnh lệnh, chủ ngữ "you" được hiểu ngầm.

- Chủ ngữ có thể là một danh từ hoặc một cụm danh từ.

Coffee is delicious. (*Cà phê rất ngon*)

Jane likes shopping. (*Jane thích đi mua sắm*)

My father is a pilot. (*Cha tôi là phi công*)

That new red car is John's.

(*Chiếc xe hơi mới màu đỏ đó là của John.*)

- Chủ ngữ có thể là đại từ.

I usually get up early in the morning.

(*Tôi thường thức dậy sớm vào buổi sáng*)

Somebody called while **you** were out.

(*Khi anh vắng nhà có người nào đó đã gọi điện.*)

- Chủ ngữ cũng có thể là một động từ nguyên thể (to-infinitive) hoặc danh động từ (gerund).

To lean out of the window is dangerous.

(*Nghiêng người ra ngoài cửa sổ rất nguy hiểm.*)

Refusing invitations is not always easy.

(*Không phải lúc nào từ chối lời mời cũng dễ dàng.*)

- Trong một số trường hợp, chủ ngữ thật (real subject không xuất hiện ở vị trí bình thường (trước động từ) mà nó đứng sau động từ *It* hoặc *There* được dùng làm chủ ngữ giả của câu.

It's hard to believe what he says.

(*Thật khó tin được những điều anh ta nói*)

[= What he says is hard to believe.]

There is a man at the bus-stop.

(*Có một người đàn ông ở trạm xe buýt.*)

[= The man is at the bus-stop.]

b. Động từ (Verbs)

- Động từ là từ theo sau chủ ngữ trong lời nói khẳng định. Động từ diễn đạt hành động hoặc trạng thái của chủ ngữ trong câu.

- Động từ có thể là một từ đơn.

John **drives** too fast. (*John lái xe quá nhanh.*)

They **speak** English fluently. (*Họ nói tiếng Anh lưu loát.*)

- Động từ có thể là một cụm từ.

We **are going to** Miami tomorrow.

(*Ngày mai chúng tôi sẽ đi Miami.*)

Jane **has been studying** French for 5 years.

(*Jane đã học tiếng Pháp được 5 năm rồi.*)

c. Bổ ngữ (Complements)

Bổ ngữ là từ hoặc cụm từ (thường là một danh từ, cụm danh từ, hoặc tính từ) được dùng để mô tả chủ ngữ hoặc tân ngữ.

My father is **a doctor**. (*Cha tôi là bác sĩ*)

That cat regards Bill **as his father**.

(*Con mèo đó xem Bill như cha của nó.*)

Leaves turn **yellow** in Autumn.

(*Lá ngả vàng vào mùa thu*)

- Bổ ngữ cho chủ ngữ (subject complement) thường đi sau các động từ *be, look, seem, become, get, feel, turn, ...*

Alice is **a ballet dancer**. (*Alice là diễn viên múa ba lê.*)

The weather gets **cold** in the evening.

(*Thời tiết lạnh vào buổi tối.*)

→ *a ballet dancer* và *cold* làm bổ ngữ cho chủ ngữ *Alice* và *the weather* và được gọi là *subject complement*.

- Bổ ngữ cho tân ngữ (object complement) thường đứng ngay sau tân ngữ mà nó bổ nghĩa.

She called her husband **a liar**.

(*Bà ta gọi chồng mình là kẻ dối trá.*)

They painted their house **blue**.

(*Họ sơn nhà màu xanh.*)

Why ever did they elect him **chairman**?

(*Sao họ lại bầu ông ta làm chủ tịch?*)

IV. TRẬT TỰ CỦA TỪ TRONG CÂU (The order of words in the sentence)

Các mẫu câu cơ bản (Basic sentence patterns)

Hàng ngày, chúng ta có thể đọc hoặc nghe hàng ngàn phát ngôn thật đa dạng trong tiếng Anh, nhưng thật ra chúng ta có thể quy vào một số mẫu câu nhất định. Số mẫu câu này có thể thay đổi tùy theo sự sắp xếp của các nhà ngữ pháp. Những thành phần ghi trong mẫu câu tiêu biểu cho những đơn vị cơ bản nhất của mẫu câu ấy. Chúng ta hãy xem mẫu câu Chủ từ x Động từ (SV) sau đây:

Lions roar. (*Sư tử gầm*)

Câu trên chỉ gồm có hai từ tiêu biểu cho hai thành phần:

1. Chủ từ: Lions

2. Động từ: roar

Vậy câu trên thuộc mẫu câu: Chủ từ x Động từ (SV).

Chúng ta lại xem câu sau đây:

All the old circus **lions** that my brother is keeping in a shed behind our

house roar so much every morning about 4:30 that they wake up the whole neighbourhood.

(Tất cả những con sư tử xiếc già nua anh tôi đang nhốt trong chuồng sau nhà gâm thét khoảng chừng 4g30 mỗi sáng nhiều đến nỗi làm cả xóm thức giấc.)

Mặc dù câu rất dài, thật ra nó chỉ chứa hai thành phần cơ bản: Chủ từ x Động từ (SV): Lions roar. Các từ khác chỉ đóng vai trò phẩm định (modifier) cho hai thành phần cơ bản trên mà thôi.

Tiếng Anh có sáu mẫu cơ bản sau đây:

1. Chủ từ x động từ (SV)
2. Chủ từ x động từ x bổ ngữ (SVC)
3. Chủ từ x động từ x tân ngữ (SVO)
4. Chủ từ x động từ x tân ngữ x tân ngữ (SVOO)
5. Chủ từ x động từ x tân ngữ x bổ ngữ (SVOC)
6. THERE x động từ x chủ từ (THERE x VS)

1. Mẫu câu chủ ngữ x động từ (SV)

Chủ ngữ	Động từ
Lions	roar.
He	left.
The child	laughed.
Who	is speaking?
We all	breathe, eat and drink.

Những động từ thuộc mẫu này là những nội động từ (intransitive verbs), không cần có tân ngữ.

2. Mẫu câu chủ ngữ x động từ x bổ ngữ (SVC)

Chủ từ	Động từ	Bổ ngữ
He	is	happy
Who	are	you?
That	is	what I want
He	is	out of town

Động từ *be* trong mẫu câu này được theo sau bởi danh từ, tính từ hoặc một cụm từ như trong hai ví dụ sau cùng. Động Từ *be* cũng có thể là một nội động từ và có thể dung trong mẫu Chủ từ x động từ (SV) trên, như:

Whatever is it right. [SV + SVC]

(Bất cứ cái gì tồn tại đều có lí)

I think; therefore I am. [SV]

(Tôi suy nghĩ, vậy tôi tồn tại)

Trong ví dụ đầu tiên ở trên, động từ *is* thứ nhất thuộc mẫu SV và động từ *is* thứ hai thuộc mẫu SVC. Ngoài động từ *be*, động từ trong mẫu SVC có thể là một động từ nối (linking verb), được theo sau bởi một tính từ hoặc một danh từ.

A.

Chủ ngữ	Động từ	Tính từ
Alice	looked	foolish.
The meals	tasted	terrible
The cake	turned	sour.
My arm	stayed	sore.
The rivers	are running	dry.
His story	rang	true
Why does she	appear	so sad?
His dream	has come	true
Her father	falls	ill
The door	flew	open
They	remained	calm
It	sounds	good
Have you	gone	mad?
	keep	calm!
The screw	worked	loose
The plan	proved	useless
He	feels	hot
These roses	smell	sweet
She	seems (to be)	rich
It	becomes	hot.
She	grows	older.
The boy	sat	tight in the saddle

B.

Chủ ngữ	Động từ	Danh từ
Albert	becomes	my brother.
He	looke	a fool.
John	continued	my friend.
He	turned	socialist.
The fisherman	fell	a prey to the angry waves.
Albert	seems (to be)	a happy man.

Bổ ngữ trong mẫu (2) này khi chỉ về thời gian, khoảng cách hay trọng lượng có thể kết hợp với một số động từ khác. Giới từ *for* được dùng (nhưng cũng có thể bỏ đi) khi đứng trước danh từ chỉ sự đo lường về thời gian và khoảng cách.

C.

Chủ ngữ	Động từ	(for) + Danh từ
They	walked	(for) ten miles.
Will you	stay	(for) the night?
He	waited	(for) an hour.
We	have come	a long way.
The spacecraft	weighed	five tons.
The storm	lasted	two days.
This bicycle	cost	50 dollars
The forest	stretched	(for) miles and miles.

3. Mẫu câu Chủ từ x động từ x tân ngữ (SVO)

Chủ ngữ	Động từ	Tân ngữ
The boy	cut	his finger.
She	likes	music
A baby	cannot dress	itself.
Do you	know	the answer?
She	smiled	her thanks

Tân ngữ trong mẫu này cũng có thể là một động từ nguyên mẫu:

A.

Chủ ngữ	Động từ	Động từ nguyên mẫu
He	Wants	to go
They	decided	not to go
I	don't like	to ask you
Do you	remember	to mail the letter?

Tân ngữ trong mẫu này có thể là một động danh từ:

B.

Chủ ngữ	Động từ	Danh động từ
She	likes	dancing.
The students	began	talking
	please stop	talking
Would you	mind	passing the sugar?

Tân ngữ trong mẫu này cũng có thể là một cụm từ bắt đầu với *who*, *which*, *what*... + động từ nguyên mẫu hoặc một mệnh đề:

C.

Chủ ngữ	Động từ	Cụm từ/mệnh đề
We	do not know	what to do
Do you	know	how to answer this question?
I	hope	that you will understand it
He	said	that he would come

Chúng ta cần chú ý không phải tất cả các câu thuộc mẫu SVO này đều có thể chuyển sang dạng thụ động.

4. Mẫu câu Chủ ngữ x động từ x tân ngữ x tân ngữ (SVOO)

Tân ngữ có hai loại: tân ngữ trực tiếp (direct object) thường chỉ về vật, tân ngữ gián tiếp (indirect object) thường chỉ về người. Trật tự của hai tân ngữ này có thể thay đổi lẫn nhau.

A.

Chủ ngữ	Động từ	Tân ngữ gián tiếp	Tân ngữ trực tiếp
They	Get	me	a taxi!
They	sold	him	their car.
will you	lend	me	your book?
He	bought	his wife	a watch
His mother	told	him	a story
My friend	handed	me	a book
He	made	himself	a cup of tea.
I	owe	john	a pound.

Mẫu B dưới đây là dạng biến đổi của mẫu A nói trên. Giới từ (*to* hoặc *for*) kết hợp với từng động từ nhất định, người học cần học thuộc lòng.

B.

Chủ ngữ	Động từ	Tân ngữ trực tiếp	Giới từ	Tân ngữ gián tiếp
I	gave	the box	to	him
He	bought	a watch	for	his wife
He	made	a cup of tea	for	himself
His mother	told	a story	to	him
	get	a taxi	for	me
I	owe	a pound	to	John

Cả hai tân ngữ của mẫu câu này có thể đều là đại từ:

I give John the key

I give him the key

I give the key to him

I give it to him

Trong đàm thoại, chúng ta có thể nói: I give it him.

Trong mẫu câu C sau đây, hai tân ngữ không thể thay đổi nhau; đây là trường hợp chỉ xảy ra đối với vài động từ mà thôi.

C.

Chủ ngữ	Động từ	Tân ngữ 1	Tân ngữ 2
I	envy	you	your garden
He	struck	him	a heavy blow
Your help	has saved	me	a lot of work
	forgive	us	our sin

Với các động từ đã được liệt kê trong mẫu C, trật tự của các tân ngữ 1 và 2 là cố định. Đối với mẫu B, các giới từ thường dùng là *to* và *for*, tuy nhiên các giới từ khác vẫn có thể xảy ra:

I'll play you a game of chess.

(Tôi sẽ chơi với anh một ván cờ)

I'll play a game of chess with you.

Hoặc: I'll play a game of chess against you.

She asked Jim a favour.

(Cô ta yêu cầu Jim giúp đỡ)

She asked a favour of Jim.

Mặc dù *May I ask a favour of you?* (= *May I ask you to help me?*) là một yêu cầu khá thông dụng trong đàm thoại, *She asked a favour of Jim* rất ít khi được sử dụng trong tiếng Anh.

Chúng ta cũng cần chú ý trong mẫu A, nếu tân ngữ gián tiếp chỉ về vật, đồ vật thì không thể chuyển đổi sang mẫu B được:

He gave the car a wash.

(Anh ta lau chùi xe hơi)

Không thể chuyển đổi thành:

He gave a wash to the car.

Tương tự:

They never gave the plan a fair trial.

(Họ không bao giờ chịu thử nghiệm kế hoạch ấy một cách công bằng)

Không thể chuyển đổi thành:

They never gave a fair trial to the plan.

Ngoài ra, mặc dù cả hai câu:

1. I've found a place for my tree.
2. I've found a place for my sister.

Đều đúng và thuộc về mẫu B, chỉ có câu 2 với tân ngữ chỉ người là *my sister* mới chuyển sang mẫu A được mà thôi.

1. *I've found my tree a place, [sai]
2. I've found my sister a place, [đúng]

D.

Chủ ngữ	Động từ	Tân ngữ	Mệnh đề
She	told	me	how to make a cake
My teacher	showed	me	how to do the exercise
She	taught	her children	how to behave properly
He	forgot to tell	me	where to park the car.

5. Mẫu câu Chủ ngữ x động từ x tân ngữ x bổ ngữ (SVOC)

Bổ ngữ (complement) trong mẫu câu này có thể là một tính từ, danh từ, hiện tại phân từ, quá khứ phân từ... Dù thuộc từ loại nào, tất cả những bổ ngữ này đều cho thấy mối quan hệ với tân ngữ đứng ngay trước nó. Vì thế các bổ ngữ này được gọi là bổ ngữ của tân ngữ (objective complement).

Chúng ta hãy so sánh hai câu sau đây:

1. He called me a taxi. [SVOO]
(Anh ấy gọi cho tôi một chiếc taxi)
2. He called me a fool. [SVOC].
(Anh ấy gọi tôi là thằng ngu)

A.

Chủ ngữ	Động từ	Tân ngữ	Tính từ
My mother	will get	the dinner	ready
The dye	turned	her hair	green
The sun	keeps	us	warm
The weather	makes	me	uneasy
I	found	the box	empty

B.

Chủ ngữ	Động từ	Tân ngữ	Hiện tại phân từ
I	smell	something	burning
She	kept	me	waiting
We	caught	them	stealing money
I	found	him	working in the garden
We	watched	the train	leaving the station

C

Chủ ngữ	Động từ	Tân ngữ	Quá khứ phân từ
I	had	my chicken	killed.
You	must get	your hair	cut.
We	heard	the music	played by the band.
I	have seen	it	done.
I	want	my fish	fried, not boiled.

D.

Chủ ngữ	Động từ	Tân ngữ	ĐT nguyên mẫu không to
We	made	him	come.
We	heard	the boy	shout.
mary	saw	him	steal the money.
	Watch	him	do it.

E.

Chủ ngữ	Động từ	Tân ngữ	ĐT nguyên mẫu có to
He	wants	me	to come early.
I	told	him	to open the door.
He	asks	me	to help him.
We	warned	the boy	not to be late.
John	likes	his wife	to dress well.

F.

Chủ ngữ	Động từ	Tân ngữ	Danh từ
We	called	our dog	"Spot"
They	named	their ship	Victoria.
We	elected	him	President.
The players	made	John	Captain of the team.

G.

Chủ ngữ	Động từ	Tân ngữ	(Cụm) trạng từ
The man	took	his hat	off.
The peasant	placed	his sickle	on the grass.
They	treated	me	kindly.
We	put	it	in the sack.

Chúng ta cần chú ý trạng từ hoặc cụm trạng từ trong mẫu G là thành phần bắt buộc không bỏ đi được. Nó hoàn toàn khác với mẫu câu (3) Chủ ngữ x động từ x tân ngữ nói rộng có phó từ kèm theo nhưng phó từ này có thể bỏ đi được:

[Không thể bỏ *in the sack*]

We saw it in the sack. [SVO]

[có thể bỏ *in the sack*]

6. Mẫu câu There x be x Chủ từ (There x be x S)

There	is	someone	at the door.
There	is	a book	on the table.
There	is	some chairs	in the room.

There dùng trong mẫu câu này thường không được nhấn mạnh và được đọc là [ðə]. Ngoài động từ *be*, một vài động từ khác như *seem*, *appear*, *come* cũng được xem như thuộc mẫu câu này:

There comes a time when it is useless to struggle.

There seems (to be) no doubt about it.

(*Dường như không có gì đáng nghi ngờ về việc đó*)

Ngược lại, các trường hợp sau đây với *there* không thuộc mẫu câu trên:

There's the bell ringing for church! [gọi sự chú ý]

(*Chuông gọi đi xem lễ nhà thờ kia!*)

There comes John! [Đảo ngữ]

(*John đến kia!*)

The door opened, and there entered a stranger. [nhấn mạnh]

(*Cửa mở, một người lạ bước vào*)

There's good boy! [khen ngợi]

(*Cậu bé giỏi quá!*)

There trong các trường hợp trên luôn luôn được nhấn mạnh và đọc là [ðeə]. Ngoài mẫu câu với *there* trên đây, chúng ta còn thấy trường hợp với **It x động từ x chủ từ**:

It seems that both of you were wrong.

(*Hình như cả hai anh đều sai cả*)

It doesn't matter what you do.

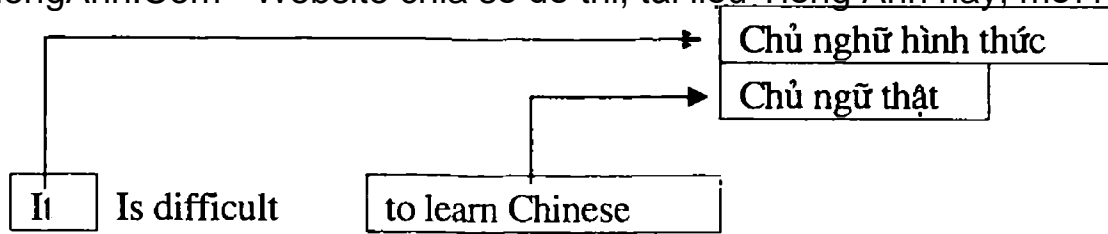
(*Anh có làm gì điều đó cũng không quan trọng*)

It happened that I wasn't at home when they called.

(*Điều ngẫu nhiên là tôi đã vắng nhà lúc họ gọi đến*)

It trong các ví dụ trên, cũng như *there* ở mẫu câu (6), chỉ là chủ từ hình thức (formal subject), chủ từ thật đi sau động từ.

Các câu sau đây, với chủ từ thật nằm ở cuối, cũng có thể xem như thuộc trường hợp này:



[=To learn Chinese is difficult]

(*Học tiếng Hoa thật khó*)

It must be very pleasant, living in a flat like this.

(*Sống trong một căn hộ như thế này thật là dễ chịu*)

V. HÌNH THỨC NHẤN MẠNH

Hình thức nhấn mạnh (emphasis) thường được dùng khi chúng ta muốn bày tỏ cảm xúc mạnh về điều đang nói (nhấn mạnh xúc cảm), nêu lên sự tương phản (nhấn mạnh nêu bật sự tương phản) hoặc cho thấy điều mong đợi đã xảy ra.

1. Nhấn mạnh trong phát âm (Emphasis in pronunciation)

Trong lời nói, chúng ta có thể nhấn mạnh từ bằng cách đọc lớn hơn và với ngữ điệu cao hơn. Chúng ta cũng có thể kéo dài nguyên âm, hoặc ngưng lại trước từ được nhấn mạnh. Trong văn bản, những từ nhấn mạnh thường được in nghiêng, in đậm, viết hoa hoặc gạch chân.

This is the **last** opportunity

(*Đây là cơ hội cuối cùng*)

He lives in **France**, not Spain.

(*Anh ta sống ở Pháp chứ không phải Tây Ban Nha*)

Mary, I'm **IN LOVE!** Please don't tell anybody!

(*Mary này, tôi đang yêu! Đừng nói với ai nhé!*)

2. Nhấn mạnh trong cách viết (Emphasis in writing)

a. **Nhấn mạnh động từ (Emphasize verbs):** Để làm cho câu nghe mạnh hơn hoặc để nêu bật sự tương phản, chúng ta thường nhấn mạnh trợ động từ (auxiliary verbs)

I **am** telling the truth – you must believe me!

(*Tôi đang nói thật đấy – bạn phải tin tôi!*)

You really **should** drive more carefully. We almost had an accident.

(*Anh phải lái xe cẩn thận hơn chút. Suýt chút nữa chúng ta bị tai nạn rồi.*)

Nếu trong câu nhấn mạnh không có trợ động từ, ta có thể dùng trợ động từ do để nhấn mạnh.

Do/does/ did + verb (bare-infinitive)

John visited her yesterday.

→ John **did** visit her yesterday.

(*Hôm qua John đã đến thăm cô ta*)

→ She **does** like you. (*Cô ta rất thích anh*)

→ You do look nice today! (*Hôm nay trông bạn xinh quá!*)

Cấu trúc *What...do* cũng có thể được dùng để nhấn mạnh động từ. Hình thức của động từ có thể thay đổi.

He **screamed**. → **What he did** was (to) scream.

(*Điều mà anh ta đã làm là hét lên*)

She **writes** science fiction.

→ **What she does** is (to) write science fiction.

(*Việc mà bà ấy làm là viết truyện khoa học viễn tưởng*)

Lưu ý:

Khi trợ động từ được nhấn mạnh thì trạng từ có thể thay đổi (trạng từ thường được đặt trước từ nhấn mạnh).

You have **certainly** grown.

→ You **certainly have** grown! (*Cháu hẳn đã trưởng thành rồi!*)

b. Nhấn mạnh tính từ (Emphasize adjectives): tính từ thường được nhấn mạnh bằng cấu trúc:

It is/was + adj + to-infinitive

Travelling by air is fast.

→ It is **fast** to travel by air. (*Đi bằng máy bay thật là nhanh*)

Learning a foreign language is necessary.

→ It is **necessary** to learn a foreign language.

(*Học ngoại ngữ rất cần thiết*)

We found that getting a visa was difficult.

→ We found that it was **difficult** to get a visa.

(*Chúng tôi nhận thấy rằng thật khó xin hộ chiếu*)

c. Nhấn mạnh danh từ, đại từ hoặc trạng từ (Emphasize nouns, pronouns or adverbs): Để nhấn mạnh danh từ, đại từ hoặc trạng từ, ta có thể

- Dùng các đại từ nhấn mạnh (emphatic pronouns) như *myself*, *yourself*, *himself*, *itself*, v.v. để nhấn mạnh cho danh từ (nouns) hoặc đại từ nhân xưng (personal pronouns). Đại từ nhấn mạnh thường đứng ngay sau từ được nhấn mạnh hoặc ở cuối câu.

The house **itself** is nice, but the garden is very small.

(*Ngôi nhà thì đẹp, nhưng khu vườn thì nhỏ xíu.*)

My sister designs all these clothes **herself**.

(*Chính chị tôi thiết kế tất cả quần áo này*)

I'll come and see the manager **himself**.

(*Tôi sẽ đến gặp chính giám đốc.*)

ThichTiengAnh.Com - Website chia sẻ đề thi, tài liệu Tiếng Anh hay, mới nhất
- Dùng *What... is / was ...* để nhấn mạnh danh từ chỉ sự vật hoặc sự việc; *the person who ... is/ was ...* nhấn mạnh danh từ chỉ người; *the place where, the day when/ that, the reason why ... is/ are ...* nhấn mạnh danh từ chỉ nơi chốn, thời gian, lý do.

I need a good rest.

→ **What** I need is a good rest.

(*Những gì tôi cần là sự nghỉ ngơi thoải mái.*)

She kept some old photos in this wooden box.

→ **What** she kept in this wooden box was some old photos.

(*Những gì cô ta cất giữ trong chiếc hộp gỗ này là vài bức ảnh.*)

Nancy keeps a parrot in her bedroom.

→ **The person who** keeps a parrot in her bedroom is Nancy.

(*Chính Nancy là người nuôi con vẹt trong phòng ngủ của mình.*)

Jack went to London on Tuesday to see Colin.

→ **The day when** Jack went to London to see Colin was Tuesday.

(*Ngày Jack đi London gặp Colin là thứ Ba*)

→ **The reason why** Jack went to London was to see Colin.

(*Lý do Jack đi London là để gặp Colin*)

Lưu ý: Các từ được nhấn mạnh cũng có thể được đặt ở đầu câu.

A good rest is what I need. (*Sự nghỉ ngơi thoải mái là điều tôi cần*)

- Dùng cấu trúc *It is/ was ...* để nhấn mạnh một danh từ đại từ, hoặc trạng từ.

It is/was + từ được nhấn mạnh (stressed words) + that/who + S + V

I love you. → It's **you** that I love. (*Người anh yêu chính là em*)

John paid for the drinks. → It was **John** who paid for the drinks.

(*Chính John đã thanh toán tiền nước*)

Brazil won the World Cup in 2002.

→ It was **Brazil** that won the World Cup in 2002.

(*Chính Brazil đã đoạt được cúp Thế giới vào năm 2002*)

The robbery happened yesterday evening.

→ It was **yesterday evening** that the robbery happened.

(*Vụ cướp xảy ra đúng vào chiều hôm qua*)

Lưu ý:

- Khi từ nhấn mạnh là một đại từ hay danh từ chỉ người, chúng ta cần chú ý chức năng làm chủ ngữ hay tân ngữ của nó để dùng *who* hoặc *that* cho thích hợp.

We want to see **the manager**.

→ It's the manager **that** we want to see.

(*Chúng tôi muốn gặp chính giám đốc*)

The manager welcomed us to the hotel.

→ It was the manager **who** welcomed us to the hotel.

(*Chính giám đốc đã chào đón chúng tôi đến khách sạn*)

- Dạng câu có 2 mệnh đề

I need water. I don't need milk. → **It is water, not milk** that I need.

(*Cái tôi cần chính là nước chứ không phải sữa*)

I saw Hoa. I didn't see Lan. → **It was Hoa, not Lan** that I saw.

(*Người tôi gặp chính là Hoa chứ không phải là Lan*)

Peter lent us the money. Paul didn't.

→ **It was Peter** who lent us the money, not Paul.

(*Peter chính là người đã cho chúng ta mượn tiền, không phải Paul.*)

3. Nhấn mạnh trong câu mệnh lệnh (Emphasis in Commands)

a. Câu mệnh lệnh khẳng định (Affirmative commands)

Do + Verb (bare-inf.)

Sit down. → **Do sit down!** (*hãy ngồi xuống đi!*)

Say you'll stay for dinner. # **Do say** you'll stay for dinner!

(*Hãy nói là anh sẽ ở lại ăn tối đi!*)

b. Câu mệnh lệnh phủ định (Negative commands)

Don't you + Verb (bare-inf.)

Don't talk in class. → **Don't you talk** in class.

(*Không được nói chuyện trong lớp*)

Don't make too much noise.

→ **Don't you make** too much noise!

(*Không được gây ồn ào*)

VI. SỰ ĐẢO CÂU (Inversion of the sentence)

Thông thường, một câu kể bao giờ cũng bắt đầu bằng chủ từ tiếp theo là một động từ. Tuy nhiên, trật tự của câu như trên có thể bị thay đổi khi người nói (hay viết) muốn nhấn mạnh. Sự đảo câu xảy ra khi:

1. **Neither, nor** và **so** được dùng để diễn tả người, vật hay sự vật này tương tự như người, vật hay sự vật kia:

(a) Mary is ill today. (*Hôm nay Mary bị ốm*)

So is Tom. (*Tom cũng vậy*)

(b) I can't understand Japanese. (*Tôi không hiểu được tiếng Nhật*)

Nor can I. (*Tôi cũng không*)

(c) I can't swim. (*Tôi không bơi được*)

Neither can. (*Tôi cũng không*)

Thay vì dùng *neither* và *nor*, trong hai câu (b) và (c) trên chúng ta có thể dùng *not...either* với trật tự bình thường : "I can't either".

2. *Seldom, rarely* và *never* được nhấn mạnh:

Trong trường hợp này *seldom, rarely* và *never* luôn đứng ở đầu câu, theo sau là trợ động từ:

Seldom had I seen such a terrible thing.

(Hiếm khi nào tôi lại chứng kiến một điều khủng khiếp như thế)

Rarely had we seen a man look so unhappy.

(ít khi nào chúng ta lại thấy một người đau khổ như thế)

Never has Tom felt better.

(Tom không bao giờ cảm thấy khỏe hơn thế)

3. *Hardly... when, scarcely... when* và *no sooner... than* được dùng để diễn tả một hành động xảy ra ngay sau một hành động khác.

Hardly had I arrived when I heard a terrible explosion.

(Tôi vừa đến thì nghe một tiếng nổ khủng khiếp)

Scarcely had we started lunch when the doorbell rang.

(Chúng tôi vừa bắt đầu bữa cơm trưa thì chuông cửa reo)

No sooner was she back home than she heard the news.

(Cô ấy vừa về nhà thì nghe tin ấy)

4. *Only, not only, not until* được nhấn mạnh và đặt ở đầu câu:

Only after a few days did I begin to see the results of my work.

(Chỉ sau vài ngày tôi mới thấy được kết quả việc làm của mình)

Only by asking questions can you learn.

(Chỉ bằng cách nêu câu hỏi bạn mới hiểu được vấn đề)

Only after a year did I begin to see the result of my work.

(Mãi một năm sau tôi mới thấy được kết quả việc làm của mình)

Not only did we lose all our money, **but we** also came close to losing our lives.

(Không chỉ chúng tôi mất hết tiền mà còn suýt mất mạng)

Not until the war ended did he return to his native village.

(Anh ấy không trở về làng quê của mình cho mãi đến khi chiến tranh kết thúc)

5. Các cụm từ chỉ nơi chốn hoặc thứ tự được nhấn mạnh:

Near the old pagoda is a big banyan tree.

(Cạnh ngôi chùa cổ là một cây bàng lớn)

On a hill stood a very beautiful castle.

(Sừng sững trên một ngọn đồi là một lâu đài rất đẹp)

First came a police car, **then** came an ambulance.

(*Trước tiên một xe cảnh sát chạy đến, tiếp theo là xe cứu thương*)

Khi không muốn nhấn mạnh, chúng ta có thể đặt các cụm trạng từ, giới từ được nói đến *b, c, d và e* trên đây theo trật tự thông thường.

EXERCISES

1. Underline the most suitable words in each sentence.

1. Let's go to London next weekend, shall we/won't we.
2. You shouldn't have told me, did you/should you?
3. Jim hasn't been waiting long, was he/has he?
4. You won't tell anyone about this, do you/will you?
5. You're not doing what I told you, do you/are you?
6. Answer the phone for me, will you/do you?
7. George can't have noticed, can he/has he?
8. You've got to leave now, don't you/haven't you?
9. Pam and Tim got married last year, didn't they/haven't they?
10. I don't think John's very friendly, does he/is he?

2. Rewrite each question, beginning as shown. Do not change the meaning.

1. What's the time?
Could you tell me *...what the time is?*.....
2. What does this mean?
Do you know.....
3. How much does this cost?
Could you tell me
4. What time does the museum open?
Do you know.....
5. Am I in the right seat?
Could you tell me
6. Where's Asham Street?
Do you know.....
7. Is this Trafalgar Square?
Could you tell me
8. When does this bus leave?
Do you know.....

3. Read each situation and write down the question.

1. You want to know if it is raining.

thichtienganh.com

2. You need to ask Poly where she lives.
3. You want to know if Mark has been to Los Angeles. Ask Sarah.
4. You would like to ask Nancy where she bought her coat.
5. You want to know if Laura plays tennis. Ask Trevor.
6. You want to ask Matthew if you can borrow his squash racket.
7. On the phone you want to know who you are speaking to.
8. You need to know how much video recorders cost.
9. You want to ask Adrian what he locked the door for.
10. You need to know if David will be at the club tonight. Ask him
11. You are wondering if Claire enjoyed her holiday.
12. You need to find out how long the journey takes.
13. You're in town with a friend, and you are wondering where the two of you are going to have lunch.
14. You want to know if the train is on time.
15. You are wondering if Mike and Harry go camping. Ask David.
16. You've forgotten when the course finishes. Ask your friend.
17. You want to ask what happens next.
18. You want to suggest to Rachel that you both go for a walk.
19. You want to know if Nick has got a motorbike. Ask him.
20. You are asking permission to come in.

4. Write the questions to which the underlined words are the answers.

1. Christopher is going to London by train
2. The Smiths have got three cars.
3. Janet works at the supermarket.
4. Anne is learning English because she will need it in her job.
5. The film was really romantic.
6. The meeting will take place next Tuesday.
7. Tessa switched off the computer.
8. Mr Johnson's burglar alarm was ringing.
9. Ann went to the dance with Martin.
10. The Olympic games are held every four years.
11. I weigh seventy-five kilos.
12. My father is an engineer.
13. I earn about \$250 a week.
14. It's about 200 meters from here to the post office.
15. The Vietnamese flag is red and yellow.
16. I bought a box of chocolates.

17. My friends are arriving at half past eight.
18. The meeting will last an hour.
19. Susan works in a toy shop.
20. We bought this computer magazine to read about business software.

5. Add a tag question to each sentence.

1. We're nearly there, ..*aren't we*..... ?
2. You haven't got a spare pen, ?
3. You're coming to my party,..... ?
4. You won't be late..... ?
5. Harry's fifteen, ?
6. Kate and Pat live in Leeds, ?
7. You don't feel well,..... ?
8. You like fish,..... ?
9. Richard's bought a new bike, ?
10. I shouldn't tell you this,.. ?
11. Don't leave anything behind, ?
12. David is bringing some wine,..... ?
13. You'll be home before midnight,..... ?
14. Harry was working in Bristol then, ?
15. Nobody knows who invented the wheel,..... ?
16. You don't need me any more,..... ?
17. The ticket to London doesn't cost a lot,..... ?
18. Let's invite the Smiths from next door,..... ?
19. You aren't too busy to talk,..... ?
20. Jean owns a restaurant,..... ?

6. Make a new sentence with a tag question which has the same meaning as the first sentence, beginning as shown. Make any necessary changes.

1. I'm sure that Paul doesn't like football.
Paul ..*daesn't like foathball*.....,.....*does he?*.....
2. I'm checking that you've got a sister.
You,
3. I don't think that you've done your homework!
You,
4. I'm angry that you sat next to Ellen!
You,
5. I'm surprised that the guests have arrived.
The guests.....,

6. I'm checking that your name is John.

Your name..... ,

7. I'm surprised to meet you and think that your name might be John.

Your name..... ,

8. You're certain that you didn't leave your wallet on the desk.

I..... ,

9. You're surprised that William has got married.

William..... ,

10. You're checking that this book is by Martin Aimless.

This book..... ,

7. Fill in the blanks with the imperative form (positive or negative) of these verbs: *place (2), clean, eat, make, switch, use, put, leave, keep.*

How to set up your computer

1. _____ your computer on a flat table or desk.
2. _____ sure your chair is a comfortable height.
3. _____ a screen to protect you from dangerous X-rays.
4. _____ it near a fire or the central heating.
5. _____ your computer in the sun.
6. _____ liquids (water, ect.) on the computer; they may get inside.
7. _____ while you're working; food can fall into the keyboard.
8. _____ the computer and dust it regularly.
9. _____ the floppy disks clean and in their box.
10. Always _____ off the computer and the screen when you finish.

8. Turn into exclamatory sentences. Beginning as shown.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. The boy is very clever. | What _____ ! |
| 2. She is very tall. | Isn't _____ ! |
| 3. The novel was interesting. | How _____ ! |
| 4. They wrote slowly. | Didn't _____ ! |
| 5. The horses are fast. | What _____ ! |
| 6. The dress is expensive. | How _____ ! |
| 7. The film was frightening. | Wasn't _____ ! |
| 8. It was warm weather. | What _____ ! |
| 9. They work effectively. | How _____ ! |
| 10. My friend has a lovely cat. | What _____ ! |
| 11. He looks like his father. | Doesn't _____ ! |
| 12. Those trousers are dirty. | How _____ ! |

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|---------------|
| 13. The noise is awful. | What _____ ! |
| 14. It's very cold today. | How _____ ! |
| 15. You've got on nice shoes. | What _____ ! |
| 16. I feel tired. | How _____ ! |
| 17. The house is very old. | What _____ ! |
| 18. That's a great song. | Isn't _____ ! |
| 19. Marta sings very beautifully. | How _____ ! |
| 20. She has a beautiful smile. | What _____ ! |

9. Write sentences, put these words into the correct order. Do not add or omit any words.

1. Helen/ giving/ some cassettes/ Jack/ is/ on his birthday.
2. some new jeans/ recently/ bought/I
3. doesn't/ this climate/ me/ suit.
4. Diana/ beautiful/ these days/ is becoming/ more and more.
5. a bright yellow/ have painted/ they/ their front door!
6. my purse/ under the bed/ I/ found.
7. sold/ yesterday/ to our next door neighbor/ the old Renault/ Dad
8. our friend/ some tulips/ us/ by express mail/ sent.
9. in town/ Bob/ crossing/ saw/ Mary/ the street .
10. a bus/ took/ we/ to the airport
11. answering/ all the time/ hates/ she/ the phone.
12. her/ to be/ all the neighbors/ a widow/ supposed.
13. living/ her/ her father/ alone/ would not/ in a big city/ consent to
14. you/ me/ can/ a few minutes/ spare/ of your valuable time?
15. important/ regularly/ is/ to go/ it/ to school.
16. we/ the encyclopedia/ must/ back/ them/ give/ to.
17. short of/ is/ we/ are/ money/ the trouble/ that.
18. no one/ leave/ the house/ John/ heard.
19. John/ we/ are/ for/ waiting/ to arrive.
20. the bus/ knocked/ down/ him.

10. Complete the answers. Use a pronoun + emphatic do + a verb.

1. A: Melanie is always helping people, isn't she?
B: Yes, she does help a lot of people.
2. A: How much did that dress cost?
B: Well, _____ rather a lot.
3. A: Someone once told me I look like a singer Arlene Black.
B: Well, _____ a bit like her, actually.

4 A: This train doesn't stop at our station.

B: Are you sure? I think _____ there.

5 A: Why didn't you go to the match on Saturday?

B: What do you mean? . _____ to the match.

6 A: Matthew and Emma never quarrel.

B: Oh yes, _____. All the time, in fact.

7 A: Emma says Matthew doesn't care about her

B: But he says _____.

8 A: Did you enjoy the concert last night?

B: Yes _____ it. It was really good

9 A: You are worried about something, aren't you?

B: You know, _____ about my job prospect.

10. A: Have you ever seen a ghost?

B: Never. But Vicky is quite sure that _____ a ghost.

11. Write sentences with it and an adjective followed by a to-infinitive.

1. Buy a CompeX computer. It isn't expensive.
2. Using a computer is very simple.
3. Understanding the handbook isn't difficult.
4. You can run any kind of software. It's easy.
5. Exploring the world of CompeX is absolutely fascinating.
6. Try the ultimate computer experience. Are you ready?
7. Don't play on ladders. It isn't safe.
8. Making such a fuss was silly.

**12. Add a sentence with an emphatic pronoun, e.g. myself. Use these verbs:
*bake, clean, decorate, cut, develop, grow, paint, service, type, make.***

1. I don't take the car to the garage I service it myself.
2. Laura didn't buy those pictures. _____.
3. Tom doesn't have his windows cleaned. _____.
4. My bread doesn't come from a shop. _____.
5. My friends eat lots of fresh vegetables. _____.
6. We finished the dining-room yesterday. _____.
7. Mark doesn't dictate his letters to a secretary. _____.
8. I don't pay to have my photos done. _____.
9. My sister doesn't pay for her clothes. _____.
10. We didn't have the lawn mowed. _____.

13. Emphasize the underlined words, using *what*.

1. Rachel's stereo kept me awake. → *What kept me awake was Rachel's stereo.*
2. Vicky is looking for a job in television.
3. I want to make a fresh start.
4. You must pay attention to the details.
5. They booked a holiday together.
6. You have to think about your profit.
7. You must know the needs of your customers.
8. Your news made me happy.
9. You should work towards a realistic target.
10. You need to plan ahead

14. Look at each question and answer and write a sentence with *It is/ was... + relative clause*.

1. Who invented radio? ~ Marconi. → *It was Marconi who invented radio.*
2. When did Columbus sail to America? ~ In 1492.
3. What does Tiger Woods play? ~ Golf.
4. Where did the Olympic Games first take place? ~ In Greece.
5. Which is nearest the sun, Venus or Mercury? ~ Mercury.
6. Who designed the Eiffel Tower? ~ Alexandre. G. Eiffel.
7. What was discovered by Crick and Watson? ~ The structure of DNA.
8. Who built the Pyramids? ~ The Ancient Egyptians.
9. Which is the highest mountain in the world? ~ Mount Everest.
10. Who was the 35th President of the US? ~ John F. Kennedy.

15. Rewrite the imperatives in emphatic forms.

1. Bring another chair.
2. Don't be silly.
3. Send me a copy of your catalogue.
4. Don't make so much noise.
5. Be quiet. I'm trying to concentrate.
6. Do not lean out of the window.
7. Forgive me - I didn't mean to interrupt.
8. Don't do that again or you'll be in trouble.
9. Give me a hand.
10. Don't tell anybody what happened.

16. Emphasize the underlined words.

1. Ted broke the news to me.

2. Knowing your limitations is important.
3. They want money. They don't want affection.
4. He misunderstood my intentions.
5. I remembered her name after she had gone.
6. I did my English test very well.
7. Does Mary wash up every day?
8. She first heard the news from Francis.
9. We need pilots. not ground staff.
10. To be early is better.
11. Peter lent us money. Paul didn't.
12. We found that getting a visa is impossible.
13. Mike's uncle died on Thursday.
14. Bad roads don't cause accidents. Speed does.
15. Teasing animals is cruel.
16. I love you; I love you; I love you.
17. England won the World Cup in 1966.
18. We enjoyed ourselves.
19. Income tax will be reduced. This is unlikely.
20. The countryside is most beautiful in the Fall.
21. I saw Ann. I didn't see Mary.
22. Remember to lock the door before you leave.
23. I think that taking up Yoga is not a good idea.
24. He was kind to help me.
25. Visit us again some time.
26. Don't make too much noise.
27. I did my English test very well.
28. I'm eating chocolate cake.
29. David teaches in a Technical College.
30. Don't let me wait so long.

17. Rewrite each of the following sentences with the given words in such a way that it means the same as the sentence printed above it.

1. The only way you can become a good athlete is by training hard.
Only by_____.
2. My grandfather did not say a single word during his dinner with us.
Not a single word_____.
3. He spent all his money. He even borrowed some from me.
Not only_____.

4. He had hardly left the office when the telephone rang.

No sooner _____.

5. I had only just put the phone down when the boss rang back.

Hardly _____.

6. He didn't finish his work until the bell rang.

Not until _____.

7. A sleeping dog was lying under the table.

Under the table _____.

8. His brother had rarely been more excited.

Rarely _____.

9. We only began to see the symptoms of the disease after several months.

Only _____.

10. I have never seen anyone in my life drink as much as you.

Never _____.

18. Rewrite each sentence, beginning as shown, so that the meaning stays the same.

1. Tony was not only late, but he had left all his books behind.

Not only *was Tony late, but he had left all his books behind*

2. I had no sooner gone to bed than someone rang my doorbell.

No sooner

3. I have seldom stayed in a worse hotel.

Seldom

4. I have never heard such nonsense!

Never

5. I realised only then that I had lost my keys.

Only then

6. The economic situation has rarely been worse.

Rarely

7. The manager not once offered us an apology.

Not once

8. You should not send money to us by post under any circumstances.

Under no circumstances

9. I understood *Hamlet* only after seeing it on the stage.

Only after seeing *Hamlet*

10. The embassy staff little realised that Ted was a secret agent.

Little

Chương 14

CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN (CONDITIONAL SENTENCES)

Câu điều kiện gồm có hai mệnh đề:

- Mệnh đề chính (Main clause) là mệnh đề chỉ kết quả.
- Mệnh đề If (If- clause) là mệnh đề phụ chỉ điều kiện.

I. CÁC LOẠI CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN (Types of conditional sentences)

Có 3 loại câu điều kiện chính:

1. Điều kiện có thật trong hiện tại hoặc tương lai (Real condition in the present or future): có thể thực hiện được trong hiện tại hoặc tương lai vì hành động trong mệnh đề If hoàn toàn có thể xảy ra.

2. Điều kiện không có thật trong hiện tại (Unreal condition in the present): không thể thực hiện được trong hiện tại hoặc tương lai vì hành động trong mệnh đề If không thể xảy ra (giả định trái ngược với thực tế trong hiện tại).

3. Điều kiện không có thật trong quá khứ (Unreal condition in the past): Không thể thực hiện được trong quá khứ vì hành động trong mệnh đề If đã không xảy ra (giả định trái ngược với thực tế trong quá khứ)

II. THÌ CỦA ĐỘNG TỪ TRONG CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN (Verb forms used in conditional sentences)

◆ Loại 1: Real condition

a. Để nói về tình huống có thể xảy ra trong hiện tại hoặc tương lai, chúng ta dùng thì hiện tại đơn. (present simple) trong mệnh đề *if* và **will** + *động từ nguyên mẫu* (*will* + infinitive) trong mệnh đề chính.

IF-CLAUSE	MAIN CLAUSE
Present simple	will + infinitive

If you **help** me, I **will help** you.

(Nếu anh giúp đỡ tôi, tôi sẽ giúp đỡ anh.)

If I **get** this right, I'll **have answered** every question correctly.

(Nếu tôi hiểu đúng vấn đề này, tôi sẽ trả lời đúng mọi câu hỏi)

If you **meet** Henry; **tell** him I want to see him.

(Nếu anh gặp Henry, hãy bảo nó là tôi cần gặp nó.)

b. Thì hiện tại đơn (present simple) được dùng trong cả hai mệnh đề để chỉ một sự thật hiển nhiên, một quy luật tự nhiên hoặc một hành động xảy ra thường xuyên.

(Nếu bạn đun nóng nước đá nó sẽ tan thành nước.)

If you **press** this switch, the computer **comes on**.

(Nếu bạn nhấn vào nút này, máy tính sẽ bật.)

If Daniel **has** any money, he **spends** it.

(Nếu Daniel có tiền anh ta sẽ tiêu xài hết.)

c. Các động từ tình thái *can, may, might, should, ought to, have to, must,...* có thể được dùng trong mệnh đề chính (main clause) để nói đến khả năng, sự chắc chắn, sự cho phép, sự bắt buộc hoặc sự cần thiết.

If it **rains**, we **are going to stay** home.

(Nếu trời mưa, chúng tôi sẽ ở nhà.)

If you **need** a ticket, I **can get** you one.

(Nếu bạn cần vé tôi có thể mua cho bạn một tấm.)

If Matthew **goes** to a job interview, he **should wear/ ought to wear** a tie.

(Nếu Matthew đi phỏng vấn xin việc, anh ấy nên đeo cà vạt.)

If you **want** to see clearly, you **must wear** your glasses.

(Nếu bạn muốn thấy rõ, bạn phải mang kính)

If Henry **jogs** regularly, he **may/ might lose** weight.

(Nếu Henry chạy bộ thường xuyên, anh ấy có thể giảm cân)

d. Đôi khi chúng ta có thể dùng *should* trong mệnh đề điều kiện (If-clause) để gợi ý một điều gì đó không chắc chắn.

If you **should** change your mind, please **phone** me.

(Hãy gọi điện cho tôi nếu bạn đổi ý)

If anyone **should** call, please take a message.

(Nếu có ai gọi đến, vui lòng ghi lại lời nhắn)

Lưu ý:

Không dùng **will** trong mệnh đề điều kiện (If-clause).

If we **hurry**, we'll **catch** the bus.

[NOT ~~If we'll hurry, we'll catch the bus~~]

(Nếu vội, chúng ta sẽ đón xe buýt)

Nhưng **will** có thể được dùng trong mệnh đề điều kiện khi ta đưa ra lời yêu cầu.

If you'll just wait a moment, I'll find someone to help you.

(Vui lòng đợi một lát, tôi sẽ tìm người đến giúp.)

[= Please wait a moment ...]

◆ Loại 2: Present Unreal condition

a. Để nói về tình huống không có thật hoặc không thể xảy ra trong hiện tại hoặc

ThichTiengAnh.Com - Website chia sẻ đề thi, tài liệu Tiếng Anh hay, mới nhất tương lai, chúng ta dùng thì quá khứ đơn (past simple) trong mệnh đề *if* và *would* + động từ nguyên mẫu (*would* + infinitive) trong mệnh đề chính.

IF-CLAUSE	MAIN CLAUSE
Past simple	would + infinitive

If I **knew** her name, I **would tell** you.

Nếu tôi biết tên cô ấy, tôi sẽ nói cho anh biết.)

→ but I doesn't know her name.

If we **didn't have** a car, we **would find** it's difficult to get about.

(Nếu con chó của tôi có sáu chân, nó sẽ chạy rất nhanh.)

→ but we have a car.

If my dog **had** six legs, it **would run** very fast!

(Nếu con chó của tôi có sáu chân, nó sẽ chạy rất nhanh.)

b. *Could* và *might* cũng có thể được dùng trong mệnh đề chính để nói đến khả năng có thể xảy ra.

If she **had** a camera, she **could take** some photos.

(Giả như có máy ảnh, cô ấy có thể chụp vài tấm hình.)

[could take = would be able to take]

If Rachel **worked** harder, she **might do** even better than at her study.

(Giả như Rachel học chăm hơn thì kết quả học tập của cô ấy có thể còn tốt hơn nữa.)

c. *Were* có thể được dùng thay cho *was* (với các chủ từ *I, he, she, it*) trong mệnh đề *if*, nhất là trong mệnh đề *If I were you*.

If Nick **were** rich, he **would have** a yacht. [Or: If Nick was rich,...]

(Nếu Nick giàu có, anh ấy sẽ mua một chiếc du thuyền.)

I'd go out if it **weren't raining**. [Or: ...it **wasn't raining**]

(Giả như trời không mưa thì tôi sẽ đi chơi)

If I **were** you, I **would accept** their invitation. [Or: If I was you, ...]

(Nếu tôi là anh, tôi sẽ chấp nhận lời mời của họ)

Lưu ý: Không dùng **would** trong mệnh đề điều kiện (if-clause)

If I **ate** cake, I'd get fat. [~~NOT If I would eat cake,...~~]

(Nếu tôi ăn bánh, tôi sẽ bị mập.)

Nhưng **would** có thể được dùng trong mệnh đề *if* khi chúng ta đưa ra lời yêu cầu.

If you'd like to come this way, the doctor will see you now.

(Vui lòng đi lối này, bác sĩ sẽ khám cho bà.)

[= Please come this way ...]

◆ **Loại 3: Past Unreal**

a. Để nói về một tình huống đã không xảy ra trong quá khứ, chúng ta dùng thì quá khứ hoàn thành (past perfect) trong mệnh đề *if* và **would have + quá khứ phân từ (would have + past participle)** trong mệnh đề chính.

IF-CLAUSE	MAIN CLAUSE
Past perfect (had + past participle)	would have + past participle

If he **had studied** hard, he **would have passed** his exam.

(Giá như anh ta học hành chăm chỉ thì anh ta đã đậu rồi.)

→ but he didn't study hard so he failed.

If I **had known** of your arrival, I **would have met** you.

(Giá mà tôi biết anh đến thì tôi đã đi đón anh rồi.)

→ but I didn't know so I didn't come.

b. *Could have* và *might have* cũng có thể được dùng để chỉ khả năng đã có thể xảy ra.

If I **had had** my cellphone yesterday, I **could have contacted** you.

(Giá như hôm qua tôi có đem theo điện thoại thì tôi đã có thể liên lạc với anh.)

[could have contact = would have been able to contact]

We just caught the train. If we **had stopped** to buy a paper, we **might have missed** it.

(Chúng ta vừa kịp tàu. Nếu như chúng ta dừng lại mua báo, thì có thể chúng ta đã bị lỡ tàu.)

Lưu ý:

- Không dùng **would** trong mệnh đề điều kiện (if-clause).

If you **hadn't made** that mistake, you'd have passed your test.

[NOT If you ~~would have made~~ that mistake, ...]

(Giá mà bạn không bị lỗi đó thì bạn đã qua được kỳ thi rồi)

- Dạng rút gọn 'd có thể dùng cho cả *had* và *would*.

If you'd asked me, I'd have told you.

(Giá mà bạn hỏi tôi thì tôi đã nói cho bạn biết rồi.)

*** KHÁI QUÁT CÁC THÌ CƠ BẢN ĐƯỢC DÙNG TRONG CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN. (Overview of bash verb forms used in conditional sentences)**

TYPE	MAIN CLAUSE	IF-CLAUSE
1. Real in the present/ future	Will Can should may/ might Present simple: chỉ sự thật, quy luật hoặc thói quen.	Present simple
2. Unreal in the present	would could might + V _(bare-inf)	Past simple
3. Unreal in the past	Would Could might + have + V _(bare-inf)	Past perfect (had + Vpast part)

* Các thì được nêu trong bảng trên đây là phần căn bản của những thì trên thực tế đang được sử dụng, nhưng theo quan điểm ngữ pháp mới chúng ta có thể biến đổi thì trong câu điều kiện như sau:

a. Dùng các thì tiếp diễn (progressive tenses) để diễn tả hành động đang xảy ra, một sự sắp xếp trong tương lai hoặc giả định một hành động đang xảy ra trong hiện tại hoặc quá khứ.

If you **are waiting** for a bus, you should join the queue.

(Nếu bạn đang đợi xe buýt, thì bạn nên xếp hàng) [present action]

If you **are staying** for another night, I'll ask the manager to give you a better room.

(Nếu bà ở lại một đêm nữa, tôi sẽ xin giám đốc cho bà phòng tốt hơn.
[future arrangement])

We are going by air and I hate flying. If we **were going** by boat I would feel much happier.

(Chúng tôi đang đi máy bay và tôi ghét đi máy bay. Giả như chúng tôi đang đi tàu thủy thì tôi sẽ thấy thích thú hơn)

If I **were** on holiday, I **might be touring** Italy too.

(Giả như đang trong kỳ nghỉ thì có thể tôi cũng đang đi du lịch ở ý)

I was wearing a seat belt at that time. If I **hadn't been wearing** one I would have been seriously injured.

(Vào lúc đó tôi đang thắt dây an toàn. Nếu tôi không mang dây an toàn thì tôi đã bị thương nặng rồi.)

At the time of the accident I was sitting in the back of the car because Tom's little boy was sitting beside him in front. If Tom's boy hadn't been there I **would have been sitting** in front.

(Lúc xảy ra tai nạn tôi đang ngồi ở băng ghế sau vì cậu con trai nhỏ của Tom đang ngồi cạnh anh ấy ở phía trước. Nếu cậu con trai của Tom không ngồi ở đó thì tôi sẽ đang ngồi ở phía trước.)

b. Dùng thì hiện tại hoàn thành (present perfect) trong mệnh đề điều kiện (if-clause) để diễn tả hành động hoàn tất.

If he **has written** the letter, I'll post it.

(Nếu anh ta đã viết xong lá thư thì tôi sẽ gửi nó.)

If they **haven't seen** the museum we'd better go there today.

(Nếu họ chưa tham quan viện bảo tàng thì hôm nay chúng ta nên đến đó.)

c. Dùng **be going to** để diễn đạt hoặc dự đoán một sự việc xảy ra trong tương lai.

If it's **going to** rain, I'd better take an umbrella.

(Nếu trời sắp mưa thì tốt hơn hết là tôi nên mang theo dù)

If they try to cut down the trees, there's **going to** be a big protest.

(Nếu họ cố đốn bỏ những cây này thì sẽ bị chống đối kịch liệt.)

d. Nếu thời gian trong mệnh đề điều kiện (if-clause) và thời gian trong mệnh đề chỉ kết quả (main clause) không giống nhau: một mệnh đề ở hiện tại và mệnh đề kia ở quá khứ, thì ta có thể kết hợp điều kiện loại 2 và điều kiện loại 3.

I didn't eat breakfast this morning, so I am hungry now.

→ If I **had eaten** breakfast this morning, I **would not be** hungry now.

(past)

(present)

(Nếu sáng nay tôi ăn điểm tâm, thì bây giờ tôi sẽ không đói bụng)

He is not a good student. He did not study for the test.

→ If he **were** a good student, he **would have studied** for the test.

(present)

(past)

(Nếu nó là một học sinh ngoan thì nó đã học bài cho bài kiểm tra.)

If he **had taken** my advice he **would be** a rich man now.

(Giá như anh ấy nghe theo lời khuyên của tôi, thì giờ anh ấy đã trở thành người giàu có.)

[But he didn't take my advice and now he isn't rich.]

If I **didn't have** all this work to do, I **would have gone** out for a picnic yesterday.

(Giá như tôi không phải làm tất cả những việc này, thì hôm qua tôi đã đi dã ngoại.)

[But I have all this work to do, so I didn't go out for a picnic yesterday.]

Lưu ý: Mệnh đề chỉ điều kiện (If-clause) có thể đứng trước hoặc sau mệnh đề chính (main clause). Nếu muốn nhấn mạnh điều kiện, ta đặt *If-clause* ở đầu câu và có dấu phẩy (,) giữa hai mệnh đề. Nếu muốn nhấn mạnh kết quả ta đặt *main clause* ở đầu và ở giữa hai mệnh đề không có dấu phẩy.

If I don't practise my golf, I won't get any better.

Or: I won't get any better if I don't practise my golf.

III. NHỮNG CÁCH KHÁC ĐỂ DIỄN TẢ ĐIỀU KIỆN (Other ways of expressing conditions)

1. **Unless** (*trừ phi, nếu..không*) được dùng với mệnh đề điều kiện ở thể khẳng định, được xem như tương đương với *if... not*:

Unless you start at once, you'll be late.

(*Nếu anh không khởi hành ngay, anh sẽ bị muộn*)

= If you don't start at once, you'll be late.

2. **When** (khi)

When you depress this button, you will hear his voice

(*Khi anh ấn nút này xuống, anh sẽ nghe được giọng nói của anh ấy*)

= If you depress this button...

Tuy nhiên, không phải lúc nào chúng ta cũng có thể thay *if* bằng *when* được bởi vì *if* luôn luôn bao hàm sự ngờ vực (doubt).

I'll phone you when I go to bed tonight.

I'll phone you if I go to bed tonight. (?)

3. **Suppose/ supposing** (giả sử)

Suppose the news is true.

(*Giả sử tin này là đúng*)

Supposing it rains, what will you do?

(*Giả sử trời mưa, bạn sẽ làm gì?*)

Suppose the earth were flat.

(*Giả sử quả đất là phẳng*)

Supposing you saw a flying saucer, what would you do?

(*Giả sử bạn trông thấy đĩa bay thì bạn sẽ làm gì?*)

4. **Provided (that)/ providing (that)** (miễn là)

I'll accept your invitation **provided** you go with me.

(*Tôi sẽ nhận lời mời miễn là anh đi với tôi.*)

5. **Assuming** (giả sử)

Assuming we have good weather, we shall be there by dusk.

(*Giả sử chúng ta gặp thời tiết tốt, chúng ta sẽ đến đấy trước khi trời tối*)

6. Without (không có)

Without his books, he would know nothing.

(Nếu không có sách, cậu ấy sẽ không hiểu biết gì cả)

= If he had no books

7. On condition that (với điều kiện là)

I shall go on **condition that** you go with me.

(Tôi sẽ đi miễn là bạn sẽ đi với tôi)

8. Mệnh lệnh cách + and

Do that again and I'll call a policeman!

(Nếu còn làm như thế tôi sẽ gọi cảnh sát đấy!)

= If you do that again, I'll call a policeman!

IV. NHỮNG TỪ NGỮ DÙNG VỚI *IF* (Expressions with if)

Chúng ta cần chú ý một số trong những từ ngữ sau đây, mặc dù kết hợp với *if*, thường không diễn tả điều kiện.

1. **Even If** (ngay cả nếu) được dùng để chỉ sự tương phản (contrast) hoặc để nhấn mạnh:

Even if he goes to bed early, he always wakes up late.

(Ngay cả nếu đi ngủ sớm, anh ấy cũng luôn thức dậy muộn)

2. **As If/as though** (như thể là)

3. **But for** (nếu không vì, nếu không có)

But for his blindness, no one would pity him.

(Nếu không vì mù, chẳng ai thương hại anh ta đâu)

But for the storm, we should have arrived earlier.

(Nếu không có cơn bão ấy, chúng ta đã đến sớm rồi.)

4. **If only** (ước gì)

• **If only** + thì hiện tại đơn hoặc Tương lai đơn dùng để diễn tả sự hi vọng:

If only he comes in time.

(Ước gì anh ấy đến kịp lúc) [= We hope he will come in time]

If only he will listen to Mother.

(Ước gì anh ấy nghe lời mẹ)

[= We hope he will be willing to listen to her]

• **If only** + thì Quá khứ đơn dùng để diễn tả mong ước không thể thực hiện được trong hiện tại hoặc trong tương lai.

Oh, **if only** Daddy were home!

(Ồ, ước gì ba ở nhà bây giờ nhỉ!)

If only he didn't drive so fast!

(Ước gì anh ấy không lái xe nhanh quá!)

• **IF only** + thì Tiên quá khứ diễn tả mong ước không thể thực hiện được trong quá khứ:

If only he had given me some money, I could have bought that new hi-fi.

(Ước gì anh ấy đã cho tôi một ít tiền, tôi đã mua được dàn máy nghe nhạc mới ấy rồi)

EXERCISES

1. Underline the correct word or phrase in each sentence.

1. If *we'd be/we're* late for class, our teacher will be/was angry.
2. If we *would live/lived* on another planet, *we'll see/we'd see* the Earth in the sky.
3. If we *take/will take* a taxi, we *arrived/we'll arrive* sooner.
4. If we *won't hurry/don't hurry*, *we'll be/we'd be* late.
5. If we *were/are* birds, we *would be able to/are able to* fly.
6. If you *don't wear/wouldn't wear* your pullover, *you'll feel/you felt* cold.
7. If I *studied/will study* harder, I *get/would get* better marks.
8. If I *have/had* a motorbike, I *rode/I'd ride* it to school.
9. If you *will lend/lend* me your bike, I'll *let/I let* you borrow my skateboard.
10. If I *had/have* lots of money, I *gave/I'd give* some to all my friends.
11. If you *phoned/had phoned* me yesterday, I *had given/would have given* you the news.
12. If you *took/would have taken* more exercise, you *might feel/had felt* better.
13. If Tim *drove/had driven* more carefully, he *wouldn't have crashed/didn't crash*.
14. If you *had come/came* to see the film, you *had enjoyed/would have enjoyed* it.
15. If I'd *known/I would know* it was your birthday, I *would send/would have sent* you a card.
16. If people *had helped/helped* one another more often, the world *might be/was* a better place.
17. If our team *had scored/scored* more goals, we *had won/could have won*.
18. If you *would have worn/wore* a coat, you *wouldn't get/didn't get* wet.

2. Complete each sentence using if, unless or would.

1. If he asked me to help him, I *would*
2. We'll have lunch outside in the garden,it's too cold.
3. John.....win more races if he trained harder.
4. Come on!.....we hurry, we'll miss the plane!

- 5.....you like to see my stamp collection?
6. The manager won't be long.....you take a seat, please.
7. I'm sure that Connie..... go to the cinema with you, if you asked her.
8. you feel like a chat, phone me tonight.
9. What.....you do if you saw a snake?
10. I don't feel happy.....I swim every day.

3. Put in the correct form of each verb in brackets

1. If I ask Paul nicely,(he/help) us.
2.(you/make) yourself ill if you don't eat properly.
3. If the ball.....(cross) the line, that would have been the end of the game.
4. If.....(you/drink) up all the orange juice that was in that carton, you ought to go out and get some more.
5. If everyone.....(work) an extra hour a day, it would greatly increase production.
6. If you're a lucky winner, a prize.....(be) on its way to you soon.
7. If I'd seen anything suspicious,(I/call) the police.
8. If I slipped quietly out of the room in a few minutes' time, no one..... (notice).
9. If.....(you/not/mind) waiting a moment, I'll see if the manager is free.
10. If..... (I/drive), I would hire a car to drive round the island.
11. If.....(I/let) you know in time, I would have done.
12. If someone knocked a candle over,.....(it/start) a fire.
13. A moisturizer is what you need. If you use one,..... (you/ not / get) dry skin.
14. If.....(I/not/agree) with you, I would say so.
15. Even if there had been an SOS message on the radio, (I/not/listen) at the time.
16. If I (have) arms five metres long, I (be able) to reach the top of that shelf!
17. Don't worry, you've just got a cold. If you (take).....an aspirin, you (feel)..... better.
18. Vegetarians believe that if nobody (eat).....meat, everyone (live).....longer.
19. If I (become)a famous rock star, I (buy) my parents an enormous house.

20. It says 'No Parking'. If you (leave).....the car here, the police (give).....you a parking fine.
21. It's not far. If you (follow)..... this path, you (come) to the station.
22. If people (use) bikes instead of cars, there (not be) so much pollution.
23. Actually, Brutus is a very friendly dog. If you (touch).....him, he (not bite)..... you.
24. If you (leave)..... your books on the desk, I (give) them back to you at the end of the lesson.
25. If you (own) a pet tiger, your friends (not visit) you!

4. Complete the sentence for each situation.

1. Charlotte didn't leave early, and so she missed the bus.
If Charlotte.....*had left early*....., she*wouldn't have missed*..... the bus.
2. I didn't buy more milk, so I didn't have enough for breakfast.
If I....., Ienough for breakfast.
3. We forgot to take a map, so we got lost in the mountains.
If we....., wein the mountains.
4. I didn't go to bed early, so I didn't wake up at 7.00.
If I.....early I at 7.00
5. Mike didn't make a shopping list, and he forgot to buy some coffee.
If Mike....., hesome coffee.
6. I didn't realize you were tired when I asked you to go for a walk.
If I....., Ifor a walk.
7. The Romans didn't sail across the Atlantic, so they didn't reach America.
If the Romans....., theyAmerica.
8. I didn't turn left at the station, and I lost my way.
If I....., I my way.

5. Correct the clause that has a mistake in it.

If I ~~have my wish~~, I'd be a film star.

.....*If I had my wish*.....

1. If I had a camera, I ~~can take a photo~~.
.....
2. ~~If they would have bought a group ticket~~, it would have been less expensive.
.....
3. If you're joking, I ~~going to be angry~~.
.....
4. ~~If you can go to the concert~~, you'd have enjoyed it, I'm sure.
.....
5. The alarm rings ~~if anyone will approach the house~~.
.....
6. Just keep quiet about it. Mention it to anyone ~~or you'll regret it~~.
.....
7. ~~If anything shall go wrong~~, give me a ring.
.....
8. If we drove through the town centre, ~~it will take longer~~.
.....
9. A bank will lend you money only ~~if they knew you can pay it back~~.
.....
10. If I had trusted my instincts, ~~I had refused~~.
.....
11. ~~Have we delayed any longer~~, we would have been too late.
.....
12. If the material gets very hot, ~~it would burst into flames~~.
.....

6. Rewrite each sentence, beginning as shown. Do not change the meaning

1. I didn't have an umbrella with me and so I got wet.
I wouldn't...*have got wet if I'd had an umbrella with me*.....
2. I'll call the police if you don't leave me alone!
Unless
3. In the snowy weather we don't go to school.
If
4. Without Jack's help, I wouldn't have been able to move the table.
If
5. Make me some coffee, and I'll give you one of my biscuits.
.....

6. If you hadn't told me about Sue's hair, I wouldn't have noticed.

Unless

7. If you see Peter, tell him to be here at 8.00.

Should

8. I wouldn't accept if you asked me to marry you!

If you were

9. You'd better see a doctor.

If

10. He won't help you if you don't ask him.

Unless.....

11. Take your medicine, otherwise you won't get better.

If.....

12. You won't make any spelling mistakes provided you use a dictionary.

If.....

13. If you park here, you'll be fined #20.

Don't.....

14. You'd better confess your crime.

If.....

15. She went home early because she was exhausted.

If.....

16. You won't understand the story unless you finish the book.

If.....

17. She can't go out if she doesn't promise to be back early.

Unless.....

18. The bee won't sting you as long as you stay still.

Provided.....

7. Underline the most suitable verb forms in each sentence.

1. If the machine stops/will stop, you press/will press this button.

2. I can't understand what he sees in her! If anyone *treats*/will treat/treated me like that, I *am*/will be/would be extremely angry!

3. If you *help*/helped me with this exercise, I *will*/would do the same for you one day.

4. According to the timetable, if the train *leaves*/left on time, we *will*/would arrive at 5.30.

5. If it *is*/will be fine tomorrow, we *go*/will go to the coast.

6. If we *find*/found a taxi, we *will* get/would get there before the play starts.

7. It's quite simple really. If you *take*/will take/took these tablets every day, then you *lose*/will lose/lost/would lose weight.

8. I don't like this flat. I think *I am/I will be/I'd be* happier if *I live/will live/would live/lived* in a house in the country.
9. I don't know how to play baseball, but I'm sure that if I *will do/did*, I *play/will play/would play* a lot better than anyone in this awful team!
10. If I *phone/will phone/phoned* you tonight, *are you/will you be/would you be* in?
11. Why didn't you tell me? If you *told/had told* me, I *had helped/would have helped* you.
12. If Bill *didn't steal/hadn't stolen* the car, he *wasn't/wouldn't be/hadn't been* in prison now.
13. If Ann *wasn't driving/didn't drive/hadn't driven* so fast, her car *didn't crash/wouldn't crash/wouldn't have crashed* into a tree.
14. Let me give you some advice. If you *smoked/would smoke/had smoked* less, you *didn't feel/wouldn't feel/wouldn't have felt* so tired.
15. What bad luck! If Alan *didn't fall/hadn't fallen/wouldn't fall* over, he *won/would win/would have won* the race.
16. If you *invited/had invited* me last week, I *was able/had been able/would have been able* to come.
17. I'm sure your letter hasn't arrived yet. If it *came/had come* I'm sure I *noticed/had noticed/would have noticed* it.
18. We have a suggestion to make. How *do you feel/would you feel* if we *offered/would offer/had offered* you the job of assistant manager?
19. If you *lent/had lent* us the money, we *paid/would pay/had paid* you back next week.
20. Terry never catches anything when he goes fishing. And if he *catches/caught/ had caught* a fish, he *throws/would throw* it back!

8. Complete the conversation. Put in the correct form of each verb in brackets.

Lucy: I'm going to watch a documentary on fashion tonight if no one want anything else.

Emily: What time is that?

Lucy: Half past eight.

Alice: If it goes on after nine o'clock, (1).....(we/miss) the start of the film.

Emily: I'd like to see the film too.

Lucy: Well, if you're both watching the film, (2).....(I/watch) it with you. If (3).....(I/record) the documentary, I can watch it tomorrow.

ThichTiengAnh.Com - Website chia sẻ đề thi, tài liệu Tiếng Anh hay, mới nhất

Alice: I don't think we've got another tape. You know, if we bought a few new ones, (4).....(we/not/keep) having this problem.

Emily: If (5).....(I/think), I could have bought some at the supermarket this afternoon.

Lucy: Chloe has recorded some tennis on this one, but that doesn't matter. If she really wanted to, (6).....(she/watch) it by now.

Emily: Chloe (7).....(be) annoyed if you record over her tennis.

Alice: I'd be annoyed if someone (8).....(do) that to me.

Lucy: I'm sure if I explain, (9).....(she/not/mind).

Emily: Well, if (10).....(there/be) a row, I'm going to keep out of it.

9. Write a new sentence with the same meaning. Use *UNLESS* in your sentence.

1. You don't get there in time if you don't hurry.
2. We can't do the job if we don't get help.
3. You are allowed into the club only if you're member.
4. I don't like fish. I wouldn't eat it if I wasn't extremely hungry.
5. Don't leave the TV on if you aren't watching it.
6. The doctor will see you today only if it's an emergency.
7. I wouldn't have bought the picture if I didn't like it.
8. You can't get a driver's license if you're not at least eighteen years old.
9. I'm going to the party only if you go with me.
10. The dog will attack you only if you move suddenly.

10. Choose the best correct word or expression for each sentence.

1. Rachel will be pleased if/ unless she passes her driving test.
2. You can use my car unless/ as long as you drive carefully.
3. The bus won't stop unless/ providing you ring the bell.
4. You'd better take a coat if/ in case it gets cold.
5. Don't bother to ring me unless/ in case it's important.
6. Children are allowed to use the swimming pool unless/ provided they are with an adult.
7. I'll make myself an omelette when/ if I get home tonight.
8. I don't mind if you come in late unless/ so long as you come in quietly.
9. You won't have to leave unless/ if you can pay your bill.
10. Write the name down in case/provided you forget it.

11. Rewrite these sentences, using the words in brackets.

1. I'll call the police if you don't leave me alone. (Unless)
2. In the snowy weather we don't go to school. (If)
3. You press this button to stop the machine. (If)
4. Make me some coffee, and I'll give you one of my biscuits. (If)
5. If you see Peter, tell him he should be here at 8.00. (If)

- A. is B. were C. will be D. would be
9. If you to my advice in the first place, you wouldn't be in this mess right now.
A. listen B. will listen C. listened D. had listened
- 10..... more help, I could call my neighbour.
A. Should I need B. Needed C. I have needed D. I should need
11. I didn't know you were asleep Otherwise, I so much noise when I came in.
A. don't make B. didn't make
C. won't make D. wouldn't have made
12. If you to talk loudly, I will have to ask you to leave.
A. continue B. continued C. will continue D. could continue
13. *"How do you like your new apartment!"*
"I wish I.....used to the constant noise from the street below."
A. got B. could get C. had gotten D. am
14. *"Will you see Tom at lunch? I'd like you to give him a message."*
"If I.....him later, I'll give it to him."
A. will see B. would see C. see D. could see
15. A nation's balance of trade is considered unfavourable if it more money on imports than it gains from exports.
A. will spend B. would spend C. can spend D. spends
16. A huge tree crashed through the roof and broke my bed..... in the room, I would have been killed.
A. Should I be B. Had I been
C. Would I be D. Would I have been
17. I.....William with me if I had known you didn't get along with him.
A. hadn't brought B. didn't bring
C. wouldn't have brought D. won't bring
18. If I me same problems you had as a child, I might not have succeeded in life as well as you have.
A. had had B. have C. would have D. should have
19. Do you think there would be less conflict in the world if all people the same language?
A. speak B. spoke C. will speak D. had spoken
20. Had you told me that this was going to happen, I.....it.
A. don't believe B. can't believe
C. hadn't believe D. would never have believed

Chương 15

LỜI NÓI GIÁN TIẾP (INDIRECT SPEECH)

I. LỜI NÓI TRỰC TIẾP VÀ LỜI NÓI GIÁN TIẾP (Direct and indirect speech)

Có hai cách để thuật lại những gì mà một người nào đó đã nói: trực tiếp và gián tiếp.

1. Lời nói trực tiếp (direct speech): là sự lặp lại chính xác những từ của người nói.

He said, 'I am very hungry'.

Lời nói trực tiếp 'I am very hungry' được đặt trong cặp dấu ngoặc ('...' theo lối Anh hoặc "... " theo lối Mỹ), sau động từ chính có dấu phẩy (,) hoặc dấu hai chấm (:). Đôi khi mệnh đề chính có thể đặt sau lời nói trực tiếp:

'I am very hungry', he said.

2. Lời nói gián tiếp (indirect/ reported speech) là lời tường thuật lại ý của người nói, đôi khi không cần phải dùng đúng những từ của người nói.

He said that he was very hungry.

(*Câu ấy nói rằng câu ấy rất đói*)

II. CÂU TRẦN THUẬT TRONG LỜI NÓI GIÁN TIẾP (Statements in indirect speech)

Khi chuyển một câu trần thuật từ trực tiếp sang gián tiếp, chúng ta cần lưu ý đến những thay đổi sau:

1. Dùng động từ giới thiệu *say* hoặc *tell*: *say that*; *say to somebody that*; *tell somebody that*. Động từ giới thiệu trong lời nói gián tiếp thường ở quá khứ và liên từ *that* có thể được bỏ.

Tom said (that) he was feeling ill.

(*Tom nói anh ấy thấy không khỏe*)

I told her (that) I didn't have any money.

(*Tôi nói với cô ấy là tôi không có tiền*)

Lưu ý:

tell + tân ngữ (*object*) thường được dùng hơn *say to* + tân ngữ.

2. Đổi các đại từ nhân xưng, đại từ hoặc tính từ sở hữu sao cho tương ứng với chủ ngữ hoặc tân ngữ của mệnh đề chính.

a. Đại từ nhân xưng (personal pronouns)

Chủ ngữ (subject)	Tân ngữ (object)
I → he, she	me → him, her
we → they	us → them
you → I, we	you → me, us

b. Đại từ sở hữu

(possessive pronouns)

mine → his, hers
ours → theirs
yours → mine, ours

c. Tính từ sở hữu

(possessive adjectives)

my → his, her
our → their
your → my, our

Lưu ý: Khi tường thuật lại lời nói của chính mình, đại từ và tính từ sở hữu không đổi.

I said, 'I like my new house.'

→ I said (that) I liked my new house.

(Tôi nói rằng tôi thích ngôi nhà mới của mình)

3. Đổi thì của động từ thành thì quá khứ tương ứng.

DIRECT SPEECH	INDIRECT SPEECH
Present simple Tom said, 'I never eat meat.'	Past simple Tom said (that) he never ate meat.
Present progressive He said, 'I'm waiting for Ann.'	Past progressive He said he was waiting for Ann.
Present perfect She said, 'I've seen that film.'	Past perfect She said she had seen that film.
Present perfect progressive Andrew said, 'I've been learning Chinese for 5 years.'	Past perfect progressive Andrew said he had been learning Chinese for 5 years.
Past simple They said, 'We came by car.'	Past simple/ Past perfect They said they had come by car.
Past Progressive progressive He said, 'I was sitting in the park at 8 o'clock.'	Past progressive/ Past perfect progressive He said he was sitting/ had been sitting in the park at 8 o'clock.
Past perfect Daniel said, 'My money had run out.'	Past perfect Daniel said his money had run out.
Future simple Judy said, 'I'll phone you.'	Future in the past Judy said she would phone me.

<p>Future progressive He said, I'll be playing golf at three o'clock tomorrow.'</p> <p>Modal verbs</p> <p>+ Can She said, You can sit there.'</p> <p>+ May Claire said, I may go to Bali again.'</p> <p>+ Must He said, 'I must finish this report.'</p>	<p>Future progressive in the past He said he would be playing golf at three o'clock tomorrow.</p> <p>Modals in the past</p> <p>+ Could She said we could sit here.</p> <p>+ Might Claire said she might go to Bali again.</p> <p>+ Must/ Had to He said he must I had to finish this report.</p>
--	--

* MỘT SỐ TRƯỜNG HỢP KHÔNG THAY ĐỔI ĐỘNG TỪ TRONG LỜI NÓI GIÁN TIẾP

a. Động từ trong mệnh đề chính ở thì Hiện tại đơn, Hiện tại tiếp diễn, Hiện tại Hoàn thành, Tương lai đơn:

Trực tiếp:

He says,
He is saying,
He has said,
He will say

} the dress is expensive.

Gián tiếp:

He says,
He is saying,
He has said,
He will say

} that the dress is expensive.

1. Lời nói diễn tả chân lý hoặc sự kiện đúng một cách hiển nhiên.

The earth **moves** around the sun.

→ He said that the earth **moves** around the sun.

(Anh ta nói rằng trái đất quanh quanh mặt trời.)

c. Lời nói diễn tả một hoạt động theo thói quen vẫn còn tiếp tục vào lúc thuật lại:

I **get up** at seven o'clock every morning.

→ He said that he **gets up** at seven o'clock every morning.

(Anh ấy nói rằng anh ấy thường dậy vào 7 giờ sáng)

My wife always **drinks** coffee for breakfast.

→ He said that his wife always **drinks** coffee for breakfast.

(Anh ấy nói rằng vợ anh ấy thường uống cà phê khi ăn sáng.)

ThichTiengAnh.Com - Website chia sẻ đề thi, tài liệu Tiếng Anh hay, mới nhất
d. Lời nói trực tiếp có các động từ tình thái *could, would, should, might, ought to, used to, had better*.

*** Would:**

She said, 'I **would help** him if I **could**.'

→ She said that she **would help** him if she **could**.

She said, 'I'd rather Tom went.'

Cô ấy nói: Tôi thích Tom đi hơn'

→ She said that she'd **rather** Tom went.

2. Should:

You **should eat** more fruit.

(Anh nên ăn thêm trái cây)

→ He said that I **should eat** more fruit.

You **should have gone** to bed early.

(Lẽ ra anh nên đi ngủ sớm)

→ He said that I **should have gone** to bed early.

3. Could:

You **could have helped** me.

(Lẽ ra anh đã có thể giúp tôi)

He said that I **could have helped** him.

4. Might:

He said, 'I **might be** there'

→ He said that he **might be** there.

5. Ought to:

You **ought to go** now.

(Anh nên đi bây giờ)

→ He said that I **ought to go** then.

6. Used to:

He said, 'I **used to go** to the movies when I had leisure time.'

(Anh ấy nói: Tôi thường đi xem phim khi có thì giờ rỗi')

→ He said that he **used to go** to the movies when he had leisure time.

7. Had better:

You **had better stay** at home.

(Anh nên ở nhà thì hơn)

→ He said that I **had better stay** at home.

*** Must:**

Khi **must** được dùng để chỉ nghĩa vụ, bổn phận (obligation), sự suy diễn (deduction), lời khuyên (advice), **must** có thể được:

a. Giữ nguyên:

They **must bring** their books to class.

→ He said that they **must bring** their books to class.

She **must have gone** home very late.

(*Hắn là cô ấy đã về nhà rất muộn*)

→ He said that she **must have gone** home very late.

b. Hoặc đổi thành **would have to** khi bốn phần được nói tới phụ thuộc vào một hành động ở tương lai khá xa (fairly remote):

He said, 'We **must mend** the roof properly next year.'

→ He said that they **would have to mend** the roof properly the following year.

Hoặc khi lời nói diễn tả một điều kiện hoặc sự nghi ngờ:

He said, 'If the weather **gets any worse**, we **must stay** at home.'

(*Anh ấy nói: 'nếu thời tiết trở nên xấu hơn, chúng ta sẽ phải ở nhà.'*)

→ He said that if the weather **got any worse**, they **would have to stay** at home.

b. Hoặc đổi thành **had to** nếu bốn phần được nói tới sớm được thực hiện ngay:

He said, 'I **must wash** my hands.'

(*Anh ấy nói: 'Tôi phải rửa tay' – hàm ý anh ấy đi rửa tay ngay*)

→ He said that he **had to wash** his hands.

Tom said, 'I **must come** to see him by eight tomorrow morning.'

→ Tom said that he **had to come** to see him by eight tomorrow morning.

d. Lời nói trực tiếp là câu điều kiện ở dạng giả định (subjunctive) hoặc câu có thì quá khứ giả định (past subjunctive) đi sau *wish*, *would rather*, *would sooner*, *it's time*.

He said, "If I **were** you I **wouldn't** wait."

→ He said if he **were** me he **wouldn't** wait.

(*Anh ấy nói rằng nếu anh ấy là tôi anh ấy sẽ không chờ đợi.*)

"We **wish** we **didn't** have to take exams," said the children.

→ The children said they **wished** they **didn't** have to take exams.

(*Bọn trẻ nói chúng ước gì chúng không phải làm bài kiểm tra.*)

He said, "It's time we **began** planning our holidays."

→ He said that it **was** time they **began** planning their holidays.

(*Anh ấy nói rằng đã đến lúc họ bắt đầu lên kế hoạch đi nghỉ.*)

e. Thì quá khứ đơn (Past simple) hoặc thì quá khứ tiếp diễn (Past progressive) có thời gian xác định hoặc thuộc mệnh đề chỉ thời gian.

She said, "Ann **arrived** on Monday."

→ She said Ann arrived on Monday.

(Bà ấy nói Ann đến hôm thứ Hai.)

He said, 'When I saw them, they were playing tennis.'

→ He said when he saw them they were playing tennis.

(Anh ấy nói khi anh ấy gặp họ thì họ đang chơi tennis.)

4. Các thay đổi ở tính từ và trạng từ chỉ khái niệm gần xa trong không gian và thời gian:

Trực tiếp	Gián tiếp
This	That
These	Those
Here	There
Now	Then
Today	That day
Ago	Before
Tomorrow	The next day/the following day
The day after tomorrow	In two days' time
Yesterday	The day before/the previous day
The day before yesterday	Two days before
Next week	The following week
Next year	The following year
Last week	The previous week/the week before
Last year	The previous year/the year before.

He said, 'I saw her **yesterday.**'

→ He said he had seen her **the previous day.**

(Anh ấy nói hôm trước anh ấy đã gặp cô ta)

'I'll do it **the day after tomorrow,**' he promised.

→ He promised that he would do it **in two days' time.**

(Anh ấy hứa hai ngày sau anh ấy sẽ làm việc đó.)

Daniel said, 'I got my driving licence **last Tuesday.**'

→ Daniel said he'd got his driving licence **the Tuesday before.**

(Daniel nói anh ấy đã có bằng lái hôm thứ Ba tuần trước.)

They said. 'We'll return to Paris **next month.**'

→ They said they would return to Paris **the month after.**

(Họ nói tháng sau họ sẽ về Paris)

Lưu ý:

a. Nếu thời điểm được đề cập trong lời nói trực tiếp vẫn chưa đến, thì của động từ và trạng từ chỉ thời gian trong lời nói gián tiếp vẫn giữ nguyên.

Jane said, 'I'll go to Bali by the end of this month.'

→ Jane nói, "cuối tháng này tôi sẽ đi Bali.")

+ Câu nói của Jane được thuật lại trước cuối tháng này.

→ Jane said she **will go** to Bali by the end of **this month**.

+ Câu nói được thuật lại sau đó vài tháng.

Jane said she **would go** to Bali by the end of **that month**.

b. Nếu địa điểm được đề cập trong lời nói trực tiếp cùng địa điểm với người tường thuật, trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn trong lời nói gián tiếp không đổi.

The old man said, 'I've lived in **this village** for over 80 years.'

+ Thông thường chúng ta chuyển sang gián tiếp.

→ The old man said he had lived in **that village** for over 80 years,

(Ông lão nói ông đã sống trong ngôi làng đó hơn 80 năm)

+ Nhưng nếu người tường thuật đang ở trong ngôi làng đó thì trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn không đổi.

→ The old man said he had lived in **this village** for over 80 years.

(Ông lão nói ông đã sống trong ngôi làng này hơn 80 năm.)

III. CÂU HỎI TRONG LỜI NÓI GIÁN TIẾP (Questions in indirect speeches)

Có hai loại câu hỏi: câu hỏi Yes-No và câu hỏi Wh-

1. Câu hỏi Yes-No (Yes-No questions)

Khi đổi câu hỏi Yes-No từ trực tiếp sang gián tiếp, ta cần lưu ý những điểm sau:

- Dùng động từ giới thiệu *ask, inquire, wonder, want to know*. *Ask* có thể được theo sau bởi tân ngữ trực tiếp (He asked me ...), nhưng *inquire, wonder, want to know* thì không có tân ngữ theo sau (NOT He wondered me...)

- Dùng *if* hoặc *whether* ngay sau động từ giới thiệu của mệnh đề chính. *If / whether* có nghĩa 'có ... không'

- Đổi cấu trúc câu hỏi thành câu trần thuật.

- Đổi đại từ, tính từ sở hữu, thì của động từ và các trạng từ chỉ thời gian, nơi chốn (giống cách đổi trong câu trần thuật)

Subject + asked (+ object) + if/ whether + subject + verb
--

Does John understand music?

→ He asked **if John understood** music.

(Anh ấy hỏi John có hiểu âm nhạc không?)

Is she your sister?

→ He asked me **if she was** my sister.

(Anh ấy hỏi tôi cô ấy có phải là chị gái tôi không?)

Can she drive?

→ He asked if she could drive.

(Anh ấy hỏi cô ấy có biết lái xe không?)

- Trong các lời nói gián tiếp trên **If** được dùng để chỉ câu hỏi gián tiếp và thường có nghĩa 'có phải...không?'. **If** thường có thể được thay thế bằng **whether**.

He asked me if she was my sister.

→ He asked me whether she was my sister.

Whether diễn tả sự lựa chọn và thường được theo sau bởi **or**:

Do you want to go by air or by sea?

→ He asked me whether I wanted to go by air or by sea.

Do you want to insure your car or not?

→ He asked whether or not I wanted to insure my car.

(Anh ấy hỏi tôi có muốn bảo hiểm xe hơi không?)

- **Whether** thường được xem là thích hợp hơn **If** khi đi trước động từ nguyên thể (infinitive) và Câu điều kiện:

I don't know whether to stay here or go on.

→ John asked whether, if I got the job, I'd move to New York.

(John hỏi có phải tôi sẽ dọn đi New York nếu tôi kiếm được việc làm không)

2. Câu hỏi Wh- (Wh – Questions)

Câu hỏi *wh-* là loại câu hỏi được mở đầu bằng các nghi vấn từ *who, what, where, when, why ...*. Trong lời nói gián tiếp loại câu hỏi này được chuyển đổi như sau:

- Dùng các động từ giới thiệu: *ask, inquire, wonder, want to know*.

- Lặp lại từ để hỏi (*what, when, where ...*) sau động từ giới thiệu.

- Đảo trật tự câu hỏi thành câu trần thuật.

- Đảo đại từ, tính từ sở hữu, thì của động từ và các trạng từ chỉ thời gian, nơi chốn.

Subject + asked (+ object) + what/when/where... + subject + verb

What is your name?

→ He asked me what my name was.

(Anh ấy hỏi tên tôi là gì?)

Where does she live?

→ He asked where she lived.

(Anh ấy hỏi cô ấy sống ở đâu?)

He said, 'What time does the film begin?'

→ He wanted to know what time the film began.

(Anh ấy muốn biết mấy giờ phim bắt đầu.)

Lưu ý:

- Khi tường thuật lại các câu hỏi có cấu trúc **who/what/which + be + bổ ngữ (complement)**, be có thể được đặt trước hoặc sau bổ ngữ.

Who's the best player?

→ She asked me who was the best player. /She asked me who the best player was.

Which is my seat?

→ She wondered which was her seat./ She wondered which her seat was.

- Động từ giới thiệu trong mệnh đề chính ở thì hiện tại đơn, hiện tại tiếp diễn..
Hiện tại hoàn thành và tương lai đơn # thì của động từ trong câu gián tiếp không đổi.

'Has the taxi arrived yet?'

→ She is won if/whether the taxi has arrived yet.

(Cô ấy tự nhủ không biết taxi đến chưa.)

'Where can we stay?' → They want to know where they can stay.

(Họ muốn biết họ sẽ ở đâu)

IV. CÂU MỆNH LỆNH, CÂU YÊU CẦU, CÂU ĐỀ NGHỊ, LỜI KHUYÊN, v.v. TRONG LỜI NÓI GIÁN TIẾP (Orders, requests, offers, advice ect. In indirect speeches)

Câu mệnh lệnh, câu yêu cầu, câu đề nghị, lời khuyên v.v. trong lời nói gián tiếp thường được tường thuật lại bằng động từ nguyên mẫu có to(to-infinitive) hoặc tân ngữ + động từ nguyên mẫu có to (object + to-infinitive).

1. Câu mệnh lệnh và câu yêu cầu (Orders and requests)

Để chuyển câu mệnh lệnh, câu yêu cầu từ trực tiếp sang gián tiếp ta làm như sau:

- Dùng động từ giới thiệu *ask*, hoặc *tell*.

- Đặt tân ngữ (object) chỉ người nhận lệnh hoặc người được yêu cầu sau động từ giới thiệu.

- Dùng dạng nguyên mẫu có to (to-infinitive) của động từ trong câu trực tiếp.
Trong câu phủ định, **not** được đặt trước to-infinitive.

- Đổi các đại từ, tính từ sở hữu và bỏ từ 'please' (nếu có).

Subject + asked/told + object (+not) + to-infinitive

Don't be late tomorrow.

→ He told them **not to be late** the next day.

(Anh ấy bảo họ ngày mai không được đến muộn)

'Do sit down', said my hostess.

→ My host **invited** me to sit down.

'Try again', said Ann's friends encouragingly.

Ann's friends **encouraged** her to try again.

(Các bạn của Ann động viên cô ấy hãy cố lên một lần nữa.)

Be quiet, will you!'

(Hãy im lặng đi!)

He **ordered** us to be quiet.

(Anh ta yêu cầu chúng tôi hãy yên lặng.)

→ Cấu trúc **ask + to-infinitive** hoặc **ask for** cũng có thể được dùng.

'Can I see your driving licence, please?' the policeman said.

→ The policeman **asked to see** my driving licence.

(Viên cảnh sát đòi xem bằng lái của tôi.)

'Can I have some brochures, please?' Judy said.

Judy **asked** (the travel agent) **for** some brochures.

(Judy hỏi xin [nhân viên du lịch] một vài tập quảng cáo.)

→ Câu mệnh lệnh hoặc yêu cầu cũng có thể được tường thuật lại bằng một mệnh đề.

The doctor **told me (that) I had to stay** in bed for a few days.

He **asked his neighbors if they would mind turning** the music down.

Lưu ý: Ngoài *ask* và *tell*, các động từ *order*, *command*, *request*, *beg*, *implore* cũng có thể được dùng.

'Please, please don't take any risks,' said his wife.

→ His wife **begged/ implored** him not to take any risk.

(Vợ anh ta van xin anh ta đừng có liều lĩnh)

2. Lời đề nghị, lời hứa, lời khuyên, lời mời, v. v. (Offers, promises, advice, invitations, ect.)

Lời đề nghị, lời hứa, lời khuyên, lời mời, v.v. thường được tường thuật bằng các động từ giới thiệu: *offer*, *recommend*, *promise*, *advise*, *encourage*, *invite*, *agree*, *remind*, *warn*, *urge*, ...

subject + offered/recommended (+object) + to-infinitive
--

Shall I bring you some tea?

(Tôi mang lại anh một chút nước trà nhé?)

→ He **offered to bring** me some tea.

Anh ấy đề nghị mang cho tôi tách chè.

Shall we meet at the theatre?

He **suggested** meeting at the theatre.

(Anh ấy gợi ý gặp nhau ở rạp hát.)

'Go on, apply for the job,' said Jack.

→ Jack **urged/ encouraged** me to **apply** for the job.

(Jack thúc giục/khuyến khích tôi nộp đơn xin việc.)

→ Danh động từ (Verb-ing) được dùng sau *admit, apologize for, insist on* và *suggest*.

'I really must have a rest.'

→ Emma **insisted on having** a rest.

(Emma đòi nghỉ ngơi)

'Shall we go to a cafeteria?'

- Mệnh đề *that (that-clause)* có thể được dùng sau *admit, advise, agree, insist, promise, remind, suggest* và *warn*.

Nick **promised (that)** he would finish the work by the end of this week.

(Nick hứa là anh ấy sẽ hoàn thành công việc vào cuối tuần.)

She **warned (that)** Nick's dog is very fierce.

(Cô ấy cảnh báo rằng con chó của Nick rất dữ.)

Lưu ý:

- Cấu trúc *Can/ Could/ Will-/ Would you... , please ?* hoặc *Would/ Do you mind + V-ing...?* được xem như câu yêu cầu.

'Could you pass me the salt, please?'

→ He **asked/ told** me to pass him the salt.

(Anh ấy bảo tôi chuyển cho anh ấy lọ muối)

- Cấu trúc *Would you like .. ?* được xem như lời mời.

'Would you like to go to the movies?'

→ He **invited** me to go to the movies.

(Anh ấy mời tôi đi xem phim)

- Cấu trúc *Shall I/ we ...?* và *Can I ...?* được xem như lời đề nghị.

'Shall I carry your bags?' the porter said.

→ The porter **offered** to carry my bags.

(Người khuân vác đề nghị xách túi cho tôi.)

- Cấu trúc *If I were ...* được xem như lời khuyên.

'If I were you, I would stop smoking.'

→ She **advised** me to stop smoking.

(Cô ấy khuyên tôi bỏ thuốc lá)

- Cấu trúc *Let's ...; Shall we ...?* hoặc *Why don't ... ?* được xem như lời gợi ý và được tường thuật lại bằng: **suggest + verb-ing/ that clause**.

The guide said, 'Let's stop for a rest.'

The guide **suggested stopping** for a rest.

(Người hướng dẫn gợi ý dừng lại nghỉ ngơi.)

→ The guide **suggested that we/ they should stop** for a rest.

(người hướng dẫn gợi ý chúng ta/ họ nên dừng lại để nghỉ ngơi)

V. CÂU CẢM THÁN VÀ CÂU TRẢ LỜI YES/ NO TRONG LỜI NÓI GIÁN TIẾP (Exclamations and yes/ no answers in indirect speeches)

1. Câu cảm thán (Exclamations)

Câu cảm thán bắt đầu bằng *What (a I an)...!* và *How ...!* thường được thuật lại bằng động từ *exclaim/say that*.

'What a lovely garden!' (*Khu vườn đẹp quá!*)

→ She **exclaimed/ said that it was** a lovely garden.

Or: She **exclaimed/ said that the garden was** lovely.

(*Cô ấy thốt lên rằng khu vườn đẹp quá.*)

'How hot it is!' (*trời nóng quá!*)

→ He **exclaimed/ said that it was** hot.

(*Anh ta kêu lên rằng trời nóng quá.*)

• MỘT SỐ TRƯỜNG HỢP ĐÁNG LƯU Ý

'Good!' he exclaimed → He gave an exclamation with pleasure.

'Ugh!' she exclaimed → She gave an exclamation with disgust.

He said, 'Thank you!' → He thanked me.

He said, 'Welcome!' → He welcomed me.

He said, 'Good morning!' → He greeted me.

He said, 'Happy Christmas!' → He wished me a happy Christmas.

He said, 'Congratulations!' → He congratulated me.

He said, 'Liar!' → He called me a liar.

He said, 'Damn!' → He swore.

→ **Câu trả lời Yes/ No (Yes/ No answers)**

Câu trả lời *yes* và *no* được diễn đạt trong câu gián tiếp bằng chủ ngữ và trợ động từ tương ứng (subject + auxiliary verb).

Daniel said, 'Is there a cafe nearby' and Tom said 'No'.

→ Daniel asked (Tom) if there was a cafe nearby and Tom said **there wasn't**.

(*Daniel hỏi có quán cà phê nào gần đây không và Tom nói không có*)

He said, 'Can you swim?' and I said 'Yes'.

→ He asked (me) if I could swim and I said **I could**.

(*Anh ấy hỏi tôi có biết bơi không và tôi nói tôi biết*)

VI. CÁC LOẠI CÂU HỖN HỢP TRONG LỜI NÓI GIÁN TIẾP (Mixed types in indirect speeches)

Câu trực tiếp có thể gồm hai hoặc nhiều loại câu kết hợp với nhau: câu trần thuật + câu hỏi; câu hỏi + câu mệnh lệnh; câu mệnh lệnh + câu trần thuật, v.v.

Khi đổi loại câu hỗn hợp này sang câu gián tiếp, ta có thể đổi theo từng phần và dùng các động từ giới thiệu thích hợp riêng cho từng phần.

'I have left my watch at home. What time is it now?' he asked.

→ He **said** (that) he had left his watch at home and **asked** (me) what time it was then.

(Anh ấy nói anh ấy đã để quên đồng hồ ở nhà và hỏi lúc đó là mấy giờ.)

'I'm going shopping. Can I get you anything?' she said.

→ She **said** she was going shopping and **asked** if she could get me anything.

(Cô ấy nói cô ấy sẽ đi mua sắm và hỏi tôi có cần mua gì không?)

'Someone's coming,' he said. 'Get behind the screen'

→ He **said** that someone was coming and **told** me to get behind the screen.

(Anh ấy nói có người đang đến và bảo tôi trốn phía sau tấm màn.)

Let's shop on Friday. The supermarket will be very crowded on Saturday,' she said.

→ She **suggested** shopping on Friday and **said** that the supermarket would be very crowded on Saturday.

(Cô ấy gợi ý đi mua sắm vào thứ Sáu và nói rằng thứ Bảy siêu thị sẽ rất đông)

- Đôi khi động từ giới thiệu thứ hai có thể là một phân từ.

'Please, please don't drink too much! Remember that you'll have to drive home' she said.

→ She **begged** him not to drink too much, **reminding/ and reminded** him that he would have to drive home.

(Cô ấy van xin anh ta đừng uống quá nhiều và nhắc rằng anh ta còn phải lái xe về nhà.)

- Khi mệnh đề sau là câu giải thích cho mệnh đề trước, ta có thể dùng **as** thay cho động từ giới thiệu thứ hai.

He said, 'You'd better wear a coat. It's very cold out.'

→ He advised me to wear a coat **as** it was very cold out.

(Anh ấy khuyên tôi nên mặc áo khoác vì bên ngoài trời rất lạnh.)

'Let's shopping on Friday. The supermarket will be very crowded on Saturday.'

→ She suggested shopping on Friday **as** the supermarket would be very crowded on Saturday.

(Cô ấy gợi ý đi mua sắm vào thứ Sáu vì thứ Bảy siêu thị sẽ rất đông.)

VII. ĐỘNG TỪ GIỚI THIỆU TRONG LỜI NÓI TRỰC TIẾP VÀ GIÁN TIẾP. (Introductory verbs in direct and indirect speech)

1. Động từ *say* có thể dùng trước hoặc sau lời nói trực tiếp:

John said, 'I'm hungry'.

'I'm hungry', John said.

Khi *say* theo sau lời nói trực tiếp chúng ta có thể đảo ngược vị trí của chủ ngữ và động từ *say*, với điều kiện chủ ngữ là một danh từ:

'I'm hungry', said John,

Nhưng chúng ta không được nói:

*I'm hungry', said he.

Say có thể nằm giữa câu:

'As a result', said John, 'I'm very hungry'.

Say to + tân ngữ có thể được đặt ở cuối câu:

'I'm hungry', John said to me.

Nhưng chúng ta không nên nói:

8. John said to me, 'I'm hungry'.

Với lời nói gián tiếp, chúng ta có thể dùng *say to* + tân ngữ nhưng hình thức với *tell* + tân ngữ thường được dùng hơn.

John said to me that he was hungry.

John **told me** that he was hungry.

2. Động từ *tell* luôn luôn phải đi với một tân ngữ. Với lời nói trực tiếp, *tell* + tân ngữ luôn luôn được đặt sau:

'I'm hungry', John told me.

Với lời nói gián tiếp, *tell* + tân ngữ luôn luôn đi trước:

John **told me** that he was hungry.

3. Những động từ khác dùng để giới thiệu lời nói trực tiếp và gián tiếp:

'I love you', he whispered, [to whisper = thì thầm]

→ He **whispered** that he loved her.

'We are not very late', Tom assured us.

[to assure = trấn an, làm cho ai vững tâm]

→ Tom **assured** us that we were not very late.

'I'll marry you', he promised, [to promise = hứa]

→ He **promised** that he would marry her.

'I live here', he explained, [to explain = giải thích]

→ He **explained** that he lived there.

'I'm tired', she complained, [to complain = than phiền, phàn nàn]

→ She **complained** that she was tired.

.....
8. "Where have you been?" Gary asked his wife.

.....
9. "I've been working for the same company since 1960," he said to me.

.....
10. "Do you know Garfield?" she asked me.
.....

3. Turn the following sentences into Reported speech.

1. "How shall I tell Tom the bad news? She said.

She asked how she should tell Tom the bad news......

2. "You must try my home-made pie," he said.

.....
3. "Can I go home now?" he asked.

.....
4. "May I call you by your first name?" he asked her.

.....
5. "You can come in, but you mustn't make any noise," she said to him.

.....
6. "What time shall we arrive in London?" he asked.

.....
7. "She must try harder if she wants to succeed," he said.

.....
8. "My father will be angry with me if he finds out," she said.

.....
9. "You ought not to drive so fast," he said to her.

.....
10. "They don't have to come if they don't feel like it," he said.

.....
11. "You had better speak to the manager," she said to him.

.....
12. "I may not be able to meet you at the airport," he said to her.
.....

4. First write the appropriate introductory verb then report the following situations.

1. "You should go to bed." *advise.....*

He advised me to go to bed......

2. "Please, please don't leave me."
-
3. "Do it now!"
-
4. "No, I did not kill him."
-
5. "Oh, alright, I'll do the washing-up"
-
6. "Don't forget to take the dog out."
-
7. "Everybody, stand up now!"
-
8. "No, I will not give you my money."
-
9. "Could I use your phone?"
-
10. "I'm sorry I shouted at you."
-
11. "I'll punish you if you don't behave."
-
12. "It was me who stole the book."
-
13. "It only works if you press the green button."
-
14. "You're right. It was a brilliant film."
-
15. "I've been feeling dizzy all day."
-
16. "Of course I'll write to you."
-
17. "I'll give you a lift home, if you like."
-
18. "Let's go for a swim."
-
19. "It was you who broke the TV"
-
20. "If I were you, I would tell them the truth."
-

5. Rewrite each question in indirect speech, beginning as shown.

1. 'What time does the film start, Peter?'

I asked . *Peter. what. time. the. film. started.*.....

2. 'Do you watch television every evening, Chris?'

The interviewer asked

3. 'Why did you apply for this job?' asked the sales manager.

The sales manager asked me

4. "Are you taking much money with you to France?"

My bank manager wanted to know

5. "When will I know the results of the examination?"

Maria asked the examiner.....

6. "Are you enjoying your flight?"

The flight attendant asked me

7. "How does the photocopier work?"

I asked the salesman

8. "Have you ever been to Japan, Paul?"

Sue asked Paul

6. Rewrite each sentence, beginning as shown. Do not change the meaning.

1. What time does the next boat leave?

Do you think you could tell me. *.the. next. boat. leave?*.....

2. Where can I change some money?

Can you tell me

3. Where is the toilet?

Could you possibly tell me.....?

4. How much does this pullover cost?

I'd like to know

5. How do I get to Victoria Station?

Can you explain

6. Does this train go to Gatwick Airport?

Could you tell me.....?

7. Where do you come from?

Would you mind telling me

8. What do you think of London?

Do you think you could tell me.....?

7. Use an appropriate Introductory verb to report the following.

1. "It wasn't me who stole the car." Said Henry.

Henry. denied. stealing. / having. stolen. the. car......

2. "May I have a piece of cake please?" she said.

.....

3. "Yes, okay. I'll tell him about the accident." He said.

.....

4. "I must have the report by tomorrow," the boss said.

.....

5. "Please, please let me go to the party," Sue asked her mother.

.....

6. "I'll never be naughty again," Ted said to his father.

.....

7. "Stand up straight!" said the sergeant to the soldier.

.....

8. "Yes. It was me who robbed the bank," he said.

.....

9. "I didn't come to work because I was ill," she said to her boss.

.....

10. "Let's play chess," he said.

.....

11. "I'm sorry I forgot to phone you," he said to her.

.....

12. "Don't forget to go to the bank," she said to him.

.....

13. "You should relax more," the doctor said to him.

.....

14. "Mark is always shouting at me," she said.

.....

15. "Yes, it is a nice dress," he said.

.....

16. "Shall I carry your bag, Tracy?" he said.

.....

17. "No, I certainly won't do your homework Graham," said Bill.

.....

18. "You scratched my record," he said to her.

.....

19. "Leave now or I'll phone the ponce," she said to the salesman.

.....

20. "Oh alright, I'll lend you my car, Tom," she said.

21. "It's true, I broke the window," he said.

22. "I'll phone you as soon as I arrive," she said to me.

23 "You're right, she is beautiful." she said.

24. "No, I won't marry you, John," she said.

25. "If you try to escape, I'll shoot you," he said to the prisoner.

26. "Why don't we have chicken for dinner?" he said.

27. "You must sign the Mntrad, Mr Harrison," she said.

28. "I'll punish you if you do that again!" he said to the boy.

29. "Would you like me to show you how to use this computer?" she said to me.

30. "Yes, it is a good idea," he said.

8. Rewrite each sentence, beginning as shown. Do not change the meaning.

1. 'Sue, can you remember to buy some bread?'

Paul reminded ..*Sue to buy some bread*.....

2. "I don't really think it'll snow tomorrow."

I doubt.....

3. 'I'm sorry I didn't phone you earlier.'

Jill apologized

4. 'Yes, all right, I'll share the bill with you, Dave.'

Brenda agreed

5. 'No, I'm sorry, I won't work on Saturday. Definitely not!'

Catherine refused

6. 'Let's go out to the cafe for lunch, shall we?'

Wendy suggested.....

7. 'It's not true! I have never been arrested.'

Larry denied

8. 'If you like, I'll help you do the decorating, Bob.'

Ann offered

9. 'I'll definitely take you to the park on Sunday, children.'

Tom promised the

10. 'I really think you should see a doctor, Chris.'

William advised.....

9. Look carefully at each line. Some of the lines are correct, and some have a word which should not be there. Tick each correct line. If a line has a word which should not be there, write the word in the space.

Satellite television

when my parents decided that to get a new <i>that</i>
satellite television, I asked them why they ✓
thought this was a good idea. I doubted it	1).....
whether it was really necessary, and told to them	2).....
that I had thought they spent too much time	3).....
watching television. They agreed they didn't	4).....
go out very much, but were insisted that they	5).....
had had thought about th matter very carefully.	6).....
'we enjoy television. "They said me," and when we	7).....
asked you, you said that you agreed with us"	8).....
I replied them that I didn't remember being asked,	9).....
and that I would have tried to stop them. Then	10).....
they were admitted that they had asked me while I was	11).....
watching my favourite programme. I asked them	12).....
what was I had been watching, and they said	13).....
it was a football match. "You told us that	14).....
to keep quiet, so we thought that you agreed!"	15).....

10. Report the following using an appropriate Introductory verb from the list below:

complain	advise	refuse	warn	beg	suggest
agree	exclaim	deny	offer		
insist	apologise	threaten	accuse	prefer	

1. "You should take more exercise," the doctor said.

. The doctor advised me to take more exercise.....

2. "This film is so boring," he said to his mother.

.....

3. 'Please, please let me go out to play, Mum.' She said

.....

4. "Shall I carry your shopping for you?" he said to her.

.....

5. "Don't get dirty in the garden," she said to Jane.

.....

6. "I'm not going to tidy Helen's bedroom," Tim said

.....

7. "I didn't eat the cake" he said to her.

.....

8. "What a silly thing to say!" she said.

.....

9. "You really must get your haircut," she said to him.

.....

10. "You broke my record player," she said to him.

.....

11. "I'm sorry I didn't write to you" she said to her.

.....

12. "Let's go to Jamaica for our holiday," he said to her.

.....

13. "Yes, that is a nice colour" the sales assistant said to her.

.....

14. "I'd rather watch a film than the news," she said to her.

.....

15. "How rude he is!" she said to me.

.....

16. "I think you should go on a diet," she said to him.

.....

17. "I didn't take your dress" she said to her sister.

.....

18. "What a nice gilt!" he said.

.....

19. "I'll hit you if you don't stop talking," the boy said to his brother.

.....

20. "I'm sorry I spoke to you like that," he said to his mother.

.....

11. Rewrite the following sentence In Reported speech.

1. "What time does the next bus leave?" he said. "I need to get to the station."
He asked what time the next bus left because he needed to get to the station
.....
2. "Don't go swimming in the lake." she said. "The water is filthy."
.....
3. "Let's go shopping tomorrow," she said. "The sales have started."
.....
4. "Stand up." The teacher said to the pupils. "The headmaster is coming."
.....
5. "Please don't take my ring." She said to him. "It was a present."
.....
6. "It's very late, Martin," his mother said. "Where have you been?"
.....
7. "Shall I cook the dinner?" he said to her. "You look very tired."
.....
8. "Please stop making that noise!" she said to him. "I can't concentrate."
.....
9. "Yes, I dropped your vase." She said. "I was cleaning the shelf."
.....
10. "Can I use the car, please?" she said. "I need to run some errands."
.....
11. "I'm sorry I'm late," he said. "The car wouldn't start."
.....
12. "Why are you teasing your sister?" she asked him. "You know it makes her unhappy."
.....
13. "Why won't you come to the party?" he said to her. "Everyone would love to see you."
.....
14. "It was Rob who broke the window," he said to her. "He was kicking the football."
.....

Chương 16

CÂU BỊ ĐỘNG (PASSIVE SENTENCES)

I. CÂU CHỦ ĐỘNG VÀ CÂU BỊ ĐỘNG (Active and passive sentences)

1. **Câu chủ động (Active sentences):** câu chủ động là câu trong đó chủ ngữ là người hay vật thực hiện hành động.

Someone opened the door.

(Ai đó đã mở cửa)

2. **Câu bị động (Passive sentences):** Câu bị động là câu trong đó chủ ngữ là người hay vật nhận hoặc chịu tác động của hành động.

The door was opened.

(Cửa đã được mở)

a. Hình thức (Form)

Subject + be + past participle (+by + agent)

This tree was planted by my grandfather.

S be + pp O (agent)

(Cây này do ông tôi trồng)

b. Cách dùng (Use)

Câu bị động (passive sentence) được dùng:

1. Khi người thực hiện hành động không quan trọng đối với ý nghĩa người nói muốn diễn tả:

This school **was built** ten years ago.

(Trường này đã được xây mười năm trước đây)

2. Khi người nói muốn nhấn mạnh vào người nhận hành động:

The old man **was hit** by a car.

(Ông già ấy đã bị xe đụng)

[Nhấn mạnh vào *the old man*, chứ không phải vào bất cứ người nào khác]

3. Khi muốn câu nói mang tính khách quan, không thuộc về người nào:

It is believed that she has won the prize.

(Người ta tin rằng cô ấy đã đoạt giải thưởng)

* Khi người hoặc vật thực hiện hành động đã rõ ràng.

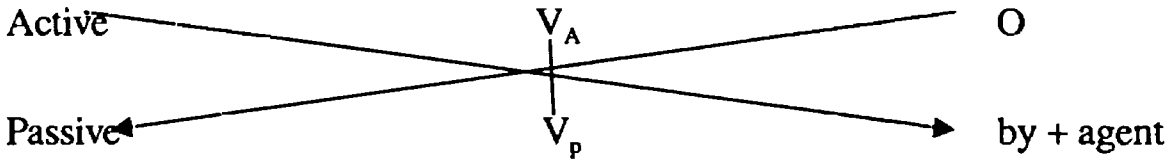
The streets **are swept** every day.

(Những con đường được quét mỗi ngày.)

[by street-sweepers]

II. CÁCH CHUYỂN SANG CÂU BỊ ĐỘNG (Passive transformation)

Muốn chuyển một câu chủ động sang câu bị động, ta thực hiện các bước sau:



1. Lấy tân ngữ (object) của câu chủ động làm chủ ngữ (subject) của câu bị động.
2. Đổi động từ chủ động (V_A) thành động từ bị động (V_P).

V_P : Be + past participle (pp)

TENSE	PASSIVE STRUCTURE
Present simple <i>People speak English here.</i>	am/ is/ are + pp <i>English is spoken here.</i>
Present progressive <i>They are painting the house.</i>	am/ is/ are being + pp <i>The house is being painted.</i>
Past simple <i>Somebody cleaned this room yesterday.</i>	was/ were + pp <i>This room was cleaned yesterday.</i>
Past progressive <i>My sister was baking the cakes.</i>	was/ were being + pp <i>The cakes were being baked by my sister.</i>
Present perfect <i>He hasn't worn the jacket for years.</i>	have/ has been + pp <i>The jacket hasn't been worn for years.</i>
Past perfect <i>They had destroyed all the documents when we arrived.</i>	had been + pp <i>All the documents had been destroyed when we arrived.</i>
Future simple <i>I'll tell you when the time comes.</i>	will be + pp <i>You'll be told when the time comes.</i>
Future progressive <i>We will be holding talks at this time next year.</i>	will be being + pp <i>Talks will be being held at this time next year.</i>
Future perfect <i>You will have finished this report by Tuesday.</i>	will have been + pp <i>This report will have been finished by Tuesday.</i>
Be going to <i>We are going to buy her a gift.</i>	Am/ is/ are going to be + pp <i>She is going to be bought a gift.</i>
Modal verbs <i>The manager must sign the cheque</i>	can, should, must,... + be + pp <i>The cheque must be signed by the manager.</i>

<p>Modal perfect <i>We should have sent the letter last week.</i></p> <p>Present infinitive <i>I want you to do it as soon as possible.</i></p> <p>Perfect infinitive <i>We hope to have finished the job by next Saturday.</i></p> <p>Present participle/ Gerund <i>I don't like people telling me what to do.</i></p> <p>Perfect participle <i>Having warned them about the bandits, ...</i> [I had warned (sb)...]</p>	<p>can, should,... + have been + pp <i>The letter should have been sent last week.</i></p> <p>to be + pp <i>I want it (to) be done as soon as possible.</i></p> <p>to have been + pp <i>We hope the job (to) have been finished by next Saturday</i></p> <p>being + pp <i>I don't like being told what to do.</i></p> <p>having been + pp <i>Having been warned about the bandits, ...</i> [I had been warned (by sb) ...]</p>
--	---

Lưu ý: Đôi khi **get** có thể được dùng thay cho **be** để diễn đạt những sự việc gây bất ngờ hoặc khó chịu.

There was an accident in the street but nobody **got** hurt.

(*Có một tai nạn xảy ra trên đường nhưng không ai bị thương*)

[= nobody was hurt]

The eggs **got** broken.

(*Trứng đã bị vỡ*). [= were broken]

3. Chủ ngữ của câu chủ động thành tác nhân (agent) của câu bị động và trước nó phải có giới từ **by**.

The President presented the medals.

→ The medals were presented **by the President**.

(*Huân chương do Tổng thống trao tặng*)

Các chủ ngữ *I, you, he, she, it, we, they, one, people, someone, somebody* trong câu chủ động thường được bỏ, không dùng trong câu bị động.

Somebody has invited you to lunch.

→ You **have been invited** to lunch.

(*Bạn được mời đi ăn trưa*)

They left the dog in the garden.

→ The dog **was left** in the garden.

(*Con chó bị bỏ rơi ngoài vườn*)

Tuy nhiên, nếu các từ như *people* được phẩm định bởi các tính từ làm ý nghĩa của chúng trở nên giới hạn hơn, chúng ta phải lặp lại các từ ấy trong câu bị động.

The English people greatly love the Queen.

→ The Queen is **greatly loved** by the English people.

(Nữ hoàng được người dân Anh rất yêu mến.)

Most people have seen that film.

→ That film **has been seen** by most people.

(Cuốn phim đó được rất nhiều người muốn xem)

Lưu ý: Dùng **with** (không dùng **by**) để chỉ dụng cụ, công cụ hoặc nguyên liệu được sử dụng.

He was shot (by the policeman) **with** a rifle.

(Anh ta bị bắn bằng súng trường)

The room was filled **with** smoke.

(Căn phòng đầy khói)

*** Vị trí của trạng từ hoặc cụm trạng từ trong câu bị động**

- Trạng từ chỉ cách thức thường đứng giữa *be* và quá khứ phân từ (past participle)

He wrote the book beautifully.

→ The book **was beautifully** written.

(Cuốn sách được viết rất hay)

- Trạng từ hoặc cụm trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn đứng trước *by* + *agent*.

The police found him **in the forest**.

→ He was found **in the forest** by the police.

(Nó được cảnh sát tìm thấy trong rừng)

- Trạng từ hoặc cụm trạng từ chỉ thời gian đứng sau *by* + *agent*.

The secretary typed the report **this morning**.

→ The report was typed by the secretary **this morning**.

(Bản báo cáo đã được thư ký đánh máy sáng nay)

III. CÁC CẤU TRÚC BỊ ĐỘNG ĐẶC BIỆT (Special passive structures)

1. Động từ với hai tân ngữ (verb with two objects)

Khi động từ chủ động có hai tân ngữ - tân ngữ gián tiếp (indirect object) chỉ người và tân ngữ trực tiếp (direct object) chỉ vật - thì cả hai tân ngữ đều có thể làm chủ ngữ cho câu bị động.

• Tân ngữ trực tiếp là một danh từ

(a) Verb + indirect object (I.O) + direct object (D.O)

He gave the girl a doll

DO IO

(b) Verb + direct object + preposition + indirect object

He gave a doll to the girl

DO Prep IO

→ Dạng bị động được thành lập bằng hai cách:

(a) Tân ngữ gián tiếp (indirect object) trở thành chủ ngữ của động từ bị động.

The girl was given a doll.

(*Cô bé được đưa một con búp bê*)

(b) Tân ngữ trực tiếp (direct object) trở thành chủ ngữ của động từ bị động.

A doll was given to the girl.

(*Con búp bê đã được đưa cho cô bé*)

Việc lựa chọn giữa hai cấu trúc bị động tùy thuộc vào điều đã được nói trước đó, hoặc vào điều cần phải nhấn mạnh. Tuy nhiên tân ngữ gián tiếp (indirect object) thường được dùng làm chủ ngữ của động từ bị động hơn tân ngữ trực tiếp (direct object).

They have awarded **Andrew** a prize for his essay.

→ **Andrew** has been awarded a prize for his essay.

(*Andrew được trao giải thưởng cho bài tiểu luận của nó*)

[phổ biến hơn 'A prize has been awarded to Andrew for his essay.']

Giới từ **to** đôi khi được bỏ đi trước đại từ làm tân ngữ gián tiếp.

Some flowers were sent (**to**) me by Harry.

(*Tôi được Harry gửi tặng vài bông hoa.*)

* Một số động từ thường dùng trong cấu trúc này gồm: *allow, award, ask, give, sell, send, show, lend, pay, promise, tell, offer, teach, refuse, write.*

Lưu ý: Không dùng cấu trúc (a) với hai động từ *explain* và *suggest*.

We explained **the problem to the children**.

[NOT ~~We explained the children the problem.~~]

→ **The problem** was explained to the children.

(*Vấn đề đã được giải thích cho bọn trẻ.*)

[NOT ~~The children were explained the problem.~~]

They suggested **a meeting place to us**.

[NOT ~~They suggested us a meeting place.~~]

→ **A meeting place** was suggested to us.

(*Người ta đã đề xuất với chúng tôi một nơi gặp mặt*)

[NOT ~~We were suggested a meeting place.~~]

• **Tân ngữ trực tiếp** là một cụm từ bắt đầu bằng *who, when, what, which, where*, hoặc một mệnh đề:

We showed him how to do it.

→ He was shown how to do it.

(*Anh ấy đã được xem cách làm chuyện đó như thế nào.*)

Tom told her when to start.

→ She was told when to start.

(Chị ấy đã được biết khi nào bắt đầu)

They promised you that they would meet you.

→ You were promised that you would be met.

(Anh được họ hứa họ sẽ gặp anh)

2. Động từ + tân ngữ + động từ nguyên mẫu có to(verb + object + to-infinitive)

a. Các động từ chỉ cảm xúc hoặc mong ước: *like, hate, love, want, wish, prefer, hope...* + *object + to-infinitive* → dạng bị động được thành lập bằng cách dùng dạng bị động của động từ nguyên mẫu.

Subject + verb + object + passive infinitive (to be + pp)

I should love someone to take me out to dinner.

→ I should love **to be taken out** to dinner.

(Tôi rất thích được mời đi ăn tiệm)

I didn't expect the police to find my car.

→ I didn't expect my car **to be found** by the police.

(Tôi không hy vọng xe của tôi được cảnh sát tìm thấy)

Nếu tân ngữ của động từ nguyên mẫu chỉ cùng một đối tượng với chủ ngữ của câu thì dạng bị động được thành lập không có tân ngữ.

Subject + verb + to be + past participle

He likes people to call him 'Sir'.

→ He likes **to be called** 'Sir'.

(Ông ấy thích được gọi bằng "Ngài")

I prefer you to call me by my first name.

→ I prefer **to be called** by my first name.

(Tôi thích được gọi bằng tên)

b. Các động từ chỉ mệnh lệnh, sự yêu cầu, sự cho phép, lời khuyên, lời mời, v.v.: *ask, tell, request, order, advise, invite, allow ... + object + to-infinitive* # dạng bị động được thành lập bằng cách dùng dạng bị động của động từ chính.

Subject + passive verb + to-infinitive

We asked him to do it.

→ He **was asked** to do it.

(Anh ta bị sai làm việc đó.)

They warned him not to be late.

→ He **was warned** not to be late.

(Anh ta được nhắc nhở không được đến muộn)

* Dạng bị động này cũng được dùng cho một số động từ chỉ tri giác: *believe, consider, think, feel, know, understand ... + object + to-infinitive* (thường là *to be*).

They believed him innocent.

→ He **was believed** innocent.

(Anh ta được tin là vô tội.)

The teachers think him the best student in the class.

→ He **is thought** the best student in the class.

(Anh ấy được cho là sinh viên giỏi nhất trong lớp)

Lưu ý: *Advise, beg, order, recommend, urge + indirect object + to-infinitive + object* cũng có thể được đổi sang dạng bị động bằng *that... should + passive infinitive*.

He urged the Council to reduce the rates.

(Anh ta kiến nghị Hội đồng giảm thuế)

→ He urged **that the rates should be reduced**.

(Anh ta kiến nghị rằng thuế cần phải được giảm bớt)

→ The Council **was/were urged** to reduce the rates.

(Hội đồng được kiến nghị cần phải giảm thuế.)

3. Động từ + tân ngữ + động từ nguyên mẫu không to (verb + object + bare-infinitive)

Các động từ chỉ giác quan: *feel, see, watch, notice, hear, listen to ... + object + bare-infinitive* → dạng bị động được thành lập bằng cách dùng dạng bị động của động từ chính và động từ nguyên mẫu có *to (to-infinitive)*.

Subject + passive verb + to - infinitive

They have never known him behave so badly.

→ He has **never been known** to behave so badly.

(Anh ta chưa bao giờ được biết là cư xử tự như vậy.)

* Dạng bị động này cũng được dùng cho động từ *make* và *help*.

I made John do it.

→ John **was made** to do it.

(John đã bị bắt làm chuyện đó)

* *let* được dùng không có *to*.

They let Bob teach Mary.

→ They let Mary **be taught** (by Bob)

(Họ để Mary được dạy)

Tuy nhiên *let* ít được dùng ở dạng bị động, *allow* thường được dùng thay cho *let* trong câu bị động.

We were allowed to go.

4. Động từ + tân ngữ + danh động từ (verb + object + gerund)

Động từ được theo sau bởi tân ngữ + danh động từ: *see, hear, find, stop, keep...+ object + verb-ing* → dạng bị động được thành lập bằng cách dùng dạng bị động của động từ chính.

Subject + passive verb + verb-ing

I found him working at his desk.

→ He was found working at his desk.

I saw him running off.

→ He was seen running off.

We saw him writing a letter.

→ He was seen writing a letter.

Khi tân ngữ của danh động từ chỉ cùng một đối tượng với chủ ngữ của câu
→ dạng bị động được thành lập bằng cách dùng dạng bị động của danh động từ.

Subject + verb + passive gerund (being + pp)

I remember my father taking me to the zoo.

→ I remember being taken to the zoo (by my father).

(Tôi nhớ lại chuyện được bố tôi đưa đến công viên)

Mary hates people looking at her.

→ She hate being looked at.

(Mary không thích bị người ta nhìn mình)

5. Động từ + động từ nguyên thể/ danh động từ + tân ngữ (verb + to-infinitive/ gerund + object)

Một số động từ như: *advise, agree, insist, arrange, suggest, propose, recommend, determine, decide, demand, etc.* + to-infinitive / gerund + object thường được diễn đạt ở dạng bị động bằng mệnh đề that (that clause).

Subject + verb + that + subject + should be + pp.

He decided to sell the house.

→ He decided that the house should be sold.

(Ông ta quyết định nên bán căn nhà.)

She suggested taking children to the zoo.

→ She suggested that the children should be taken to the zoo.

(Cô ấy gợi ý rằng nên đưa bọn trẻ đi sở thú)

6. Động từ + tân ngữ + bổ ngữ của tân ngữ (verb + object + object complement)

Tân ngữ trực tiếp sau một số động từ có thể được theo sau bởi một bổ ngữ của

ThichTiengAnh.Com - Website chia sẻ đề thi, tài liệu Tiếng Anh hay, mới nhất
tân ngữ (bổ ngữ có thể là danh từ hoặc tính từ). Trong mệnh đề bị động, các bổ
ngữ này trở thành bổ ngữ của chủ ngữ và theo sau động từ.

We believed him innocent.

→ He was believed **innocent**.

(Anh ta được cho là vô tội)

I will paint the door yellow.

→ The door will be painted **yellow**.

(Cửa ra vào sẽ được sơn màu vàng.)

They regard Kathy as an expert.

→ Kathy is regarded **as an expert**.

(Kathy được xem như một chuyên gia.)

7. Động từ + mệnh đề (verb + That-clause)

Khi mệnh đề *that* (*that-clause*) được dùng làm tân ngữ cho các động từ *agree, allege, announce, assume, hope, believe, claim, consider, estimate, expect, feel, find, know, report, rumor, say, think, understand, etc.* thì dạng bị động có thể được diễn đạt theo hai cách:

- | |
|---|
| (1) Subject + passive verb + to-infinitive
Subject + passive verb + to have + pp |
| (2) It + passive verb + that-clause |

People say that he is a good doctor.

→ He **is said to be** a good doctor.

→ **It is said** that he is a good doctor.

(Người ta nói rằng ông ấy là một bác sĩ giỏi.)

We know that he was a spy.

→ He **is known to have been** a spy.

→ **It is known** that he was a spy.

(Người ta biết rằng ông ta đã từng là một gián điệp.)

Lưu ý:

Trong cách đổi thứ nhất (1) chúng ta phải xét đến thời gian xảy ra hành động trong mệnh đề *that* (*that-clause*) và mệnh đề chính (*main clause*).

- Hành động trong mệnh đề *that* (*that-clause*) xảy ra đồng thời hoặc xảy ra sau hành động trong mệnh đề chính → dùng *present infinitive* (*to-infinitive*).

People say that Henry is in love with Claire.

→ Henry **is said to be** in love with Claire.

(Mọi người nói rằng Henry đang yêu Claire)

He didn't consider that she had a different idea.

→ She **wasn't considered to have** a different idea.

They believed that she was living abroad.

→ She was believed to be living abroad.

(Người ta cho rằng cô ấy đang sống ở nước ngoài)

They expect that the strike will end soon.

→ The strike is expected to end soon.

(Người ta mong cuộc bãi công sẽ sớm kết thúc.)

- Hành động trong mệnh đề *that* xảy ra trước hành động trong mệnh đề chính # dùng perfect infinitive (to have + past participle).

They report that two people were injured in the explosion.

→ Two people are reported to have been injured in the explosion.

(Có hai người được cho là đã bị thương trong vụ nổ.)

The police alleged that we had brought goods into the country illegally.

→ We were alleged to have brought goods into the country illegally by the police.

(Chúng tôi bị cảnh sát cho là đã nhập khẩu hàng hóa trái phép.)

8. Câu mệnh lệnh (Imperative sentences)

Câu mệnh lệnh (imperative sentences): *Verb + object/Don't + verb + object*

→ dạng bị động được thành lập bằng cách dùng động từ LET.

Let + object + be + past participle

Write your name here.

→ Let your name be written here. (Hãy viết tên anh ở đây)

Don't make so much noise.

→ Let not so much noise be made.

(Đừng gây nhiều tiếng ồn như thế.)

IV. NHỮNG CÂU KHÔNG THỂ CHUYỂN SANG BỊ ĐỘNG

Sự chuyển đổi sang câu bị động không thể thực hiện được trong những trường hợp sau đây:

1. Về mặt ngữ nghĩa, việc chuyển sang câu bị động có thể tạo ra những câu ngớ ngẩn lạ kỳ, không phù hợp với những nguyên tắc đã nêu trong đoạn đầu chương này như:

Mary likes cats.

Đổi thành: Cats are liked by Mary

He can read English and French.

Đổi thành English and French can be read by him.

2. Về mặt cấu trúc, những câu thuộc mẫu Chủ ngữ x động từ x tân ngữ (SVO) không thể đổi sang câu bị động khi:

- Tân ngữ là một động từ nguyên thể (infinitive)

We want to see him at 5 o'clock.

- Tân ngữ là một danh động từ (gerund):

I remember **doing** it.

- Tân ngữ là một đại từ phản thân (reflexive pronoun)

John could see *himself* in the mirror. [đại từ phản thân]

(John có thể nhìn thấy mình trong gương)

Không thể đổi thành:

*Himself could be seen in the mirror.

- Tân ngữ là một đại từ hỗ tương (reciprocal pronoun).

We could not see **each other** in the fog.

(Chúng tôi không thể nhìn thấy nhau trong sương mù.)

Không thể đổi thành:

Each other could not be seen in the fog.

- Tân ngữ được phẩm định bởi một đại từ sở hữu chỉ về cùng một đối tượng với chủ ngữ của câu:

He cut **his** finger.

Không thể đổi thành:

His finger was cut by him.

- Động từ và danh từ theo sau liên kết nhau thành một đơn vị ngữ nghĩa không thể tách rời ra được (inseparable semantic unit). Đó là trường hợp của các từ ngữ thông dụng như:

to have a wash (giặt quần áo)

to take a walk (đi dạo)

to have a cold (cảm lạnh)

to give a jump (nhảy)

to have breakfast (ăn sáng)

.....

- Động từ là một trong các động từ như sau đây:

have	They have a nice house.
fit	The coat does not fit/suit you.
suit	
resemble	John resembles his father.
look like	He looks like his father.
hold (chứa)	The room holds 100 people.
mean (có nghĩa)	'Oculist' means 'eye-doctor'.
contain (chứa đựng)	The library contains a million books.
	Nhưng có thể nói:
	A million books are contained in the library.

Thể sai khiến (causative form) được dùng để nói rằng chúng ta sắp xếp cho một người khác làm điều gì đó cho chúng ta, nghĩa là chủ ngữ không phải là người thực hiện hành động; chủ ngữ yêu cầu, sai bảo, cầu xin hoặc trả tiền cho người khác làm việc đó.

He **repaired** the roof. (*Anh ấy sửa mái nhà*) # anh ấy tự làm.

He **had** the roof **repaired**. (*Anh ấy nhờ người ta sửa mái nhà.*)

→ người khác làm.

Thể sai khiến có thể được diễn đạt bằng hai cách: chủ động và bị động.

1. Chủ động (Active): khi muốn đề cập đến người thực hiện hành động.

Subject	+	HAVE	+	object (person)	+	bare-infinitive	+	object
Subject	+	GET	+	object (person)	+	to-infinitive	+	object

The manager **had** his secretary **prepare** the report.

(*Giám đốc bảo thư ký của ông ấy chuẩn bị bản báo cáo.*)

I'm going to **get** Harry to **repair** my car.

(*Tôi sẽ nhờ Harry sửa ô tô*)

2. Thu động (Passive): khi không muốn hoặc không cần đề cập đến người thực hiện hành động.

		HAVE						
Subject	+		+	object (thing)	+	past participle	(+ by + object)	
		GET						

You should **have** your car **serviced** regularly.

(*Anh nên thường xuyên mang ô tô đi bảo trì.*)

I lost my key. I'll **have to get** another key **made**.

(*Tôi đã đánh mất chìa khóa. Tôi sẽ phải nhờ người làm chìa khóa khác.*)

- Cấu trúc *have/get + object + past participle* còn được dùng để nói về điều gì đó (thường không tốt đẹp) xảy ra cho người nào đó.

We **had** all our money **stolen** while we were on holiday.

(*Chúng tôi bị mất cắp hết tiền khi đi nghỉ mát*)

[=All our money was stolen]

George **had** his nose **broken** in a fight.

(*George đã bị gãy mũi trong một vụ đánh nhau.*)

1. Underline the correct word or phrase in each sentence.

1. I'm having my hair *cutting/cut/to have cut* tomorrow.
2. The children were *took/taken/taking* to the seaside for the day.
3. I *was sending/sent/send* here by the manager.
4. Kate is having her car *services/servicing/serviced* tomorrow.
5. Sue had her windows *breaking/broken/broke* by vandals.
6. David has been *offer/offering/offered* a new job in Brazil.
7. Where exactly *were you born/did you born/did you bear*?
8. I've just had my bike *repaired/repair/repairing*.
9. I *was given/gave/did give* this book by Emily.
10. This cake *makes/made/was made* for her birthday.
11. Their new house *hasn't been finished/wasn't finished* yet.
12. The robbers *were arrested/have been arrested* as soon as they left the bank.
13. Sue told us her baby *is born/had been born* two weeks earlier than expected.
14. If there is too much snow, the match *has been cancelled/will be cancelled*.
15. By the time we got there, the rain *had stopped/had been stopped*.
16. When *were you told/have you been told* about the new rules?
17. Most of the passengers *were swimming/were swum* easily to the shore.
18. The winning horse *was ridden/was riding* by Pat Murphy.
19. I looked again for the old man, but he *was vanished/had vanished*.
20. I don't think that you *will be asked/are being asked* to show your passport.

2. Put each verb in brackets into a suitable passive form.

1. I'm sorry, madam, but this carpet (already sell) *.has already been sold..*
2. The old house on the corner (knock down).....last year.
3. When exactly (John give).....his prize?
4. Most people agree that America (not discover).....by Christopher Columbus.
5. All complaints about products (deal with).....by our customer services department.
6. Police confirmed that the murder weapon (since discover).....in a nearby lake.
7. It (announce).....yesterday that the government has decided not to raise income tax.
8. Good news! I (ask).....to take over as the new manager.
9. I don't believe that this play (write) by Shakespeare.

3. Turn the following sentences into the Passive.

1. The ancient Greeks built the Acropolis.

The Acropolis was built by the ancient Greeks,.....

2. Martin is writing the company report this year.

.....

3. Somebody will clean the room tomorrow.

.....

4. They put fresh flowers in the hotel rooms every day.

.....

5. Bad weather may delay your flight.

.....

6. They gave Sandy a present.

.....

7. They think the President is dying.

.....

8. They made her cry.

.....

9. The mechanic has repaired the car.

.....

10. The bomb destroyed the building.

.....

11. Scientists might discover a cure for cancer.

.....

12. Someone should help the old woman across the street.

.....

13. They might have arrested the escaped prisoner.

.....

14. They should have provided more food at the reception.

.....

15. They ought to warn the public about him.

.....

16. They should build more bus lanes.

.....

17. They could have written the answers more clearly.

.....

18. The authorities have closed the casino.
.....

19. The clubs have postponed the match.
.....

20. People all over the world speak English.
.....

21. The authorities have opened the new swimming pool.
.....

22. Someone left this purse in the classroom yesterday.
.....

23. The city council has banned traffic from the city centre.
.....

24. People have elected a new government.
.....

25. Someone broke into the flat last week.
.....

4. Turn the following into the Passive in two ways.

1. They gave him a watch when he retired.

He... *was given a watch when he retired.*.....

A watch... *was given to him when he retired.*.....

2. They have offered him the job.

He.....

The job.....

3. She will send you a fax.

You.....

A fax.....

4. They are going to show me a new technique.

I.....

A new technique.....

5. Someone gave her a book.

She.....

A book.....

6. They give the students extra lessons.

The students.....

Extra lessons.....

7. They have shown her the plans for the house.

She

The plans for the house.....

8. They should have sent you a receipt.

You.....

A receipt.....

5. Turn the following into the Passive as in the example:

1. People expect him to win.

He is expected to win. / It is expected that he will win......

2. Journalists have reported that the President is ill.

The President.....

It.....

3. Everyone knows that the statement was untrue.

The statement.....

It.....

4. Many people believe that the climate is changing.

The climate.....

It.....

5. Everyone knows that he has been in prison.

He.....

It.....

6. Many people say that the new prices are too high.

The new prices.....

It.....

7. They claim that this diamond is the largest in the world.

This diamond

It.....

6. Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the previous one. There is no need to use a phrase with by in your passive sentences.

1. People don't respect politicians.

Politicians.....

2. The grass is being cut.

Someone.....

3. They're going to repair the phone.

The phone.....

4. They had lost the document.

The document.....

5. Has anyone corrected the mistakes?

Have.....

6. The door should have been locked behind us.

We.....

7. They will broadcast the programme on Sunday.

The programme.....

8. Someone had torn the page.

The page

9. We have to do the shopping.

The shopping.....

10. We're looking into the matter.

The matter.....

11. People just laugh at my suggestions.

My suggestions.....

12. Something must have delayed your visitors.

Your visitors.....

7. Combine each pair of sentences using a passive verb + a to-infinitive or active participle.

1. The team members have to work together. That's what the boss told them.

The team members were told to work together.....

2. The old man was wandering around the streets. The police found him.

.....

3. The workers have accepted lower wages. The company has persuaded them.

.....

4. Two young men were fighting. We saw them.

.....

5. The victims may take legal action. That's what their lawyers have advised them.

.....

6. The children had to pick up all the litter. The teacher made them do it.

.....

7. The woman was smuggling cigarettes into the country. Customs officers caught her.

.....

8. The refugees can't get a job. The government won't let them.

.....

9. \$50,000 on decorating the ballroom - that's what they spent.
.....

10. You shouldn't have driven so fast. I warned you not to.
.....

8. Combine each pair of sentences. Begin with *it* and a passive verb.

We know something about the Prime Minister. He has bought a holiday home.

It is known that the Prime Minister has bought a holiday home.....

1. There's a rumour about the company. It is in difficulties.
.....

2. People believed in the Emperor. To them he was a god.
.....

3. Someone reported on the fighting. It had just begun.
.....

4. The figures will show us something about poverty. It is increasing.
.....

5. The official estimate is 200 people. They were killed by the pollution.
.....

6. An agreement was reached about wages. They would be raised by five percent.
.....

7. They have made a decision about the project. It will have to be cancelled.
.....

8. There was a suggestion about the tickets. They should cost five pounds.
.....

9. Write a sentence about each situation using a structure with *have* or *get* + a passive verb.

1. Paul is at the dry-cleaner's. They've cleaned his jacket.

Paul has had his jacket cleaned.....

2. The decorators ate. at Angela's. They're working on her flat.
.....

3. Some vandals damaged Lisa's car last week.
.....

4. Your friends got some builders to build a house for them.
.....

5. You really must finish your homework soon.
.....

6. The bank has withdrawn Mark's credit card.
.....

7. You're wondering: where did Tom go for that haircut?
.....

8. A painter painted our house last month.
.....

9. The hairdresser is cutting my hair this afternoon.
.....

10. Someone has stolen my motorbike.
.....

11. The dentist has taken out all of Ricky's teeth.
.....

12. I haven't been to the car-wash for a long time.
.....

13. The men are coming to put in the new central heating on Saturday.
.....

14. Someone broke Harry's nose in a fight.
.....

15. Isn't it time someone fixed your television?
.....

10. Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word give. Do not change the word give. You must use between two and five words, including the word given.

1. Last Thursday we appointed a new marketing manager.

was

A new *marketing manager* *was appointed*last Thursday.

2. Smith Ltd are supplying our company with furniture.

supplied

Our companyby Smith Ltd.

3. William the Conqueror built the castle in the 11th century.

by

The castle.....William the Conqueror in the 11th century.

4. No decision has yet been made.

decided

Nothingyet..

5. People believe that someone murdered Jenkins.

was

Itmurdered.

6. Your hair needs cutting.

get

You oughtcut.

7. The police were following the suspects.

were

The suspects.....police.

8. No-one has seen Peter since the day of the party.

been

Peter.....the day of the party.

9. We put up a notice about the trip on the notice board yesterday.

was

A notice.....up on the notice board yesterday.

10. People think that an apple a day is good for you.

to

An apple a day.....for you.

11. Rewrite each sentence so that it contains a passive form, and does not contain the words in italics.

1. *Apparently*, Freddie has a wife in Scotland.

Freddie is said to have a wife in Scotland......

2. *Nobody* knows *anything* about Brenda's family.

.....

3. *People* think that *someone* started the fire deliberately.

.....

4. You should *ask* a doctor to see to that cut.

.....

5. *People* say that Chris was in the army.

.....

6. My trousers *need* to be pressed before I leave.

.....

7. *No-one* has signed this letter.

.....

8. Mary's hair still *needs* cutting.

.....

12. Put in the correct active or passive form of the verbs.

The last train*stopped*.....(stop) at Wellbury Station twenty years ago, and since then the country branch line.....*has been left*..... (leave) to fall into disuse. But five years ago the old station buildings (1) (sell) to a young couple, Alan and Sarah Pickford. Immediately the

Pickfords (2)(apply) to the local Council and (3) (promise) a sum of money to help them with their project . Months (4) (spend) planning all the details. Then their plans (5)..... (have to/approve). After that the way was clear. The Pickfords(6) the house completely (renovate) by local builders. They themselves also (7)..... (create) a beautiful garden around it. They certainly had lots (8)..... (do). The task (9).....(seem) hopeless at first because everything was in such a poor condition, but today the old station (10)..... greatly..... (admire), and it (11)..... (say/be) the best of its kind in the country. Many authentic railway details (12).....(preserve), and an old railway carriage (13)..... (now/use) as a greenhouse. The station house (14)..... (can/visit) by the public on weekend afternoons and holidays, but visitors (ask/not/come) at other times as the Pickfords are not keen on (16)(disturb) during the week.

13. Complete the news article by putting in the correct active or passive form of the verb in brackets. Sometimes there is more than one possible answer.

NOISIER AND NOISIER

For the last ten years, engineers .. *have been measuring*(measure) noise levels in Britain's cities. The study... *has just been completed*.. (just/complete), and it (1).....(show) that there is more noise than ever before. More and more people (2).....(drive) mad by the sounds of the city. Complaints about noise (3).....(increase) constantly over the last twenty years. Last year almost 300,000 complaints (4).....(make). The least favourite sources of noise (5).....(include) loud music, barking dogs, mobile phones, car alarms and home improvements. We are all familiar with the problems. How is it that a car alarm (6)..... (can/hear) by everyone except the owner of the car? Why (7)..... electric drills.....(have to/use) early on Sunday morning? Why (8).....arguments.....(carry) on with the windows wide open? Noise (9)..... (still/increase), said a member of the research group. These days traffic (10)..... (start) earlier in the morning, and shops and clubs (11)..... (stay) open later. The problem (12)..... (must/tackle). People (13).....(can/drive) to commit suicide because of noise. So why (14).....nothing.....(do) about the problem? Up to now the government (15).....(pay) little attention to it, but now action (16).....(need). We all hope that the results of our study (17).....(not/ignore).

4. Every possible means....., but none proves successful

- A. has tried
- B. has been tried
- C. is being tried
- D. tried.

5. Bill.....a job in a factory, but he refused to take it.

- A. was offered
- B. offered
- C. was offering
- D. had offered

6. In 1980, it was the tallest building that

- A. were ever built
- B. has ever built
- C. has ever been built
- D. had ever been built

7. Coal can.....to produce electricity for humans.

- A. have used
- B. be used
- C. use
- D. used

8. You can see the house.....for years.

- A. isn't painted
- B. hasn't painted
- C. hasn't been painted
- D. hadn't painted

9. Some new oilfields since 1976.

- A. were opened up
- B. has opened up
- C. have been opened up
- D. had been opened up

10. I promise that the matter will.....

- A. be taken care
- B. be taken care of
- C. take care
- D. take care of

11. I was astonished to hear that your car30,000\$.

- A. has cost
- B. cost
- C. costs
- D. was cost.

thichtienganh.com

12. The pen.....me. It's hers.

- A. isn't belonged to
- B. was belong to
- C. doesn't belong to .
- D. didn't belong to

13. The things talked about in this reportover a year ago.

- A. had taken place
- B. took place
- C. have taken place
- D. were taken place.

14. The pencil.....well.

- A. writes
- B. is written
- C. was written
- D. writing

15. The work.....by the time you get here.

- A. will have been done
- B. is done
- C. had been done
- D. would have done

16. This medicine.....before dinner.
- A. should have taken B. ought to take
C. should take D. should be taken
17. When water is heated, it..... into vapour.
- A. would be changed B. will change
C. is changed D. would change
18. I'll write down your name and address in case you.....as a helper.
- A. are needed B. will be needed
C. need D. be needed
19. If one.....by pride, he will reject useful advice.
- A. overcomes B. is overcome
C. be overcome D. overcame
20. Much of the city..... by fire in the 17th century.
- A. is destroyed B. was destroyed
C. had been destroyed D. would be destroyed
21. "Why did Lan look so unhappy?" - "She had.....by her classmates."
- A. laughed B. laughed at
C. been laughed D. been laughed at.
22. The question asked by him is difficult.....
- A. to answer B. to be answered
C. to be answering D. for answer.
23. Mathematics is hard.....
- A. to learn B. to be learnt
C. for learning D. being learnt.
24. He ordered the work.....at once
- A. started B. to be started
C. to started D. starting.
25. His idea, though good, needs.....
- A. being tried out B. to be tried out
C. to try out D. tried.

Chương 17
SỰ DIỄN TẢ VỀ SỐ LƯỢNG
(EXPRESSION OF QUANTITY)

I. Some, Any

Cả *some* và *any* đều được dùng để chỉ một số lượng không xác định khi không thể hay không cần phải nêu rõ số lượng chính xác.

1. Some (một vài; một ít)

Some thường được dùng trong câu khẳng định, trước danh từ đếm được số nhiều (countable plural nouns) hoặc danh từ không đếm được (uncountable nouns).

My mother bought **some eggs**. (*Mẹ tôi đã mua vài quả trứng*)

He is busy. He's got **some work** to do.

(*Anh ta bận. Anh ta có một số việc phải làm.*)

There's **some milk** in the fridge.

(*Có một ít sữa trong tủ lạnh*)

I need **some stamps**. ~ There are some in the drawer.

(*Tôi cần vài con tem. ~ Có vài con tem trong ngăn kéo*)

Some được dùng trong câu hỏi khi chúng ta mong chờ câu trả lời **Yes (Có)**.

Have you brought **some paper** and a pen?

(*Bạn có mang theo giấy, viết chú?*) → người nói hy vọng người nghe có mang theo giấy và viết.

Did you buy **some oranges**?

(*Bạn có mua cam chú?*) → Người nói hi vọng người nghe đã mua.

Some còn được dùng trong câu yêu cầu, lời mời hoặc lời đề nghị.

Would you like **some more coffee**?

(*Anh dùng thêm một ít cà phê nữa nhé?*)

Can I have **some sugar**, please?

(*Vui lòng cho tôi xin một ít đường.*)

Let's go out for **some drink**.

(*Chúng ta hãy đi uống nước đi.*)

2. Any (...nào)

Any thường được dùng trong câu phủ định hoặc nghi vấn, trước danh từ đếm được số nhiều và danh từ không đếm được.

ThichTiengAnh.Com - Website chia sẻ đề thi, tài liệu Tiếng Anh hay, mới nhất
Have you got **any butter**? ~ Sorry, I haven't got **any butter**.

(Bạn có tí bơ nào không? ~ Rất tiếc là tôi không có bơ.)

There aren't **any chairs** in the room.

(Không có cái ghế nào trong phòng.)

[= There are no chairs in the room.]

Any có nghĩa “**bất cứ**” được dùng trong mệnh đề khẳng định, trước danh từ số ít (đếm được hoặc không đếm được) hoặc sau các từ có nghĩa phủ định (*never, hardly, scarcely, without, ...*).

You can catch **any bus**. They all go to the center.

(Bạn có thể đón bất cứ chiếc xe buýt nào. Tất cả chúng đều đến khu trung tâm.)

I'm free all day. Come and see me **any time** you like.

(Tôi rảnh rỗi cả ngày. Hãy đến thăm tôi bất cứ lúc nào anh thích)

He's lazy. He **never** does **any work**.

(Anh ta thật lười nhác. Anh ta chẳng bao giờ làm bất cứ việc gì.)

They crossed the frontier **without any difficulty**.

(Họ vượt qua biên giới không chút khó khăn.)

Any có thể được dùng trong mệnh đề If (If-clauses).

If there are **any** letters for me, can you send them on to this address?

(Nếu có lá thư nào gửi cho tôi, bạn có thể gửi chúng đến địa chỉ này được không?)

If you need **any** more money, please let me know.

(Nếu anh cần thêm tiền, xin hãy cho tôi biết.)

Lưu ý:

- Khi danh từ đã được xác định, chúng ta có thể dùng *some* và *any* không có danh từ theo sau.

Tim wanted **some** milk, but he couldn't find **any**.

(Tim muốn uống sữa, nhưng anh ấy không tìm được chút sữa nào.)

If you have no stamps, I will give you **some**.

(Nếu bạn không có tem, tôi sẽ cho bạn vài con)

- Các đại từ phiếm chỉ *something, anything, someone, anyone, somebody, anybody, somewhere, anywhere...* được dùng tương tự như cách dùng *some* và *any*.

There's **somebody** at the front door. *(Có ai đó ở cửa trước.)*

Is there **anybody** here? *(Có ai ở đây không?)*

Would you like **something** to drink? *(Anh uống chút gì nhé?)*

I'm not thirsty. I don't want **anything** to drink.

(Tôi không khát. Tôi không muốn uống gì cả.)

ThichTiengAnh.Com - Website chia sẻ đề thi, tài liệu Tiếng Anh hay, mới nhất
 Let's go **somewhere** for dinner. - Is there **anywhere** we can go?
 (Chúng ta đi đâu đó ăn tối đi. ~ chúng ta đi đâu đây?)

II. Much, many, a lot of, lots of, a great deal of, a large number of,

Much, many, a lot of, ... là các từ chỉ lượng bất định, có nghĩa một số lượng lớn người, vật hoặc sự việc.

Với danh từ đếm được số nhiều (With countable plural nouns)	Với danh từ không đếm được (With uncountable nouns)
many a large number of a great number of plenty of a lot of lots of	much large amount of a great deal of plenty of a lot of lots of

I haven't got **much** time for reading.

(Tôi không có nhiều thời gian để đọc sách.)

There are so **many** people here that I feel tired.

(ở đây có nhiều người đến nỗi tôi cảm thấy mệt)

A large amount of information is stored in the computer.

(Một lượng lớn thông tin được lưu trữ trong máy tính)

She has got **a great deal of** homework today.

(Hôm nay cô ấy có nhiều bài tập về nhà.)

Did you spend **much** money for the cars?

~ Yes, I spent **a lot** money for them. But I want to have **a lot of** cars.

(Bạn có tốn nhiều tiền để mua những chiếc ô tô này không? ~ Có, tôi đã tốn nhiều tiền để mua chúng. Nhưng tôi thích có nhiều ô tô.)

Don't hurry - we have **plenty of** time.

(Đừng vội – chúng ta có nhiều thời gian mà.)

There are **plenty of** eggs in the fridge.

(Có nhiều trứng trong tủ lạnh)

He is making **lots of** money.

(Anh ta đang kiếm được nhiều tiền.)

George used to have **lots of** friends in New York.

(Trước đây George có nhiều bạn ở New York.)

A large number of students have part-time jobs nowadays.

(Ngày nay, nhiều sinh viên làm việc bán thời gian.)

- Theo nguyên tắc chung, chúng ta dùng *many*, *much* trong câu phủ định và câu hỏi và dùng *a lot of*, *lots of* trong câu khẳng định.

We didn't spend **much** money for Christmas presents. But we spent **a lot of** money for the party.

(Chúng tôi đã không tốn nhiều tiền mua quà Giáng Sinh. Nhưng chúng tôi đã tiêu nhiều tiền cho bữa tiệc.)

Do you know **many** people here?

(Anh có quen nhiều người ở đây không?)

He's got **lots of/ a lot of** men friends, but he doesn't know **many** women.

(Anh ta có nhiều bạn trai, nhưng anh ta không quen nhiều bạn gái.)

Tuy nhiên trong lối văn trang trọng, đôi khi chúng ta có thể dùng *many* và *much* trong câu khẳng định. Và trong lối nói thân mật, *a lot of* cũng có thể được dùng trong câu phủ định và câu hỏi.

Many students have financial problem.

(Nhiều sinh viên gặp khó khăn về tài chính.)

There was **much** bad driving on the road.

(Có nhiều xe chạy ẩu trên đường.)

I don't **have many/ a lot of** friends.

(Tôi không có nhiều bạn)

Do you eat **much/ a lot of** fruit?

(Bạn có ăn nhiều trái cây không?)

- Chúng ta dùng *much* và *many* (không được dùng *a lot of*, *lots of*, *plenty of*,...) sau các từ *so*, *as*, *va too*.

There was **so much** traffic that it took me an hour to get home.

(Có quá nhiều xe cộ đến nỗi tôi phải mất một giờ đồng hồ mới về đến nhà.)

[NOT ...~~so a lot of~~ traffic...]

You made **too many** mistakes in your writing.

(Bạn đã phạm quá nhiều lỗi trong bài viết.)

Jason has a lot of friends, but I think I have **as many** friends as him.

(Jason có nhiều bạn, nhưng tôi cho rằng tôi cũng có nhiều bạn không kém anh ta)

+ *Very much* thường được dùng trong câu khẳng định như một trạng từ chứ không phải là từ hạn định.

I **very much** enjoy travelling. (Tôi rất thích đi du lịch)

- *Many of*, *much of* + *determiner/ pronoun*

I won't pass the exam; I've missed **too many of my** lesson.

(Tôi không thể thi đậu; tôi đã bỏ quá nhiều bài vở.)

(Trong một tuần bạn không thể tham quan được nhiều nơi trong một nước.)

III. Few, a few, little, a little

Few và **a few** được dùng trước các danh từ đếm được số nhiều (countable plural nouns). **Little** and **a little** được dùng trước các danh từ không đếm được (uncountable nouns).

- **Few, little** (ít, không nhiều) thường có nghĩa phủ định và chỉ một số lượng rất ít (ít hơn những gì bạn muốn hoặc mong đợi).

He isn't popular. He has **few** friends.

(Anh ta không được mọi người yêu mến. Anh ta có ít bạn bè)

[few friends = not many friends]

Few customers have come into the shop. It has been quiet.

(ít khách hàng vào cửa hiệu. Nó rất vắng lặng)

[few customers = not many customers]

Hurry up! There is **little** time.

(Nhanh lên nào! Còn ít thời gian lắm.)

[little time = not much time, not enough time]

He spoke **little** English, so it was difficult to communicate with him.

(Anh ta nói được ít tiếng Anh, nên rất khó giao tiếp với anh ta.)

[little English = not much English]

- **A few, a little** (một vài, một ít) thường có nghĩa khẳng định và chỉ một số lượng nhỏ (gần nghĩa với *some*).

I enjoy my life here. I have **a few** friends and we meet quite often.

(Tôi thích sống ở đây. Tôi có vài người bạn và chúng tôi rất thường gặp nhau.)

[a few friends = some friends, a small number of friends]

A few customers have come into the shop. It has been fairly busy.

(Một số khách hàng vào cửa hiệu. Nó khá nhộn nhịp.)

[a few customers = some customers, a small number of customers]

Let's go and have a drink. We've got **a little** time before the train leaves.

(Chúng ta đi uống nước nhé. Chúng ta còn một ít thời gian trước khi tàu chạy.)

→ [a little time = some time, a small amount of time]

He spoke **a little** English, so we were able to communicate with him.

(Anh ta nói được một ít tiếng Anh, nên chúng tôi có thể giao tiếp với anh.)

→ [a little English = some English, a small amount of English]

Would you like **a little** salt on your vegetables?

[a little salt = some salt, a small amount of salt]

Lưu ý:

- *Only a little* và *only a few* có nghĩa phủ định .

We must be quick. We've got **only a little time**.

(Chúng ta phải nhanh lên. Chúng ta chỉ còn một ít thời gian.)

→ [only a little = not much]

Only a few customers have come in.

(Chỉ có một vài khách hàng bước vào)

→ [only a few = not many]

- *(a) little of / (a) few of* + determiner/ pronoun.

Only a few of the children in this class like math.

(Chỉ vài đứa trẻ trong lớp này thích toán.)

Could I try **a little of your** wine?

(Tôi uống thử một chút rượu của anh có được không?)

IV. All, most, some, no, all of, most of, some of, none of.

1. **All** (tất cả), **most** (phần lớn, đa số) **some** (một vài), **no** (không) được dùng như từ hạn định (determiner) trước danh từ đếm được số nhiều hoặc danh từ không đếm được.

All/ most/ some/ no (+ adjective) + plural noun/uncountable noun

All children are fond of candy. (Tất cả trẻ con đều thích kẹo)

Most cheese is made from cow's milk.

(Phần lớn phó mát được làm từ sữa bò.)

Some food makes me ill. (Một số thức ăn làm tôi buồn nôn)

There are **no rooms** available. (Không có phòng trống)

Most Swiss people understand French.

(Đa số người Thụy Sĩ hiểu tiếng Pháp)

All classical music sends me to sleep.

(Tất cả các loại nhạc cổ điển đều làm cho tôi buồn ngủ)

2. **All of, most of, some of, none of** được dùng trước các từ hạn định (determiners: *a, an, the, my, his, this, ...*) và các đại từ (pronouns).

Have **all (of) the plants** died? -No, not **all of them**.

(tất cả cây cối đều chết hết sao? ~ Không, không phải tất cả.)

Most of her friends live abroad.

(Phần lớn bạn bè của cô ta sống ở nước ngoài.)

Some of those people are very friendly.

(Một vài người trong số đó rất thân thiện.)

These books are all Jane's. **None of them** belong to me.

(Tất cả sách này là của Jane. Không có cuốn nào của tôi cả.)

Lưu ý:

- Chúng ta có thể bỏ *of* sau **all** hoặc **half** khi *of* đứng trước từ hạn định (không được bỏ *of* khi *of* đứng trước đại từ.

All (of) my friends live in London, but all of them have been to the meeting.

(Tất cả bạn bè tôi đều sống ở London, nhưng tất cả đều đã đến dự cuộc họp mặt.)

Half (of) this money is mine, and half of it is yours.

(Phân nửa số tiền này là của tôi, còn phân nửa của anh.)

- Chúng ta thường không dùng *of* khi không có từ hạn định (mạo từ hoặc từ sở hữu đứng trước danh từ. Tuy nhiên trong một vài trường hợp *most of* cũng có thể được dùng mà không có từ hạn định theo sau, ví dụ như trước các tên riêng và địa danh.

The Romans conquered **most of England**.

(Người La Mã đã xâm chiếm phần lớn nước Anh)

- Các cụm danh từ đứng sau *all of*, *most of*, *some of*,... thường xác định (phải có *the*, *these*, *those* ...)

Most of the boys in my class want to choose well-paid jobs.

(Phần lớn nam sinh trong lớp tôi muốn chọn công việc được trả lương cao.)

- Chúng ta có thể bỏ danh từ sau *all*, *most*, *some*, *none* nếu nghĩa đã rõ ràng.

The band sang a few songs. **Most** were old ones, but **some** were new.

(Ban nhạc hát một vài bài. Phần lớn là các bài cũ, nhưng cũng có một số bài mới.)

I wanted some cake, but there was none left.

(Tôi muốn ăn một ít bánh, nhưng chẳng còn tí bánh nào.)

V. Every, each

Every và **each** thường được dùng trước danh từ đếm được ở số ít (singular countable nouns).

The police questioned **every/ each** person in the building.

(Cảnh sát thẩm vấn từng người trong tòa nhà.)

[NOT ... ~~every/ each~~ people]

Every/ Each room has a number. *(Mỗi phòng đều có số)*

[NOT ~~Every/ Each~~ rooms]

Trong nhiều trường hợp, *every* và *each* có thể được dùng với nghĩa tương tự nhau.

You look more beautiful **each/ every** time I see you.

(*Mỗi lần tôi gặp bạn, bạn trông xinh hơn.*)

Tuy nhiên *every* và *each* vẫn có sự khác nhau về nghĩa.

- **Every** (*mỗi; mọi*)

Chúng ta dùng *every* khi chúng ta nghĩ về người hoặc vật như một tổng thể hoặc một nhóm. (cùng nghĩa với *all*).

Every guest watched as the President came in.

(*Khi Tổng thống bước vào, mọi quan khách đều nhìn theo.*)

[= all guests]

I go for a walk **every** day. (*Tôi đi dạo mỗi ngày.*) [= all days]

Every có thể được dùng để nói về ba hoặc nhiều hơn ba người hoặc vật, thường là một số lượng lớn.

There were cars parked along **every** street in town.

(*Ô tô đậu dọc theo mọi con đường trong thị xã*)

[= all the streets]

- **Each** (*mỗi*)

Chúng ta dùng *each* khi chúng ta nghĩ về người hoặc vật một cách riêng rẽ, từng người hoặc từng vật trong một nhóm.

Each person in turn shook hand with him.

(*Lần lượt từng người bắt tay với ông ấy.*)

Each day seemed to pass very slowly.

(*Đường như từng ngày trôi qua chậm chạp*)

Each có thể được dùng để nói về hai hoặc nhiều hơn hai, thường là một nhóm nhỏ người hoặc vật.

There are four books on the table. **Each** book was a different color.

(*Trên bàn có 4 cuốn sách. Mỗi cuốn có màu khác nhau.*)

There were cars parked along **each** side of the street.

(*Ô tô đậu dọc theo hai bên đường.*) [= both sides]

Each có thể được dùng một mình hoặc dùng với *of* (*Each of + determiner/ pronoun*).

There are six flats. **Each** has its own entrance.

(*Có 6 căn hộ. Mỗi căn đều có lối đi riêng.*)

Each of the houses has a backyard.

(*Mỗi ngôi nhà đều có sân sau.*)

Each of us sees the world differently.

(*Mỗi người trong chúng ta có cái nhìn khác nhau về cuộc đời.*)

EXERCISES

1. Complete the sentences with *some* or *any*.

1. We didn't buy.....flowers.
2. This evening I'm going out with.....friends of mine.
3. I didn't have.....money, so I had to borrow.....
4. Can I have.....milk on my coffee, please?
5. I was too tired to do.....work.
6. Have you seen..... good films recently?
7. Can you give me..... information about places of interest in the town?
8. With the special tourist train ticket, you can travel on.....train you like.
9. If there are.....words you don't understand, use a dictionary.
10. She went out without.....money.

2. Complete the conversations. Put in *some, any, anyone, someone, something, anything, somewhere, anywhere*.

1. A: We haven't got.....bread.
B: You'd better go to the shop, then. We need.....tomatoes, too.
2. A: Would you like.....cheese and biscuits?
B: Oh, no thank you. That was delicious, but I couldn't eat.....else.
3. A: There's.....at the door.
B: Are you expecting.....visitors?
4. A: Has.....offered to help you with the tea?
B: No, but I'd be very grateful for.....help you can give.
5. A: I was looking for....., and now I can't remember what it was.
B: You said you were looking for.....matches.
6. A: Does.....mind if I open the window?
B: No, please do. We all need..... fresh air.
7. A: Where shall we go on holiday?
B: Let's go.....warm and sunny.
8. A: What happened to Sally last night?
B: I don't know exactly. She was upset about..... and refused to talk to
9. A: Would you like..... to eat?
B: No, I don't wantto eat. But I'm thirsty, I want.....to drink.
A: What would you like?
B: I don't mind
10. A: Do you live.....near Jim?
B: No, he lives in another part of town.

3. Complete the conversation. Put in *a lot of, many or much*. More than one answer may be correct.

Matthew: There are (1)..... athletes taking part in the International Games in London. There's been (2).....coverage in the papers.

Daniel : Our runners haven't won (3) medals, have they?

Matthew: No, not as (4)as last time. But there is plenty of time. There are still (5).....events to come. I'd like to go and see some of the track events, but I haven't got (6)time at the moment.

Daniel : No, not with exams coming up. We're having so (7) lessons to study.

Matthew: I'm hoping to go at the weekend if I can get a ticket. Apparently there aren't (8).....seats left.

Daniel : I've heard the cheapest tickets are \$25, I think that's too (9).....

4. Put in *a few, few, a little or little*.

1. I don't think I can lift this box on my own. I need.....help.

2.tourists visited Northern Ireland in the 1980s because of the terrorism there.

3. The postman doesn't often come here. We receive.....letters.

4. The snow was quite deep. There seemed.....hope of completing our journey.

5. Trevor doesn't find it easy to fix the shelves. He's having.....trouble.

6. Sarah is exhausted. She's having.....days' holiday next week.

7. David quite likes golf, but unfortunately he has.....ability.

8. I can speak.....words of Swedish, but I'm not very fluent.

9. Listen carefully. I'm going to give you.....advice.

10. 'Have you ever been to Paris?' Tes, I've been there.....times.'

5. Complete this paragraph from the travel book. Put in *many, few, much or little*.

The main town of the island is very small and does not have (1).....important buildings. The islanders do not have (2)money, and they have (3)contact with the outside world. There is not (4)chance of the place attracting large numbers of tourists. The roads are not very good. There are lots of bicycles but not (5) cars. And there are hardly any of the modern facilities which visitors expect. There are (6)shops, and there is (7) entertainment.

6. Choose the correct words.

1. We didn't spend many/ much money.
2. You must be quick. We have little/ a little time.
3. They've got so much/ lots of money that they don't know what to do with it.
4. Did you take much/ many photographs when you were on holiday?
5. Would you like less/ fewer coffee than this?
6. The tickets cost too much/ too many, so we can't afford them.
7. "Would you like some/any sugar in your tea?" Yes, please. Just a little/ a few.'
8. If you have some/ any problems, you can discuss them with your group leaders.
9. I take photos, but not as many/ a lot of as I used to. At one time I took many/ a lot.
10. How much/ How many butter do we put in?
11. Quick, let's go! There's somebody/ anybody coming and I don't want somebody/ anybody to see us.
12. He can speak little/ a little English, so it's not difficult to communicate with him.
13. My father drinks a lot of/ much tea.
14. This town is not a very interesting place to visit, so a few/ few tourists, come here.
15. She spent a large number of/ a great deal of time on the project.
16. A large number of/ A great deal of paintings have been sold.
17. We get much/ a lot of rain here, but we don't get many/ much storms.
18. Do you mind if I asked you a few/ a little questions?
19. The shop is very quiet. There are a few/ only a few customers have come in.
20. How many/ How much cups of coffee have you taken?

7. Choose from the list and complete the sentences. Use of where necessary.

that food	my friends	plants	a chicken	birds
European countries	accidents	my life	these clothes	cars

1. All.....need water.
2. Nonewill be at the party.
3. I have lived in this town most.....
4. Sarah travels a lot. She has been to most
5. Some....., from the party was all right, but I threw some of it away.
6. He's eaten two pizzas and most.....
7. Many.....are caused by bad driving.

8. Not all..... can fly. For example, the penguin can't fly.

9. None..... are in fashion now.

10. Some.....can go faster than others.

8. Complete the conversations, use the word in brackets with *all, all the, most, most of the, no or none of the*.

1. A: I wonder where they make this milk.

B: It isn't made in a factory, Andrew.....(milk) comes from animals.

2. A: What do you usually do on a Sunday?

B: Not much. We spend.....(time) reading the papers.

3. A: In general, people aren't interested in politics, are they?

B: I think.....(people) are bored by the subject.

4. A: These new flats are supposed to be for students.

B: That's ridiculous.....(student) in the world could possibly afford such a high rent.

5. A: Who's paying for the new ice-rink to be built?

B: Well,.....(money) will come from the government, but the city has to pay a quarter of the cost.

6. A: We should ban cars.....(cars) pollute the air, don't they?

B: Well, except electric ones, I suppose.

7. A: What kind of fruit should you eat to stay healthy?

B: I don't think it matters.....(fruit) is good for you, isn't it?

8. A: I knew there had been a power cut because it was so dark everywhere.

B: Yes,.....(lights) in our street went out.

9. Put in *each* or *every*. Sometimes both are possible.

1. She had a child holding on to.....hand.

2. The World Cup is held.....four years.

3. None of the rooms was the same. room was different.

4.parent worries about their children.

5. In a game of tennis there are two or four playersplayer has a racket.

6. Melanie is a religious person. She goes to church.....Sunday.

7. We had a great holiday. I enjoyedminute of it.

8. The book is divided into five parts and.....of these has three sections.

9. Car seat belts save lives.....driver should wear one.

10. In a football match,.....team has 11 players.

10. Fill in each blank with a proper expression of quantity. Use *of* where necessary,

1. I feel lonely here because I have.....friends in this city.
2. These books are all Jane's.....them belong to me.
3. Not all the people I work with are very friendly.....they are unfriendly at all.
4. Are those people English? No, just.....them.
5.schools open in September.
6. Let's go and have a drink. We've got..... time before the train leaves.
7. Have you got.....money? ~ Yes, but not.....
8. Hurry or we'll be late. We have very.....time.
9. I have donethe exercises of grammar in this book, so I'm going to buy another book.
10. We all got wet in the rain because.....us had an umbrella.
11. We'll have to work quickly because I haven't got.....time.
12. I do not know about biology, but I haveknowledge about genetics.
13. The librarian says that you may borrow as..... books as you want to.
14. The boys are making too.....noise.
15. I watched.....the film but not all of it.
16. I'm very poor. I have.....money. But my brother is richer than I. He has.....money in the bank.
17. Before mixing the cake, weight..... ingredient precisely.
18. When my rich uncle died, he left his fortune to his cat. He hadn't left.....it to us.
19. How.....languages can you speak? And how.....time do you spend on learning English?
20. When my rich uncle died, he left.....his fortune to his cat and the other half to a distant cousin! We had never expected to receive it, but we were disappointed that he hadn't left it to us.

11. Choose the correct word or phrase.

Last week I made the mistake of revisiting the village where I grew up. It was a small, friendly community with two farms and a number of old cottages round the village green. I realized very quickly that although in (1) many/ few ways it appears unchanged, in reality hardly (2) nothing/ anything is the same. (3) All/ Every the pretty cottages are there, of course, and (4) both/ most the picturesque farmhouses. But (5) none of the/ none of inhabitants are country people. All of (6) they/ them are commuters, who leave early (7) every morning/ all the morning for

the nearby town. (8) Neither of/ Neither the farmhouses is attached to a farm these days; the land has been sold and is managed by (9) somebody/ anyone in an office (10) anywhere/ somewhere who has (11) little/ a little interest in the village itself. There are (12) few/ a few new houses, but they have (13) no/none of local character; you can see the same style (14) anywhere/ somewhere in the country. (15) The whole/ Whole of the village, in fact, has been tidied up so much that it has become (16) anything/ nothing more than just another suburb.

12. Choose the correct answer.

1. Bill is very lazy. He never does.....work.
A. some B. any C. no D. few
2. It was a great party.....enjoyed it.
A. Somebody B. All C. All of us D. Every of us
3. The bus service is very good. There's a bus.....ten minutes.
A. each B. every C. all D. any
4. When we were on holiday, we spent too.....
A. a lot of B. many C. much D. lots of
5. What would you like to eat? I don't mind.....- whatever you've got.
A. Something B. Anything C. Nothing D. Any food
6. We couldn't buy anything because.....of the shops were open
A. all B. half C. most D. none
7. I think that.....lemon juice on fish makes it taste better.
A. few B. a few C. little D. a little
8. The village was very small. There were.....houses.
A. a few B. only a few C. some D. only a little
9.don't visit this part of the town.
A. The most tourists B. Most of tourists
C. Most tourists D. Most the tourists
10.has left a bicycle outside.
A. Anyone B. Anything C. Someone D. Something
11. Ron Mason owns a chain of supermarket. He's made.....money.
A. a lot of B. many
C. much D. a great number of
12. Diana's previous employer gave her a good recommendation because she makes..... mistakes in her work.
A a few B. little C. very few D. some
13. It's so boring here.....ever happens in this place.
A. Anything B. Something C. Things D. Nothing

Chương 18

TỪ VỰNG HỌC (WORD STUDY)

A. CÁCH THÀNH LẬP TỪ (WORD FORMATIONS)

I. THÀNH LẬP DANH TỪ (Noun formations)

1. Một số danh từ được thành lập bằng cách thêm các hậu tố (suffixes) vào sau động từ.

a. -tion/ -ation

to prevent	→ prevention (sự ngăn ngừa)
to introduce	→ introduction (sự giới thiệu)
to invent	→ invention (sự phát minh)
to conserve	→ conservation (sự bảo tồn)
to preserve	→ preservation (sự bảo quản)
to admire	→ admiration (sự ngưỡng mộ)

b. -ment

to develop	→ development (sự phát triển)
to achieve	→ achievement (thành tựu)
to employ	→ employment (việc làm)
to disappoint	→ disappointment (sự thất vọng)
to improve	→ improvement (sự cải tiến)

c. -ence/ -ance

to exist	→ existence (sự tồn tại)
to differ	→ difference (sự khác nhau)
to attend	→ attendance (sự tham dự)
to appear	→ appearance (sự xuất hiện)

d. -er/ -or (chỉ người/vật)

to drive	→ driver (tài xế)
to teach	→ teacher (giáo viên)
to edit	→ editor (biên tập viên)
to instruct	→ instructor (huôn luyện viên)
to calculate	→ calculator (máy tính)

to dry → dryer (*máy sấy*)

to fertilizer → fertilizer (*phân bón*)

e.. -ar/ -ant/-ee (chủ người)

to beg → beggar (*người ăn xin*)

to lie → liar (*kẻ nói dối*)

to assist → assistant (*người phụ tá*)

to employ → employee (*nhân viên*)

to examine → examinee (*thí sinh*)

f. -ing

to teach → teaching (*việc/ nghề dạy học*)

to build → building (*việc xây dựng*)

to understai → understanding (*sự hiểu biết*)

g. -age

to drain → drainage (*sự tháo nước*)

to use → usage (*cách sử dụng*)

2. Một số danh từ được thành lập bằng cách thêm các hậu tố (suffixes) vào sau danh từ.

a. -ship

friend → friendship (*tình bạn*)

owner → ownership (*quyền sở hữu*)

b. -ism (nói về chủ nghĩa hoặc học thuyết)

capital → capitalism (*chủ nghĩa tư bản*)

hero → heroism (*chủ nghĩa anh hùng*)

Marx → Marxism (*chủ nghĩa Marx*)

ideal → idealism (*chủ nghĩa duy tâm*)

3. Một số danh từ được thành lập bằng cách thêm các hậu tố vào sau tính từ.

a. -ity

possible → possibility (*sự có thể, khả năng*)

popular → popularity (*tính phổ biến*)

responsible → responsibility (*trách nhiệm*)

special → speciality (*đặc tính*)

real → reality (*thực tế*)

national → nationality (*quốc tịch*)

b. -ism (chủ nghĩa hoặc chế độ)

racial → racialism (*chủ nghĩa phân biệt chủng tộc*)

common	→	communism (<i>chủ nghĩa cộng sản</i>)
social	→	socialism (<i>chủ nghĩa xã hội</i>)
surreal	→	surrealism (<i>chủ nghĩa siêu thực</i>)
feudal	→	feudalism (<i>chế độ phong kiến</i>)

c. -ness

rich	→	richness (<i>sự giàu có</i>)
happy	→	happiness (<i>niềm/sự hạnh phúc</i>)
sad	→	sadness (<i>sự buồn bã</i>)
cold	→	coldness (<i>sự lạnh lẽo</i>)
willing	→	willingness (<i>sự tự nguyện</i>)

4. Một số danh từ được thành lập bằng cách thêm các tiền tố (prefixes) vào trước một danh từ khác.

a. super-

man	→	superman (<i>siêu nhân</i>)
market	→	supermarket (<i>siêu thị</i>)
star	→	superstar (<i>siêu sao</i>)
structure	→	superstructure (<i>kiến trúc thượng tầng</i>)
store	→	superstore (<i>cửa hàng lớn</i>)

b. under-

current	→	undercurrent (<i>dòng nước ngầm</i>)
growth	→	undergrowth (<i>tầng cây thấp</i>)
clothes	→	underclothes (<i>quần áo lót</i>)
pass	→	underpass (<i>đường ngầm/chui</i>)
weight	→	underweight (<i>nhẹ cân, thiếu cân</i>)

c. sur-

face	→	surface (<i>bề mặt, bề ngoài</i>)
name	→	surname (<i>họ</i>)
plus	→	surplus (<i>số thặng dư, số thừa</i>)
tax	→	surtax (<i>thuế lợi tức lũy tiến</i>)

d. sub-

way	→	subway (<i>đường ngầm</i>)
continent	→	subcontinent (<i>tiểu lục địa</i>)
committee	→	subcommittee (<i>phân ban</i>)
contract	→	subcontract (<i>hợp đồng phụ</i>)
marine	→	submarine (<i>tàu ngầm</i>)

II. THÀNH LẬP TÍNH TỪ (Adjective Formations)

1. Một số tính từ được thành lập bằng cách thêm các hậu tố (suffixes) vào sau danh từ.

a. -ful

harm	→	harmful (có hại)
use	→	useful (có ích)
success	→	successful (có kết quả, thành công)
hope	→	hopeful (đầy hy vọng)
beauty	→	beautiful (đẹp)
power	→	powerful (có/đầy quyền lực)

b. -less (mang nghĩa phủ định)

child	→	childless (không có con)
odor	→	odorless (không mùi)
home	→	homeless (không nhà, vô gia cư)
life	→	lifeless (không có sự sống)
hope	→	hopeless (không có hy vọng)
power	→	powerless (không có quyền lực)

c. -ly (có vẻ, có tính chất, hàng giờ/ ngày/tháng...)

man	→	manly (hợp với đàn ông)
friend	→	friendly (thân thiện)
world	→	worldly (có vẻ trần tục)
hour	→	hourly (hàng giờ)
year	→	yearly (hàng năm)
day	→	daily (hàng ngày)

d. -like (giống như, tương tự như)

child	→	childlike (giống như trẻ con)
god	→	godlike (như thần/thánh)
life	→	lifelike (giống như thật)
brother	→	brotherlike (như anh em)

e. -y (có nhiều)

rain	→	rainy (có mưa, mưa nhiều)
snow	→	snowy (có tuyết, phủ đầy tuyết)
dust	→	dusty (đầy bụi)
sand	→	sandy (có cát)
salt	→	salty (có vị muối, có muối)
health	→	healthy (khỏe mạnh)

f. -ish (có tính chất của, giống như)

fool	→	foolish (ngu ngốc)
child	→	childish (ích kỷ)
self	→	selfish (như trẻ con)
girl	→	girlish (như con gái)

g. -al (thuộc về)

magic	→	magical (thuộc về ma thuật)
industry	→	industrial (thuộc công nghiệp)
nature	→	natural (thuộc tự nhiên)
music	→	musical (thuộc âm nhạc)
profession	→	professional (chuyên nghiệp)

h. -ous

poison	→	poisonous (có chất độc)
nerve	→	nervous (thuộc thần kinh)
danger	→	dangerous (nguy hiểm)
fame	→	famous (nổi tiếng)
mountain	→	mountainous (có nhiều núi)

g. -able

fashion	→	fashionable (hợp thời trang)
comfort	→	comfortable (thoải mái)
value	→	valuable (có giá trị lớn, đáng giá)

2. Một số tính từ được thành lập bằng cách thêm hậu tố vào sau động từ.

a. -ive

act	→	active (tích cực)
progress	→	progressive (có tiến bộ)
attract	→	attractive (hấp dẫn, lôi cuốn)
expense	→	expensive (đắt tiền)

b. -able/-ible

accept	→	acceptable (có thể chấp nhận)
count	→	countable (có thể đếm được)
achieve	→	achievable (có thể thực hiện được)
change	→	changeable (có thể dễ thay đổi)
eat	→	eatable (có thể ăn được)
reduce	→	reducible (có thể giảm được)
comprehend	→	comprehensible (có thể hiểu được)

3. Một số tính từ được thành lập bằng cách thêm tiền tố (prefixes) vào trước tính từ.

a. super-

human	→	superhuman (<i>siêu phàm</i>)
natural	→	supernatural (<i>siêu nhiên</i>)
sonic	→	supersonic (<i>siêu thanh</i>)
fine	→	superfine (<i>siêu hạng, thượng hạng</i>)

b. under-

nourished	→	undernourished (<i>thiếu ăn</i>)
developed	→	underdeveloped (<i>kém phát triển</i>)
done	→	underdone (<i>nửa sống nửa chín, tái</i>)

c. over-

anxious	→	overanxious (<i>quá lo lắng</i>)
confident	→	overconfident (<i>quá tự tin</i>)
bearing	→	overbearing (<i>độc đoán</i>)
joyed	→	overjoyed (<i>quá vui sướng</i>)
crowded	→	overcrowded (<i>chật ních, đông nghịt</i>)

d. sub-

conscious	→	subconscious (<i>thuộc tiềm thức</i>)
atomic	→	subatomic (<i>thuộc hạ nguyên tử</i>)

4. Một số tính từ mang nghĩa phủ định được thành lập bằng cách thêm tiền tố (prefixes) trước tính từ

a. un-

happy	→	unhappy (<i>không hạnh phúc</i>)
fortunate	→	unfortunate (<i>không may</i>)
comfortable	→	uncomfortable (<i>không thoải mái</i>)
forgettable	→	unforgettable (<i>không thể quên</i>)
certain	→	uncertain (<i>không chắc chắn</i>)

b. in-

direct	→	indirect (<i>gián tiếp</i>)
convenient	→	inconvenient (<i>bất tiện</i>)
dependent	→	independent (<i>độc lập</i>)
formal	→	informal (<i>thân mật</i>)
visible	→	invisible (<i>vô hình</i>)

c. im- (trước những từ bắt đầu bằng m hoặc p)

patient	→	impatient (<i>thiếu kiên nhẫn</i>)
possible	→	impossible (<i>không thể được</i>)

mature	→	immature (<i>non nớt, chưa chín chắn</i>)
perfect	→	imperfect (<i>không hoàn hảo</i>)
polite	→	impolite (<i>vô lễ</i>)

d. ir-

regular	→	irregular (<i>bất thường</i>)
religious	→	irreligious (<i>vô đạo</i>)
removable	→	irremovable (<i>không thể di chuyển</i>)
rational	→	irrational (<i>không hợp lý, phi lý</i>)
relevant	→	irrelevant (<i>không thích đáng</i>)

e. il- (Trước những từ bắt đầu bằng l)

legal	→	illegal (<i>bất hợp pháp, phi pháp</i>)
logical	→	illogical (<i>không logic, phi lý</i>)
literate	→	illiterate (<i>thất học, mù chữ</i>)
liberal	→	illiberal (<i>không hào phóng, hẹp hòi</i>)

f. dis-

honest	→	dishonest (<i>không thành thật</i>)
agreeably	→	disagreeably (<i>khó chịu</i>)
affected	→	disaffected (<i>bất bình, bất mãn</i>)
courteous	→	discourteous (<i>bất lịch sự</i>)

5. Một số tính từ kép được thành lập bằng cách kết hợp một danh từ với một quá khứ phân từ (noun + past participle → Adjective)

man + made	→	man-made (<i>nhân tạo</i>)
hand + made	→	hand-made (<i>làm bằng tay</i>)
corn + fed	→	corn-fed (<i>nuôi bằng ngô</i>)
snow + covered	→	snow-covered (<i>phủ đầy tuyết</i>)
horse + pulled	→	horse-pulled (<i>do ngựa kéo</i>)
city + run	→	city-run (<i>do thành phố quản lý</i>)

6. Ngoài ra ta còn có thể thành lập tính từ bằng cách dùng well hoặc ill kết hợp với một quá khứ phân từ (well/ ill + past participle → Adjective)

well + done	→	well-done (<i>nấu kỹ, nấu chín</i>)
well + prepared	→	well-prepared (<i>nổi tiếng</i>)
well + known	→	well-known (<i>được chuẩn bị tới</i>)
ill + prepared	→	ill-prepared (<i>mất dạy, vô giáo dục</i>)
ill + bred	→	ill-bred (<i>mất dạy, vô giáo dục</i>)
ill + founded	→	ill-founded (<i>vô căn cứ</i>)

III. THÀNH LẬP ĐỘNG TỪ (Verb Formations)

1. Một số động từ được thành lập bằng cách thêm tiền tố *out-* (ở mức độ cao hơn, tốt hơn, nhanh hơn, dài hơn..v.v) và nội động từ (intransitive verb) để tạo thành một ngoại động từ (transitive verb).

grow	→	outgrow (lớn hơn, phát triển nhanh hơn)
live	→	outlive (sống lâu hơn)
run	→	outrun (chạy nhanh hơn)
weigh	→	outweigh (nặng hơn)
number	→	outnumber (nhiều hơn, đông hơn)
bid	→	outbid (trả giá cao hơn)

- **Transitive verb:** động từ luôn có tân ngữ trực tiếp theo sau.

- **Intransitive verb:** động từ không có tân ngữ theo sau.

2. Một số động từ được thành lập bằng cách thêm tiền tố *en-* (đưa vào, làm cho, gây ra) vào sau tính từ, danh từ hoặc một động từ khác.

danger	→	endanger (gây nguy hiểm)
case	→	encase (cho vào thùng/túi...)
rich	→	enrich (làm giàu)
large	→	enlarge (làm cho rộng ra, mở rộng)
courage	→	encourage (khuyến khích)
act	→	enact (trình diễn, biểu diễn)
force	→	enforce (thực thi, ép buộc)

Hậu tố *-en* cũng có thể được thêm vào sau một số tính từ để tạo thành động từ.

tight	→	tighten (thắt chặt, siết chặt)
weak	→	weaken (làm cho yếu đi)
bright	→	brighten (làm rạng rỡ)
sharp	→	sharpen (làm cho sắc nhọn)

3. Một số động từ được thành lập bằng cách thêm tiền tố vào động từ.

a. over-

act	→	overact (cường điệu vai diễn)
stay	→	overstay (ở quá lâu)
take	→	overtake (vượt lên)
throw	→	overthrow (lật đổ)
work	→	overwork (làm việc quá sức)
pay	→	overpay (trả tiền/lương quá cao)

b. under-

pay	→	underpay (trả lương thấp)
-----	---	---------------------------

line	→	underline (<i>gạch dưới</i>)
sell	→	undersell (<i>bán rẻ hơn</i>)
estimate	→	underestimate (<i>đánh giá thấp</i>)
go	→	undergo (<i>trải qua, chịu đựng</i>)
play	→	underplay (<i>xem nhẹ</i>)

c. super-

impose	→	superimpose (<i>đặt lên trên cùng</i>)
intend	→	superintend (<i>trông nom, giám sát</i>)
pose	→	superpose (<i>chồng lên</i>)
charge	→	supercharge (<i>tăng nạp</i>)
abound	→	superabound (<i>quá thừa thãi, dư dật</i>)

IV. THÀNH LẬP TRẠNG TỪ (Adverb Formations)

Trạng từ thường được thành lập bằng cách thêm hậu tố **-ly** vào sau tính từ.

beautiful	→	beautifully (<i>tốt đẹp</i>)
careless	→	carelessly (<i>bất cẩn</i>)
bad	→	badly (<i>xấu, kém</i>)
nervous	→	nervously (<i>bồn chồn, lo lắng</i>)
recent	→	recently (<i>gần đây, mới đây</i>)
careful	→	carefully (<i>cẩn thận</i>)
strong	→	strongly (<i> mạnh mẽ</i>)

Lưu ý: Một số trạng từ đặc biệt cần ghi nhớ:

good	→	well (<i>giỏi, tốt</i>)
late	→	late/lately (<i>trễ, chậm</i>)
hard	→	hard/hardly (<i>tích cực, khắc nghiệt</i>)
ill	→	ill (<i>xấu, tồi, kém</i>)
fast	→	fast (<i>nhanh</i>)

B. HÌNH THỨC CỦA TỪ (WORD FORMS)

Dưới đây là các cách nhận biết từ loại của một từ khi làm bài tập.

I. Danh từ (nouns): Danh từ thường được đặt ở các vị trí sau:

1. Chủ ngữ của câu (Subject of sentence)

Computers are being used in all kinds of work.

(*máy tính được sử dụng trong tất cả các loại công việc*)

Maths is the subject I like best.

(*Toán là môn học tôi thích nhất*)

2. Sau tính từ hoặc tính từ sở hữu (*his, my, her, ...*)

She is a good **teacher**.

(Cô ấy là giáo viên giỏi.) [adj + noun]

I parked my car across the road.

(Tôi đỗ xe bên kia đường.)

3. Sau enough

He hasn't got enough **patience** to wait.

(Anh ấy không đủ kiên nhẫn để đợi)

4. Sau các mạo từ *a, an, the*, hoặc các từ hạn định *this, that, these, those, each, every, both, no, ...*

The **scientists** have become important people in our society.

(Các nhà khoa học đã trở thành những người quan trọng trong xã hội của chúng ta.)

This **friend** of hers is said to be very rich.

(Nghe nói người bạn này của cô ta rất giàu)

She can find no **solution** to her financial troubles.

(bà ấy không tìm được cách giải quyết những khó khăn về tài chính.)

Lưu ý: cấu trúc *a/ an/the + adj + noun*

It's such a **long time** since I saw you.

(Đã lâu lắm rồi tôi mới gặp lại bạn)

5. Sau giới từ (*in, on, of, with, ...*)

The robbery is under **investigation**.

(Vụ cướp đang được điều tra)

He has a good knowledge of **science**.

(Anh ấy giỏi về khoa học tự nhiên.)

Sau các từ chỉ về số lượng (quantifiers): *few, a few, little, a little, some, any, much, many, most, ...*

Vicky hasn't made **much progress** in his study.

(Vicky không mấy tiến bộ trong học tập)

I have a **little knowledge** about genetics.

(Tôi biết chút ít về di truyền học)

Most boys like playing football.

(Phần lớn các cậu bé đều thích chơi bóng đá)

II. TÍNH TỪ (Adjectives): Tính từ thường đứng ở các vị trí sau:

1. Trước danh từ

Adjective + noun

His father is a **mechanical** engineer.

(Cha anh ấy là kỹ sư cơ khí)

2. Sau động từ *be* và động từ liên kết (*linking verbs*): *get, seem, appear, feel, taste, look, smell, stay, become*.

Be, get, seem + Adj

She is **beautiful**. (Cô ấy xinh đẹp)

Peter felt **upset** because he failed the test.

(Peter cảm thấy buồn bực vì anh ấy thi trượt)

Mary looks **happy** now.

(Lúc này trông Mary thật hạnh phúc)

Coffee tastes **good**.

(Cà phê này ngon.)

keep/make + object + adj

The news made her **happy**.

(Tin đó làm cô ấy vui sướng)

These gloves will keep your hands **warm**.

(Đôi găng này sẽ giữ ấm hai bàn tay của anh.)

3. Sau *too*.

be/seem/look/taste + too + adj

He is **too short** to play basketball.

(Anh ấy quá thấp không thể chơi bóng rổ được)

4. Trước *enough*.

be + adj + enough

The water isn't **hot enough**. It needs to be boiling.

(Nước không đủ nóng. Nó cần được đun lại)

Ben is **intelligent enough** to understand what the problem is.

(Ben đủ thông minh để hiểu vấn đề ở đây là gì)

5. Trong cấu trúc *so ... that*.

be + so + adj + that

She was **so angry** that she couldn't speak.

(Bà ấy giận đến mức không nói được)

The film is **so exciting** that I've seen it many times.

(Phim này hay đến nỗi tôi đã xem nó nhiều lần)

Lưu ý: *be* có thể được thay bằng các động từ chỉ giác quan: seem, look, feel, smell, taste, ..

6. Tính từ còn được dùng dưới dạng so sánh. Tính từ dài (long adjective) thường đứng sau *more, the most, less, as ... as*.

Meat is more **expensive** than fish.

(Thịt đắt hơn cá)

This question is the most **difficult** of all.

(Trong tất cả các câu hỏi, câu hỏi này khó nhất.)

He is as **deaf** as a post.

(Ông ta điếc đặc)

7. Trong câu cảm thán:

How + adj + S + V hoặc What + (a/an) + adj + N

How **beautiful** the girl is!

(Cô gái đó xinh quá!)

What an **interesting** film!

(Phim hay quá!)

III. TRẠNG TỪ (Adverbs)

Trạng từ thường đứng ở các vị trí:

1. Sau trợ động từ (auxiliary verbs) và trước động từ thường (ordinary verbs)

Auxiliary V + adv + V

The pictures have **definitely** been stolen.

(Những bức tranh rõ ràng là đã bị đánh cắp)

Tom drove **carefully** along the narrow road.

(Tom cẩn thận lái xe dọc theo con đường hẹp)

2. Trước tính từ:

be/feel/look + adv + adj

I'm **truthfully** grateful for your help.

(Tôi thành thật biết ơn về sự giúp đỡ của bạn)

That man looks **extremely** sad and tired.

(Người đàn ông đó có vẻ rất buồn và mệt mỏi)

It's a **reasonably** cheap restaurant.

(Đó là một nhà hàng giá tương đối rẻ)

3. Sau too.

V + too + adv

She **came too late** to see him yesterday
(*Hôm qua cô ấy đến quá trễ không gặp được anh ta*)
They walked **too slowly** to catch the bus.
(*Họ đi quá chậm không thể bắt kịp xe buýt*)

4. Cấu trúc so ... that.

V + so + adv + that

Jack drove **so fast that** he caused an accident.
(*Jack lái xe nhanh đến nỗi gây tai nạn*)
She sang **so beautifully that** everybody applauded.
(*Cô ấy hát hay đến nỗi mọi người đều vỗ tay*)

5. Đứng cuối câu

S + V(+0) + adv

It was raining **heavily**.
(*Trời đang mưa to*)
She speaks English **perfectly**.
(*Cô ấy nói tiếng Anh rất giỏi*)
The surgeon performed the operation **successfully**.
(*Bác sĩ phẫu thuật đã thực hiện ca mổ thành công*)

6. Trước enough.

V + adv + enough

You'd better **write clearly enough** for everybody to read.
(*Anh nên viết rõ ràng để mọi người đọc được.*)
She **plays well enough** for the beginner.
(*Cô ấy chơi khá hay so với một người mới tập chơi*)

7. Đôi khi trạng từ có thể đứng một mình ở đầu câu hoặc giữa câu và cách câu bằng dấu phẩy (,)

Suddenly, he heard a strange voice.
(*Thình lình, anh ta nghe một giọng nói lạ*)
Jane felt ill. She went to work, **however**, and try to concentrate.
(*Cô ấy ốm. Tuy nhiên, cô ấy vẫn đi làm và cố gắng tập trung*)

IV. ĐỘNG TỪ (Verbs)

Vị trí của động từ trong câu rất dễ nhận biết vì nó thường đứng sau chủ ngữ.

Tom's behaviour improved at his new school.

S V

(*Cách cư xử của Tom đã tiến bộ ở ngôi trường mới.*)

I believe her because she always tells the truth.

S V S V

(*Tôi tin cô ấy vì cô ấy luôn nói thật*)

The girl sitting beside Tom has won the gold me.

S V

(*Cô gái ngồi cạnh Tom đã đoạt huy chương vàng*)

The film which was shown last night attracted me.

S V

(*Bộ phim tối qua đã lôi cuốn tôi.*)

C. THÀNH NGỮ (Idiomatic expressions)

Thành ngữ thường có cấu trúc:

Verb + noun (phrase) + preposition

Một số thành ngữ thông dụng:

- catch sight of : bắt gặp, nhìn thấy
- give place to : nhường chỗ
- give way to : nhượng bộ, chịu thua
- keep pace with/ keep up with : sánh kịp, bắt kịp
- lose sight of : mất hút, không nhìn thấy
- make allowance for : chiếu cố đến
- make fun of : chế nhạo
- make a fuss over/ about : làm rối tung lên, làm on sòm
- make room for : dọn chỗ cho
- make use of : dùng, sử dụng
- lose touch with : mất liên lạc
- keep/ lose track : mất dấu
- put a stop to : làm ngừng lại
- take account of : để ý đến, lưu tâm
- take care of : chăm sóc
- take notice of : lưu ý
- pay attention to : chú ý tới

put an end to	: <i>chấm dứt</i>
set fire to	: <i>làm cháy, thiêu</i>
take advantage	: <i>lợi dụng</i>
take note of	: <i>để ý, ghi chép</i>
take leave of	: <i>từ biệt</i>
give birth to	: <i>sinh con</i>
make a contribution to	: <i>góp phần</i>
keep correspondence with	: <i>liên lạc thư từ</i>
show affection for	: <i>có cảm tình</i>
feel pity for/ take (have) pity on	: <i>thương xót</i>
feel regret for	: <i>hối tiếc, ân hận</i>
feel sympathy for	: <i>thông cảm</i>
make complaint about	: <i>kêu ca, phàn nàn</i>
feel shame at	: <i>xấu hổ</i>
have a look at	: <i>nhìn ngắm</i>
get victory over	: <i>chiến thắng</i>
play an influem	<i>có ảnh hưởng</i>
have faith in	<i>tin tưởng</i>
take interest in	<i>quan tâm, thích thú</i>
make a decision on/ make up one's mind:	<i>quyết định</i>

As she stood up she **caught sight of** her reflection in the mirror.

(*Khi đứng lên cô ấy nhìn thấy hình phản chiếu của mình trong gương*)

David **takes his interest in** modern fashion.

(*David quan tâm đến thời trang hiện đại.*)

I've **made up my mind** to be a doctor.

(*Tôi đã quyết định sẽ trở thành bác sĩ*)

EXERCISES

1. Add a word from the box to the prefix in each sentence to make a negative word.

advantage	agree	appear	employed
fortunately	interesting	patient	understanding

1. I didn't read all of the book because I found it un *.interesting*.....

2. Cycling has one dis.....It makes you feel hot and sweaty.

3. Sue had a ticket for the theatre, but un.....she fell ill that night.
4. Terry can't stand waiting in queues, because she's very im.....
5. My brothers always dis.....when it's time to do the washing-up.
6. After Jack lost his job, he was un.....for three months.
7. Oh, I completely dis.....with you. I think it was a great film.
8. Because of a mis....., half the class went to the wrong classroom.

2. Complete the word in each sentence with a prefix from the box.

out-	over-	under-	re-
------	-------	--------	-----

1. My alarm clock didn't go off, and so I...*over*..... slept this morning.
2. Pete packed some shirts and socks, some.....wear, and his jeans.
3. It's very cold this morning, so wear your.....coat.
4. Our team was completely.....played by the team from Wales.
5. I've decided to.....write my letter, because I made too many mistakes.
6. Steve.....cooked the meat, and it was burnt in places.
7. I have to go to the library today and.....new my ticket.
8. The staff went on strike because they were.....paid and overworked.

3. Complete the word in each sentence with a suffix from the box. Make any other necessary changes to the word.

-er	-let	-ess	-hood	-ship	-ful	-ery
-----	------	------	-------	-------	------	------

1. After two years of friend...*ship*....., Kate got to know David really well.
2. If you don't speak the language you feel more like a foreign.....
3. Sarah spent a very happy child.....on a small island.
4. I asked a steward.....what time the plane arrived, but she didn't know.
5. Every teenage.....knows that parents worry a lot.
6. Don't forget to add a spoon.....of sugar, and some milk.
7. We live in a beautiful neighbour.....on the outskirts of the city.
8. Tina picked up a hand.....of snow, and threw it in my face.
9. Under the floor there was a rumbling sound of machine.....
10. The college sent Sue a small book.....describing its courses.

4. Complete each sentence with a noun made from the verb given.

1. There are over one million*inhabitants*.....in this city.
inhabit
2. Greg often suffers from.....in the school holidays.
bore
3. This is the tallest.....in the whole of the country.

build

4. Some students can't find suitable.....

accommodate

5. I was upset by Carol's.....to help me.

refuse

6. It took Richard years to become a successful.....

act

7. Every.....in this company has received a pay rise.

employ

8. You need a lot of.....to write a good story.

imagine

9. Don't forget to turn off the.....before you leave.

cook

10. I saw an interesting.....in the local paper.

advertise

5. Complete each sentence with a noun ending in **-ness** made from a word in the box. Make any necessary changes.

dark	friendly	happy	lonely	short
sick	silly	thin	tired	thorough

1. The *shortness* of the journey surprised me, as I thought it would be longer.

2. Sue was impressed by the.....of everyone in her new school.

3. We knew it was going to rain because of the.....of the sky.

4. Old Mrs Holt's.....was cured when she was given a pet cat.

5. The doctor told Peter that his.....was a result of overwork.

6. Wendy's teacher was impressed by the.....of her work.

7. We wished the bride and groom.....in their new life together.

8. Joe's teachers began to grow tired of his.....in class.

9. I felt rather cold when I arrived because of the.....of my clothes.

10. Jean took a travel.....pill, and then she felt much better.

6. Complete the word in italics in each sentence with a prefix or suffix from the box. Make any other necessary changes to the word.

-age	dis-	-ful	im-	un-	-y	-ness
------	------	------	-----	-----	----	-------

1. I suppose Paul might help us, but it seems *likely*. ..*unlikely*.....

2. Fred can't fill his pool because there's a water *short*. ..

3. I found most of the maths questions completely *possible*.
4. Jan has taken up *photograph* as a hobby.
5. Thanks for those notes. They were really *use*.
6. I *like* winter sports so I never go skiing.
7. When it's time for bed I start feeling *sleep*.
8. This is a really *usual* stamp. I've not seen one like it before.
9. I really like Dan. He's always so happy and *cheer*.
10. I'm writing to thank you for the *kind* you showed me.

7. Complete each sentence with a word formed from the word in bold.

1. It's*usually*.....cold today, considering it's still summer.
usual
2. Actually, I found Tony's book was.....interesting.
surprise
3., my father used to go to school with your father.
interest
4. The police managed.....to find the missing children.
success
5. Jean's compositions are always.....written.
beautiful
6. I'm.....ashamed of your behaviour!
thorough
7. This question is.....difficult, isn't it!
awful
8. Mike tried.....to phone Cathy several times.
success
9. These instructions seem.....complicated.
necessary
10. Someone had.....left the front door open.
obvious

8. Complete each word with a word formed from the word in bold.

1. I can't sit on this chair. It's really un*comfortable*.....
comfort
2. Ann has left home and is in.....of her parents.

depend

3. These old envelopes are re.....so we can save money.

use

4. Not being chosen for the team was a great dis.....

appoint

5. Maria and Louis have a really good.....ship.

relate

6. Being un.....means that you share with others.

self

7. Not taking exercise is rather un.....

health

8. David has a really un.....temper, and gets angry easily.

control

9. These trousers won't get smaller. They're un.....

shrink

10. They didn't give Gary the job as he was in

experience

9. Add one of the prefixes in the box to each incomplete word so that it makes sense. Use each prefix once only.

auto-	dis-	ex-	in-	mis-	non-
	over	semi-	sub-	un-	

1. Dick was very tired and suffering from.....*over*.....work.

2. We couldn't see the magician! He had become.....visible.

3. I could only cross the road by going down a.....way.

4. Nobody believed what Mary wrote in her.....biography.

5. Let me introduce you to Janet, my.....-wife.

6. What he said was not clear. In fact it was rather.....leading.

7. Unfortunately our football team lost in the.....-final.

8. Mr Smith regrets that he is.....able to accept your invitation.

9. This is a good train, it goes to Manchester.....-stop.

10. Oh bother, my pencil sharpener has.....appeared again.

10. Complete each sentence with a word formed from a word in the box, ending as shown.

drink	equal	hand	hope	partner	employ
	green	harm	neighbour		wide

1. Carol and Andy have just moved into a new ... *neighbour*.....hood.
2. My new.....er is paying me a much higher salary.
3. The local council have decided to.....en the main road
4. Jerry picked up a.....ful of the money and smiled.
5. I'm a terrible card player. I'm really.....less.
6. It's a kind of blue colour, but a bit.....ish too.
7. Bill now works in.....ship with two other architects.
8. Don't drink from the stream. You don't know if the water is able.
9. Most people say that they believe in the.....ity of men and women.
10. Doctors have proved that smoking is.....ful.

11. Complete each sentence with a word formed from a word in box A. Use one of the prefixes or suffixes in box B.

A	art	cycle	friend	hope	national	circle	edible
	ground		mountain		young		
B	fore-	in-	inter-	semi-	tri-	-eer	-ful
		-ist	-ly	-ster			

1. I can't eat this! It's completely ... *inedible*.....
2. John has been interested in sailing ever since he was a/an.....
3. The teacher arranged the desks in a/an.....
4. I like it here. The people are really.....
5. There are two figures in the.....of the picture.
6. You have to have a good head for heights if you are a.....
7. It's much safer for a young child to ride a/an.....
8. Scientists are.....that a cure for the disease will be found.
9. Most countries have signed a/an.....agreement banning whaling.
10. Paintings by this.....have been sold for millions of pounds.

12. Complete the compound word in each sentence with a word from the box.

clothed	handed	hearted	looking	mouthed
eared	legged	minded	tempered	

1. Thank you for helping me, and being so kind- *hearted*.....
2. We searched all day, but had to return home empty-.....
3. Paul didn't have time to think, but jumped into the river fully-.....
4. It seems that long-.....people can run faster.
5. Try to concentrate and remember! You are so absent-.....
6. Mary is very attractive, and her husband is good-.....too.

7. Stop shouting! I'm tired of your loud-.....comments!
8. Mike gets angry easily. He's a bit short-.....
9. Steve's book was dirty and dog-.....

13. Make nouns ending in *-sis* or *-ure* from the following verbs, making any necessary changes in spelling. Then put each noun in its correct place in the sentences below.

emphasize	hypnotize	sign	analyse	paralyse
seize	diagnose	fail	close	enclose

1. The doctor's.....was that I had bronchitis.
2. Don't put an.....inside an aerogramme. It is not permitted.
3. The..... of the blood will help the police find the murderer.
4. The doctor used.....to make her calm and relaxed.
5. He was very ambitious, and his..... to become prime minister was a shock to him.
6. The.....at the bottom of the letter was impossible to read.
7. Some teachers put a lot of.....on learning by heart.
8. There has been a military government since the army's.....of power six years ago.
9. This disease can lead to the.....of certain muscles.
10. The.....of the factory and loss of jobs came as a result of fewer orders from abroad.

14. Make nouns from the following verbs by adding *-y* to the end and making any other necessary changes in spelling. Then put each noun in its correct place in the sentences below.

prosper	enquire	injure	discover	apologize	
forgive	expire	deliver	recover	conspire	assemble

1. In England there is no postal.....on Sundays.
2. He still suffers from an.....he received in a game of football ten years ago.
3. He could copy other people's signatures perfectly. He was finally sent to prison for.....
4. The..... of a ship from the bottom of the sea is a very difficult, expensive operation.
5. The.....of America was made in 1492 by Christopher Coicmbus.
6. I wish you happiness, good health and.....for this coming year.
7. This is the parliamentary building, where the National..... meets.

8. She accepted his.....for his rude behaviour at dinner.
9. The President believed there was a.....to overthrow him.
10. On....., your passport may be renewed for a further five years.
11. Thank you for your about our products. We enclose our current catalogue.

15. Make nouns ending in *-ence* from the following verbs, making any necessary changes in spelling. Then put each noun in its correct place in the sentences below.

prefer	obey	defend	offend	insist	coincide
refer	depend	correspond	reside	differ	
interfere	exist	pretend			

1. He couldn't go to university but continued his education through courses.
2. This monument is in memory of the men and women who died in of this country.
3. Police dogs are trained to a high standard of.....
4. Tea or coffee? Do you have any.....?
5. She wasn't really angry at all. It was just.....
6. Dictionaries, encyclopaedias and atlases are called.....book.
7. The doctors tried to cure him of his.....on drugs.
8. The United Nations came into.....in 1945.
9. Despite his.....that he was innocent, he was arrested.
10. I can't tell the.....between butter and margarine.
11. I hope she didn't take..... I was only joking.
12. I met John on holiday quite by chance. What a.....!
13. She complained of.....by her mother-in-law in her private affairs.
14. 'Place of.....' means the place where you live.

16. Make nouns from the following verbs by adding *-ance* to the end and making any other necessary changes in spelling. Then put each noun in its correct place in the sentences below.

annoy	resist	avoid	insure	resemble	enter
attend	perform	accept	disturb	assist	endure

1. It was the actor's finest.....
2. The teacher kept a record of every student's.....
3. This signature bears no.....to mine! It's a forgery!

4. When I received the offer of a job, I immediately wrote a letter of.....
5. The police were called to a.....at a private party last night.
6. My house.....covers me for fire, flood, theft and damage.
7. When she was very old she couldn't look after herself without.....
8. When people kept talking during the film, he showed his.....by turning round and looking at them.
9. The.....to the park is through that gate there.
10. After fierce.....for two days, the soldiers surrendered to the enemy.
11. By continuing his journey alone, on foot, in freezing weather without food for two days he showed remarkable powers of.....
12. The Automobile Association recommends..... of the city centre during the present road repairs.

17. Make nouns from the following verbs by adding *-al* to the end and making any other necessary changes in spelling. Then put each noun in its correct place in the sentences below.

deny	propose	approve	bury	refuse	try
renew	remove	arrive	survive	dismiss	rehearse

1. His unpunctuality and bad work soon led to hisfrom the firm.
2. After the funeral service in the church, we went out to the cemetery for the
3. Thousands of people were at the airport for the President's.....
4. of your season ticket for another six months will cost you \$268.
5. To get married before you are eighteen, you will need your parents' and consent.
6. The first performance of the play is tomorrow. The actors are having a final tonight.
7. At the end of the five-day....., he was found guilty and sent to prison.
8. The factory manager wants to use different machines but the workers don't like this.....
9. The police were amazed at the.....of the five children after a night out in freezing temperatures.
10. He made a complete of the accusation against him but no one believed him.
11. I don't understand his.....to help us. He's usually very helpful.
12. The new republican government demanded the.....of the king's statue from the main square.

18. Make nouns from the following verbs by adding *-age* to the end and making any other necessary changes in spelling. Then put each noun in its correct place in the sentences below.

use	shrink	store	post	stop
break	wreck	marry	leak	pass

1. A family house always needs..... space for old furniture and luggage.
2. With the.....of time, her heartache grew less painful.
3. The..... between Alan and Josephine will take place in St Andrew's Church on April 21st.
4. The firm is proud of its non-strike record. There hasn't been a..... of work for twelve years.
5. Airmail.....to Australia for a large parcel is very expensive.
6. The of the smashed car was left by the road as a warning to motorists.
7. The Prime Minister is very angry about the.....of information to the press from closed secret meetings.
8. The Americanof this word is different from the British.
9. In a shop selling glass and china a certain amount of..... is unavoidable.
10. This shirt was guaranteed against....., but look, it's too small for me now and I've only washed it once.

19. Make nouns, all ending in *-sion*, from the following verbs. Put each noun in its correct place in the sentences below.

divide	conclude	expand	persuade	
revise	admit	exclude	explode	include

1. I hope friendly.....will make him change his mind. I don't want to use force.
2. If they get divorced, they'll have to decide on the.....of their money and property.
3. He dreamt of the of his firm from a small factory to a large international business.
4.to the club is limited to members only.
5. There was a very loud.....when the bomb went off.
6. In the final weeks before the exam, the students did a lot of.....
7. He was delighted by his in the national football team.
8. The..... of her name from the list of people chosen to meet the President was a great disappointment.
- 9.....and finally, in, I thank you all for coming.

20. Make nouns from the following verbs by adding -ment to the end. Put each noun in its correct place in the sentences below.

entertain	improve	postpone	arrange
enlarge	encourage	advertise	

1. The.....for Monday is that we'll meet at 7 and take the train at 7.45.
2. I like this photo. I think I'll have an..... made.
3. This is the city's.....district, full of cinemas and theatres.
4. We regret to announce the of this evening's concert. The conductor is ill. The concert will take place next week.
5. The teachers were pleased at thein his work.
6. His parents gave him a lot of.....in his studies.
7. There was a newspaper.....for a job as a typist.

21. Make nouns ending in -tion from the following verbs, making any necessary spelling changes. Then put each noun in its correct place in the sentences below.

revolt	repeat	compete	reduce	acquire
produce	pronounce	qualify	solve	introduce

1. There's a lot ofamong car manufacturers to sell most cars.
2. There are some differences in between British and American English.
3. Is a degree a necessary.....for this job?
4.of the new sports car has been affected by a fire at the factory.
5. They are trying to find a.....to the problem.
6. A book sometimes sells better if it has an..... written by a famous person.
7. The art gallery is very proud of its recent.....of an important painting.
8. There was a..... The people rose up and overthrew the government.
9. That must not happen again. There must be no.....of the incident.
10. That shop is offering a big.....in the price of its clothes.

22. Make nouns from the following verbs by adding -ion to the end. Put each noun in its correct place in the sentences below.

prevent	interrupt	elect	protect	suggest
predict	select	react	invent	addict

1. If I can work all day without any....., I can finish the job by this evening.

2. I can't make any.....about the..... result. I don't know how the voting will go.
3. What was his..... to the news? Was he pleased or angry?
4. RSPCA stands for the Royal Society for the.....of Cruelty to Animals.
5. His.....of a new type of car engine brought him a lot of money.
6. Histo drugs nearly killed him.
7. RSPB stands for the Royal Society for the.....of Birds.
8. What shall we do tomorrow? Swimming? Film? Museum? Has anyone got a better?
9. He was delighted by his.....for the school football team.

23. Supply the correct word form.

1. This is my favourite chair. It's very(comfort)
2. It's.....to drive so fast. (danger)
3. I must clean this.....floor. (dirt)
4. Elvis Presley was a.....pop singer. (fame)
5. How many.....holidays do we have? (nation)
6. It was.....not to write down the address. (fool)
7. I live in the.....part of the city, (south)
8. Everyone likes him because he is.....(friend)
9. You can rely on his judgement, he's very.....(sense)
10. She dresses with great style and her clothes are.....(fashion)
11. The President was a very.....man. (power)
12. It was.....so they had to drive very slowly. (fog)
13. I try to speak clearly when I meet a (foreign)
14. He's the of this machine. (invent)
15. Who is the of the group? (lead)
16. Agatha Christie is a famous for her detective stories. (novel)
17. The telephone put me through to the office. (operate)
18. She's a..... so we must be polite. (visit)
19. Mr Peter Brown is a famous..... (economy)
20. A. is an entertainer making people laugh. (comedy)
21. Are you the. of this car? (own)
22. The hotel..... asked us to register. (reception)
23. I don't know why they call him a.....(lie)
24. Alfred Hitchcock was a famous film. (direct)
25. I think the most..... idea is to go by car. (sense)
26. He made an for the position of manager. (apply)

27. She got a letter from her boss. (person)
28. We need her..... before we can go ahead. (approve)
29. I'd like a nice. orange. (juice)
30. We must make a about where to go. (decide)
31. There are. ways of doing this work. (vary)
32. is my favourite hobby. (photograph)
33. He always feels..in the morning. (sleep)
34. He made an. to see me at two o'clock. (arrange)
35. You must be. when you open the door. (care)
36. The train made a late..... (depart)
37. Let's go for a.walk in the fresh air. (health)
38. The. wanted to know everything about the accident. (report)
39. It's a very academic,. book. (scholar)
40. I worked as a..... engineer when I left university. (train)
41. Peter is an. student in our class. (industry)
42. All the. felt happy in the end. (competc)
43. This city has over a million(inhabit)
44. Whisky of course is an. drink. (alcohol)
45. The music program was performed by some famous (sing)
46. This map is very.on my holiday, (use)
47. He spoke English fluently but with some. mistakes. (grammar)
48. It was too.....for sunbathing. (cloud)
49. It was. of you to make fun of him like that. (kind)
50. Some of Tom's answers in his exam were. (correct)

D. VĂN PHONG (STYLES)

Văn phong (style) là cách hành văn để diễn đạt một câu nói. Có nhiều cách để diễn đạt, ta có thể dùng:

- a. Tính từ thay cho danh từ (hoặc ngược lại)

She had a **determination** to overcome her difficulties.

= She was **determined** to overcome her difficulties.

(Cô ta quyết tâm vượt qua mọi khó khăn)

They show no **interest** in the picture.

= They aren't **interested** in the picture.

(Họ không thích bức tranh)

b. Động từ thay cho danh từ (hoặc ngược lại)

Can I have a **look** at your new dress? = Can I **look** at your new dress?

(Tôi có thể xem chiếc áo mới của bạn được không?)

He had an **intention** of making a journey with her.

= He **intended** to make a journey with her.

(Anh ta định đi du lịch với cô ta.)

c. Thể bị động của động từ thay cho thể chủ động (hoặc ngược lại)

Mary **has finished** her homework.

(Mary đã làm xong bài tập về nhà)

= Mary's homework **has been finished**.

(Bài tập về nhà của Mary đã được làm xong)

We **should keep** dangerous chemicals in safe places.

(Chúng ta nên cất giữ hóa chất nguy hiểm ở nơi an toàn)

= Dangerous chemicals **should be kept** in safe places.

(Hóa chất nguy hiểm nên được cất ở nơi an toàn)

d. Trạng từ thay cho tính từ (hoặc ngược lại)

He is a **careful** driver.

(Anh ấy là một tài xế cẩn thận.)

He drives **carefully**. (Anh ấy lái xe cẩn thận)

Tom is a **good** student.

(Tom là một học sinh giỏi)

= Tom studies **well**.

(Tom học giỏi)

Lưu ý: Khi đổi cách hành văn, ta cần lưu ý sự thay đổi của giới từ, tính từ hoặc trạng từ trong câu.

They gave some **careful thought** to the problem.

= They **thought carefully** about the problem.

(Họ đã suy nghĩ kỹ về vấn đề này.)

He has a **strong desire** to become a doctor.

= He **strongly desires** to become a doctor.

(Anh ấy ao ước được trở thành bác sĩ)

*** MỘT SỐ TỪ THƯỜNG ĐƯỢC SỬ DỤNG DƯỚI DẠNG ĐỘNG TỪ VÀ DANH TỪ.**

- | | |
|------------------------|--|
| 1. to look at | : to have a look at (Nhìn vào) |
| 2. to think about/ of | : to give thought to (nghĩ) |
| 3. to be determined to | : to have a determination to (dự định) |
| 4. to know (about) | : to have knowledge of (biết) |

5. to tend to	: to have a tendency to (<i>có khuynh hướng</i>)
6. to intend to + inf.	: to have intention of + V-ing (<i>dự định</i>)
7. to desire to	: to have a desire to (<i>ao ước</i>)
8. to wish	: to have/ express a wish (<i>ao ước</i>)
9. to visit sb	: to pay a visit to sb/ to pay sb a visit (<i>thăm viếng</i>)
10. to discuss sth	: to have a discussion about sth (<i>thảo luận</i>)
11. to decide to	: to make a decision to (<i>quyết định</i>)
12. to talk to	: to have a talk with (<i>nói chuyện</i>)
13. to explain sth	: to give an explanation for sth (<i>giải thích</i>)
14. to call sb	: to give sb a call (<i>gọi điện cho...</i>)
15. to be interested in	: to have interest in (<i>thích</i>)
16. to drink	to have a drink (<i>uống</i>)
17. to photograph	: to have a photograph of (<i>chụp hình</i>)
18. to cry	: to give a cry (<i>khóc, kêu</i>)
19. to laugh at	: to give a laugh at (<i>cười nhạo</i>)
20. to welcome sb	: to give sb a welcome (<i>chào đón</i>)
21. to kiss sb	: to give sb a kiss (<i>hôn</i>)
22. to ring sb	: to give sb a ring (<i>gọi điện</i>)
23. to warn	: to give warning (<i>báo động cảnh báo</i>)
24. to try to (+inf.)	: to make an effort to/ to make an attempt to (<i>cố gắng</i>)
25. to meet sb	: to have a meeting with sb (<i>gặp ai...</i>)
26. to succeed	: to make a success (<i>thành công</i>)
27. to be used	: to be in use (<i>được sử dụng</i>)
28. to rest	: to have a rest (<i>nghi ngơi</i>)
29. to sleep	: to have a sleep (<i>ngủ</i>)
30. to bathe	: to have/ take a bath (<i>tắm</i>)
31. to examine	: to have an examination (<i>khám, kiểm tra, xem xét</i>)
32. to agree	: to be in agreement (<i>đồng ý</i>)
33. to disagree	: to be in a disagreement (<i>không đồng ý</i>)
34. to contact sb	: to have contact with sb (<i>liên lạc, quan hệ</i>)
35. to exchange	: to have an exchange of (<i>trao đổi</i>)
36. to argue with sb	: to have an argument with sb (<i>tranh cãi với ai</i>)
37. to complain about	: to have a complaint about (<i>phàn nàn về...</i>)
38. to land	: to make a landing (<i> hạ cánh</i>)
39. to receive sth	: to be in receipt of sth (<i>nhận...</i>)
40. to need	: to have a need of (<i>cần</i>)
41. to love sb	: to fall in love with sb (<i>yêu ai</i>)

42. to brush sth : to give sth a brush (*chải*)

43. to arrange with sb : to have an arrangement with sb (*sắp xếp*)

EXERCISES

1. Rewrite these sentences by using the underlined nouns as verbs or adjective.

1. He had no intention of making a long journey with her.
2. Has the city government made a decision to build a hospital for the poor?
3. She shows no interest in what she is doing for the company.
4. Do most school-leavers have a strong desire to work at a tourist office?
5. I don't think they are in disagreement with what we shall do.
6. The plan didn't make a success just because most members showed no determination of doing it well.
7. During the lesson, she always takes a careful look at all the sentences and examples the teacher is giving.
8. My friend expressed a wish to become a pilot.
9. You have no need of answering all the questions in their order
10. Please give me a call when you arrive, and we'll have a meeting at a certain restaurant.
11. She has no knowledge of what will be because she never gives thought to it.
12. She said she would pay me a visit someday
13. He made a decision to leave home
14. I had no intention of staying here.
15. She has a great interest in music.
16. There was an exchange of English lessons between the two schoolgirls
17. He takes a bath every morning
18. I had an arrangement with the neighbors about feeding the cats.
19. There was no explanation for her plan.
20. She had a medical examination by a doctor.

2. Rewrite these sentences, using the nouns corresponding to the verbs.

1. I argued with the referee about his decision.
I had an.....
2. Do you agree with John about this?
Are you in.....
3. She usually brushes her hair before going out.
She usually gives her hair a.....

4. She complained about his rudeness.

She had a number of.....

5. Because of engine trouble, the plane had to land on the fields.

Because of engine trouble, the plane had to make a.....

6. Just look at this picture.

Take a.....

7. I love her very much.

I'm in.....

8. We must start early.

We must make an.....

9. He received her letter of the 10th.

He was in

10. After lunch time she usually rests.

After lunch time she usually takes a.....

3. Rewrite the sentences, beginning with the given words.

1. There is a tendency to minimize problems.

They.....

2. They show a strong desire to put aside the status of the school child

They strongly.....

3. They thought much about their work.

They gave a

4. They had little knowledge of the job of their choice.

They.....

5. There is a determination to overcome problems.

They are.....

6. He visits us whenever he's in town.

He pays.....

7. There has been a tendency to choose well-paid jobs.

They have.....

8. They spend millions of dollars on advertising every year.

Millions

9. It's good for you not to have a contact with her.

You'd better.....

10. I slept well last night.

I had.....

11. Carol Stuart cooks and swims very well.

Carol Stuart is.....

12. She has a strong desire for a scholarship.

She strongly.....

13. The villagers gave us a cordial welcome.

The villagers

14. He has no intention of leaving the city.

He doesn't.....

15. She teaches English well.

She is.....

16. This job has to be done at once.

They.....

17. She types with care.

She is.....

18. No sooner had we begun our walk than it rained.

Hardly.....

19. This woman has very little sleep.

This woman.....

20. My grandfather is a lover of music.

My grandfather.....

21. He is a careful driver.

He drives.....

22. She sings well.

She is.....

23. All the arrangements have been made.

They.....

24. He is the best football player in his team.

No one.....

25. She plays tennis well.

She is

26. People speak English in Australia.

English.....

27. They are building a hospital for the poor.

A

28. No one has seen her since 1980.

She.....

29. He visited his parents last week.

His

30. We decided to go to Boston.

We had.....

KEYS

Chương 1. DANH TỪ

1.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|--------------|---------------|------------------|
| 1. wives | 14. women | 27. lice | 40. feet |
| 2. buses | 15. brothers | 28. halves | 41. boxes |
| 3. keys | 16. brushes | 29. matches | 42. classes |
| 4. ladies | 17. torches | 30. sheep | 43. wishes |
| 5. churches | 18. lives | 31. knives | 44. flies |
| 6. pennie/pence | 19. axes | 32. bamboos | 45. potatoes |
| 7. wolves | 20. shirts | 33. pianos | 46. hankerchiefs |
| 8. towns | 21. roofs | 34. spies | 47. shelves |
| 9. cities | 22. thieves | 35. scratches | 48. cliffs |
| 10. teeth | 23. trays | 36. proofs | 49. geese |
| 11. children | 24. loaves | 37. asses | 50. fish, fishes |
| 12. bees | 25. oxen | 38. donkeys | |
| 13. men | 26. mice | 39. inches | |

2. **Countable:** lesson, hair (sometime an uncountable), dress, hole, shop

Uncountable: air, daytime, dirt, news, darkness, music, sleep, tennis, smoke, poetry, soup (sometime a countable), cream (sometimes a countable), butter, meat

3.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|------------|-----------------|-------------|
| 1. water | 4. clay | 7. smoke | 10. bananas |
| 2. roads | 5. shoes | 8. carelessness | |
| 3. intelligence | 6. brushes | 9. qualities | |

4.

- | | | |
|---------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. noise | 6. job | 11. Your hair is – it |
| 2. a light | 7. experience | 12. a piece of advice |
| 3. light | 8. any paper | 13. stone |
| 4. time | 9. doesn't | 14. a paper |
| 5. a wonderful time | 10. very good weather | 15. means |

5.

- | | | |
|-------------------|----------------------|------------------|
| 1. a paper knife | 5. money - lender | 9. bedroom |
| 2. wineglass | 6. washing - machine | 10. coal - miner |
| 3. match - box | 7. brick wall | |
| 4. writing - desk | 8. dinning - room | |

6.

- | | | |
|----------------|-------------------|----------------------|
| 1. fireman | 4. fiancée | 7. father – in – law |
| 2. plumber | 5. queen(empress) | 8. president |
| 3. bride/ wife | 6. bachelor | 9. duckling |
| | | 10. paediatrician |

7.

- | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. sister's house | 6. winter's morning |
| 2. stone's throw | 7. two hours' climb/few minutes' rest |
| 3. five pence's worth | 8. today's football results |
| 4. week's work | 9. butcher's |
| 5. book of mine | 10. hour and a half's discussion. |

8.

- | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. b | 2. c | 3. a | 4. d | 5. c |
| 6. a | 7. b | 8. d | 9. c | 10. c |
| 11. d | 12. a | 13. c | 14. b | 15. d |

9.

- | | | | |
|----------|----------|-----------|--------------|
| 1. were | 6. is | 11. don't | 16. has |
| 2. has | 7. are | 12. does | 17. are |
| 3. work | 8. have | 13. isn't | 18. isn't |
| 4. are | 9. likes | 14. works | 19. weren't |
| 5. wears | 10. is | 15. is | 20. confirms |

10.

- | | | |
|---------------|-------------|---------|
| 1. has | 6. remember | 11. is |
| 2. Are | 7. are | 12. are |
| 3. think – is | 8. is | 13. has |
| 4. are | 9. live | 14. is |
| 5. is | 10. is | 15. has |

11.

- | | |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. a train station | 6. the dining room carpet |
| 2. leather shoes | 7. the Marketing Director |
| 3. a five - year - old boy | 8. a glass medicine bottle |
| 4. working clothes | 9. shoe shops |
| 5. a factory inspector | 10. a credit card |

12.

- | | |
|------------------|---------------------|
| 1. road accident | 5. weather forecast |
| 2. room number | 6. newspaper editor |
| 3. seat belt | 7. shop window |
| 4. credit card | 8. frying pan |

13.

- | | | |
|---------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1. 450 pages | 5. 60 minutes | 9. 500- year |
| 2. ten page | 6. two - hour | 10. five days |
| 3. 20 - pound | 7. five courses | 11. six- mile |
| 4. 15 minutes | 8. two - year | 12. 15 - year-old |

14.

1. the policeman's mistake
2. the bottom of the bottle
3. Mr. Hill's daughter
4. the name of this street
5. our neighbors' gardens
6. Don and Mary's children
7. Helen's friend's wedding
8. the ground floor of the building
9. Mike's parents' car
10. the economic policy of the government/ the government's economic policy
11. the gangsters' money
12. the horse's tail
13. the house of the people we met in Spain
14. the arm of the chair
15. the monthly meeting of the club/the club's monthly meeting
16. Last year's work
17. the death of someone important
18. the middle of the night
19. my sisters' room
20. the door of the garage

15.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| 1. The doctor's dog | 11. Jame's father |
| 2. The ladies bags | 12. The boys' clothes |
| 3. A day's journey | 13. The boy's coat |
| 4. Aunt Sally's fan | 14. The women's club |
| 5. Mr. Smith's and Mr. Jones's books | 15. The Commander - in - Chief's orders |
| 6. My uncle John the butcher's shop | 16. My sister - in - law's name |
| 7. The people's votes | 17. Keats' poems |
| 8. A two weeks interval | 18. My children's toys |
| 9. The man's umbrella | 19. My father's car |
| 10. The men's clothes | 20. My parents' car |

Chương 2. ĐẠI TỪ

1.

- | | | | | |
|--------------|-------|---------|------------|----------|
| 1. them/they | 2. It | 3. me | 4. her | 5. We |
| 6. I | 7. It | 8. they | 9. them/me | 10. them |

2.

- | | | | | |
|---------|--------|-------|---------|--------|
| 1. It | 2. one | 3. It | 4. it | 5. One |
| 6. ones | 7. one | 8. It | 9. ones | 10. It |

3.

- | | | | | |
|------------|--------------|----------------|---------------|-----------|
| 1. her/her | 2. Hers | 3. his | 4. Yours/mine | 5. yours |
| 6. mine | 7. Our/their | 8. their/their | 9. mine | 10. yours |

4.

- | | | | |
|------------------------|-----------------------|----------|---------|
| 1. their | 2. his | 3. our | 4. mine |
| 5. Ours/theirs | 6. yours/my brother's | 7. their | 8. ours |
| 9. yours/ his sister's | 10. Ours | | |

5.

1. It's important to keep it somewhere safe.
2. It takes only one hour to travel from London to Brighton by train.
3. It's extremely difficult to understand some parts of King Lear.
4. It's clear to everyone but himself that he will fail.
5. It's won't be easy to find our way home.
6. It was my question that made him angry?
7. It's good chance to meet each other on this occasion.
8. Do you think it is difficult to explain to him what happened?
9. It is thought that he is the best doctor in this city.
10. It's stupid to fall asleep like that.

6.

- | | | | |
|---------------|----------------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1. myself | 2. himself (herself) | 3. herself | 4. yourself |
| 5. themselves | 6. yourself | 7. ourselves | 8. herself |
| 9. himself | 10. herself/herself | | |

7.

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|-------|-------|
| 1. b | 4. c | 7. b | 10. c | 13. a |
| 2. a | 5. b | 8. a | 11. c | 14. d |
| 3. a | 6. d | 9. c | 12. b | 15. b |

8.

- | | | | | |
|----------|-------------|---------|----------|----------|
| 1. whose | 2. of which | 3. who | 4. which | 5. which |
| 6. who | 7. who | 8. that | 9. whom | 10. that |

9.

- | | | | | |
|---------|----------|-----------|---------|-----------|
| 1. What | 2. Whose | 3. Who(m) | 4. Who | 5. Which |
| 6. Who | 7. What | 8. What | 9. What | 10. Whose |

1. What is a leaf?
2. Who is that handsome...
3. Who(m) can I give them to?
4. Who(m) are you going to Canada with?
5. What is she like?
6. Whose foot did he jump on?
7. Which cup must I drink out of?
8. What did he open the door with?
9. Who must ...?
10. What is Sweden like?

11.

- | | | | | |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|---------|
| 1. every | 2. all | 3. every | 4. all | 5. all |
| 6. every | 7. every | 8. all | 9. every | 10. all |

12.

- | | | |
|------------------------|----------------------|------------------------|
| 1. anything | 5. anything | 9. Anybody |
| 2. somebody-anybody | 6. something | 10. somebody-something |
| 3. any | 7. somebody-anybody | 11. Anybody |
| 4. something-something | 8. something-anybody | 12. some |

13.

- | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. nobody | 2. Everyone-no one |
| 3. anything | 4. somewhere-someone |
| 5. nothing | 6. anything |
| 7. everywhere-nothing | 8. nobody |
| 9. something | 10. Nobody-anything |

14.

- | | | | | |
|----------|---------|---------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. their | 2. his | 3. are | 4. Likes - they | 5. wants - they |
| 6. it | 7. have | 8. come | 9. has - their | 10. is |

15.

- | | | | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------|------------|-------------------|---------|
| 1. either | 2. none - all | 3. both | 4. neither - Both | 5. none |
| 6. each | 7. either | 8. neither | 9. none - all | |
| 10. Both - either - Neither | | | | |

Chương 3. TÍNH TỪ

1.

1. The marble table ...
2. The man with the gray hair is a history professor
3. The evening lecture on life in Tibet...
4. The salesman who waited on you sold a used car..
5. The girl who has the green dress on...
6. many books on photography
7. the third examination question...
8. The few people who came...
9. Those two steel knives that are in the drawer...
10. ... many rain clouds ...

2.

- | | | | | |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| 1. Each | 3. each | 5. every | 7. every | 9. Every |
| 2. Every | 4. every | 6. Each | 8. each | 10. Each |

3.

- | | | |
|------------|----------------|----------|
| 1. both | 3. either | 5. every |
| 2. Neither | 4. each/ every | 6. Whole |

4.

- | | | | |
|-----------|-------------|--------------|------------------|
| 1. little | 6. little | 11. little | 16. much |
| 2. many | 7. a little | 12. a little | 17. many |
| 3. much | 8. a few | 13. little | 18. much/ little |
| 4. many | 9. few | 14. a few | 19. much |
| 5. few | 10. little | 15. few | 20. many/ much |

5.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. a new telephone book | 6. her pretty black wool dress |
| 2. several very easy English books | 7. their children's first two names |
| 3. a very pretty green suit | 8. These five new one-dollar bills |
| 4. some very old Spanish pictures | 9. a young American student |
| 5. those two blue silk dresses | 10. Her daughter's first two names |

6.

1. On the whole I thought Gulftown was a nice place.
2. Our apartment by the water was really big.
3. The weather was much better than usual.
4. We were only a short distance from the beach.
5. The view from our balcony was absolutely magnificent.
6. If possible, I'd like to go there again some time.

7. People could swim in the sea because it was so warm.

8. Although expensive, the holiday was definitely worth it.

7.

- | | | |
|----------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1. central | 4. primary | 7. total |
| 2. similar | 5. healthy | 8. a living |
| 3. embarrassed | 6. satisfied | |

8.

- | | |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. present time | 2. anyone famous |
| 3. involved instructions | 4. company concerned |
| 5. people present | 6. something different |
| 7. man responsible | 8. people involved |

9.

1. It's a large green bath towel.
2. It's an inexpensive smoke alarm.
3. It's a stylish aluminium garden chair.
4. It's a small circular wall mirror.
5. It's a blue polyester sleeping bag.
6. It's a large wood-effect storage cupboard.
7. It's a traditional American cowboy hat.
8. It's a two-kilowatt oil-filled electric radiator.
9. It's a useful folding guest bed.
10. It's a new light grey computer workstation.

10.

1. The work we do is very tiring.
2. I couldn't find anything nice in the shops.
4. The nights are very cold.
5. The strong have a duty to care for the weak.
7. The view was very nice/absolutely magnificent.
9. I've got a brother (who is) good at tennis.
10. The child leads a rather lonely existence.
11. It was an expensive Japanese digital camera.
13. The good thing is that we all get on well together.

11.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|-------------------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. interesting | 6. astonishing | 11. annoying | 16. tiring |
| 2. exciting | 7. amused | 12. depressed | 17. fascinating |
| 3. embarrassing | 8. terrifying; shocked | 13. exhausting | 18. excited |
| 4. embarrassed | 9. bored; boring | 14. confusing | 19. thrilling |
| 5. amazed | 10. boring; interesting | 15. frightened | 20. puzzled |

12.

- | | | | |
|--------------|----------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. surprised | 2. interesting | 3. boring | 4. excited |
| 5. worried | 6. tiring | 7. frightened | 8. bored |
| 9. tired | 10. exciting | 11. annoyed | 12. frightening |

13.

- | | | | |
|------------|------------|--------------|------------|
| 1. covered | 2. made | 3. minded | 4. looking |
| 5. lighted | 6. tight | 7. free | 8. hearted |
| 9. deep | 10. witted | 11. distance | 12. Famous |

14.

- | | | |
|------------------|---------------------|------------------|
| 1. ten-ton | 4. 4,000-year-old | 7. 2,000-word |
| 2. fifteen-piece | 5. one-litre | 8. one-egg |
| 3. twelve-man | 6. thirty-five-hour | 9. five-minute |
| | | 10. three-course |

15.

1. When I was on holiday, it rained the whole week.
2. I've lived here most of my life.
3. Your house is bigger than ours.
4. I've forgotten the name of my doctor.
5. We've had little warning of the changes.
6. So many people have applied for the job.
7. I met an old friend of yours at a party.
8. Neither of the chairs is/are comfortable.
9. Every hotel was full.
10. My holiday starts in ten days' time.

Chương 4. TRẠNG TỪ (ADVERBS)

1.

1. I never watch quiz shows.
2. Someone has just been telling me the news.
3. I usually have to work late.
4. I don't always get up so early.
5. We have recently moved house.
6. You'll definitely pass the exam, but I probably won't.
7. The bus is usually a few minutes late.
8. But I seldom do have a day off.

9. We're just getting ready to go out.

10. I've been carefully checking all these figures.

2.

- | | | | | |
|-------------|-----------------|-----------|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. tomorrow | 3. happily/here | 5. easily | 7. automatically | 9. a bit/a lot |
| 2. clearly | 4. slowly | 6. here | 8. much | 10. a lot/a bit |

3.

- | | | | | |
|----------|-----------|------------|---------|-----------|
| 1. badly | 3. good | 5. usually | 7. hard | 9. lately |
| 2. well | 4. hardly | 6. well | 8. fast | 10. early |

4.

1. outside your office at 2 pm tomorrow.
2. beautifully in the concert at the Opera house.
3. eagerly every week.
4. always telephones me in the morning.
5. at this store for three weeks.
6. doesn't ever travel by plane.
7. never arrives at the meeting on time.
8. to the library next week.
9. to Japan on Saturday for a week.
10. in the garden yesterday.

5.

- | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. well in yesterday's game. | 5. at a cafe, actually. |
| 2. early most days. | 6. soundly the whole time. |
| 3. here soon. | 7. thoughtlessly sometimes |
| 4. to a barbecue tomorrow. | 8. on time most day, surprisingly |

6.

- | | | | | |
|-----------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. daily | 3. freely | 5. well-dressed | 7. well | 9. nearly |
| 2. highly | 4. good-looking | 6. lately | 8. hardly | 10. most |

7.

- | | | | |
|-------------|-----------------|-------------|----------------|
| 1. happily | 3. long | 5. suitably | 7. beautifully |
| 2. probably | 4. dramatically | 6. high | |

8.

1. I'll soon be on holiday.
2. I've just been looking at them.
3. I've finally made up my mind.
4. She now spends all her time on the golf course.
5. I immediately rang the fire brigade.

9.

- | | |
|----------------------------|--|
| 1. still, long | 3. no longer, already, after |
| 2. yet, yet, long, already | 4. any longer, still, still, afterwards, far |

10.

1. The old man doesn't often go out of the house.
2. I'm always pleased to see you.
3. We normally/ usually/generally go into town on the bus.
4. You can sometimes/occasionally get nice things really cheap in the market.
5. I've often/frequently stayed late at the office.
6. The work I do is never boring.
7. We don't often see policemen on the streets./We don't see policemen on the streets very often.
8. The program sometimes/occasionally doesn't work properly.

11.

1. buys a newspaper every day.
2. seldom goes to the theatre.
3. has often thought about emigrating.
4. cooks a meal most evenings.
5. will never/won't ever get married.

12.

1. But they're fairly similar.
2. It matters a lot
3. This one is easily the best.
4. He behaved extremely impolitely.
5. I'm half convinced by your arguments.
6. Are you really running a dating agency?
7. He isn't very old.
8. I feel much happier now.
9. We enjoyed it very much
10. I'm not at all cold./I'm not cold at all.
11. She's rather nice.
12. Is it any better than the old one?

13.

1. I had quite an argument with him.
2. She's got such a nice personality.
3. He's a bit of an idiot.
4. There's too small a space.

5. We've got a fairly strong team.
6. It's rather a difficult question.
7. It's quite a big job.
8. We've walked quite a long way.
9. I haven't seen you for such a long time.
10. I couldn't do as good a drawing as that.

14.

- | | | |
|------------------|---------------------|-----------------|
| 1. terribly | 5. publicly | 8. securely |
| 2. angrily | 6. enthusiastically | 9. unexpectedly |
| 3. happily | 7. reasonably | 10. Well |
| 4. automatically | | |

15.

1. has she travelled more than fifty miles from her village.
2. did he think about having a holiday abroad.
3. had he started driving his new car when he had an accident.
4. did I realize how dangerous the situation had been.
5. does he pay in an orchestra.
6. would he be allowed to set foot in their house.
7. are the designs reproduced exactly as illustrated.
8. will Miss Rose be offered the job.
9. have I heard such nonsense.
10. had we walked in the door than the phone rang.
11. should a doctor break his confidence.
12. was Tom late, but he had left all his books behind.
13. you need any help, just call.
14. ran a small stream.
15. was I show how to operate the machine.

Chương 5. SO SÁNH TÍNH TỪ VÀ TRẠNG TỪ (COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS)

1.

- | | | |
|----------------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| 1. as much as | 5. as fast as | 9. as long as |
| 2. as comfortable as | 6. as often as | 10. as expensive as |
| 3. as quietly as | 7. as well as | 11. as soon as |
| 4. as quickly as | 8. as exciting as | 12. as strong as |

510

2.

- | | | | |
|---------------|--------------------|------------|----------------|
| 1. faster | 2. more colourful | 3. better | 4. prettier |
| 5. the better | 6. less impressive | 7. much | 8. more famous |
| 9. taller | 10. older | 11. easier | 12. More |
| 13. better | 14. worse | 15. more | |

3.

- | | | |
|-----------------|----------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. the youngest | 2. better | 3. as expensive |
| 4. the cheapest | 5. more slowly | 6. farther/further |
| 7. the worst | 8. the most boring | 9. more beautifully |
| 10. less angry | 11. more comfortable | 12. more quickly, faster |

4.

- | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. harder and harder | 7. more and more nervous |
| 2. more and more confused | 8. worse and worse |
| 3. more and more difficult | 9. better and better |
| 4. more and more complicated | 10. heavier and heavier |
| 5. more and more | 11. more and more expensive |
| 6. longer and longer | 12. bigger and bigger |

5.

- | | | | |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| 1. as | 2. more | 3. as | 4. more |
| 5. as | 6. more | 7. more | 8. than |
| 9. than | 10. less | 11. than | 12. than |
| 13. more | 14. as | 15. less | |

6.

- | | |
|--------------------------|---|
| 1. The more... the more | 2. The more difficult it is, the harder |
| 3. than you | 4. tougher than |
| 5. the most | 6. by far the best |
| 7. much/far/a lot taller | 8. like the one |
| 9. as mine | 10. as beautiful as |
| 11. like her mother | 12. the same price as |
| 13. as intelligent as | 14. style as Bob's |
| 15. colour as mine | |

7.

1. Peter can't run as fast as Jill (can).
2. This journey didn't last as long as I thought it would.
3. I arrived later than I expected.
4. You'll have to work harder/faster.
5. I have an elder/older brother.
6. Martin didn't think the first part of the film was as interesting.

7. Paul has been working less carefully than before.

8. This is the earliest train.

9. This café is the nearest.

10. Can't you offer a better price?

8.

1. C 2. B 3. A 4. D 5. D 6. C 7. B 8. A 9. C 10. B

9.

1. better 2. most 3. latest 4. happier 5. deeper

6. hottest 7. better 8. further 9. best 10. worst

10.

1. I've never eaten a better meal.

2. Fish costs just as much as meat in some countries.

3. I've never had such a good time.

4. The more you run, the fitter you will get.

5. Wednesday is the earliest the doctor can see you, I'm afraid.

6. I must have a rest, I can't go (on) any further.

7. Home computers aren't as expensive as they used to be.

8. Sue knows more Italian than I do.

9. Learning to drive isn't as difficult as/is easier than I thought it would be.

10. John isn't a better skater than Barbara.

11.

1. the nicest room

2. the most beautiful girl

3. the happiest day of

4. the most intelligent student in

5. the most boring speech

6. the largest company in

7. the wettest month of

8. the most delicious meal

9. the most carefully of

10. the best players in

11. the most famous teams in

12. the quickest of

13. the worst experiences of

14. the most valuable painting in

15. the busiest time of

12.

1. This hotel is the most expensive.

2. The sun is hotter than the moon.

3. You are more patient than I am/me.

4. The table/ the desk is as big as the desk/the table.

5. Prices just get higher and higher.

6. The skirt is more expensive than the dress.

7. This crossword is the least difficult.

8. They were getting more and more excited

512

9. It's the most romantic story I've ever read.

10. A bus is less expensive than a taxi.

13.

1. cost less than mine

2. are better at maths than

3. is a little taller than

4. was growing angrier and

5. did her

6. isn't/wasn't as good as

7. driven along such a bumpy

8. more you eat, the fatter

9. was the best he could

10. was just as difficult as

14.

1. than me/ I am

2. than him/ than he does

3. as me/ as I do

4. than us/ than we were

5. than her/ than she is

6. as them/ as they have been

7. as you/ as you do

8. than me/ I did

15.

1. Their children don't behave as well as ours do.

2. Our garden isn't as large as theirs.

3. He earns as much in a week as I do in a month.

4. The food they served wasn't as nice as I expected it to be.

5. I didn't have as much champagne as Henry.

6. The party didn't go on as long as I thought it would.

7. There weren't as many people at the party as he anticipated.

8. Sheila didn't behave as dreadfully as she usually does.

9. She didn't wear as much jewelry as she usually does.

10. I don't see as much of her as I used to.

Chương 6. ĐỘNG TỪ (VERBS)

1.

trans = transitive; *int* = intransitive; *inf* = infinitive; *part* = participle; *ger* = gerund

1. *cleaning*: trans, ger

2. *talk*: int, inf

3. *mind*: trans, inf; *turning*: int, ger

4. *finish*: trans, inf

5. *working*: int, ger; *getting*: int, present part

6. *cleaning*: trans, ger

7. *studying*: int, present part; *do*: int, inf

8. *written*: trans, past part
 9. *dismiss*: trans, inf
 10. *swim*: int, inf
- 2.
- | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. must | 6. Can/Will/Could/Would (...please) |
| 2. can; can't | 7. Does |
| 3. Would/Could/Will/Can | 8. shouldn't |
| 4. Is | 9. should |
| 5. shouldn't/mustn't | 10. can't; can |
- 3.
- | | |
|--------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. weren't able to | 2. is able to |
| 3. was able to | 4. Are you able to |
| 5. was able to | 6. am not able to |
| 7. wasn't able to | 8. Aren't you able to |
| 9. are able to | 10. Weren't the students able to |
- 4.
- | | |
|--------------------|------------------|
| 1. mustn't | 2. must/ mustn't |
| 3. doesn't have to | 4. mustn't |
| 5. don't have to | 6. don't have to |
| 7. don't have to | 8. don't have to |
| 9. mustn't | 10. mustn't |
- 5.
1. ... should take an aspirin.
 2. ... should look for another job.
 3. ... should go away for a few days.
 4. ... shouldn't use her car so much.
 5. ... should put some pictures on the walls.
 6. ... shouldn't drive so fast.
 7. ... shouldn't go to bed so late.
 8. ... should take a photograph.
- 6.
1. Could I possibly leave the office an hour earlier than usual?
 2. You couldn't possibly lend me your guitar for the evening, could you?
 3. I was wondering if you could help me carry a cupboard upstairs?
 4. Could you move your car?
 5. I was wondering if we could leave early today.
 6. Do you think you could do some shopping for me if you have some time?
 7. Do you think I could look at your newspaper?
 8. I couldn't possibly use your phone, could I?

9. Could you possibly give me a lift into town?

10. Could I have the bill ready by 11 am?

7.

1. She may be ill.
2. Her train may be late.
3. She may not know the way.
4. She might think it's on another day.
5. There may be a traffic jam.
6. She may feel the salary is low.
7. She might not want the job after all.
8. She may not be feeling well today.
9. She might have a good reason.

8.

1. The key must be returned after use.
2. Books mustn't be kept for more than two weeks.
3. This computer mustn't be used by students.
4. All lights must be turned off by midnight.
5. Bags must be left with the librarian.
6. Copies mustn't be made without permission.
7. This door mustn't be left open.

9.

1. I'll phone you next week.
2. At the age of nine he still couldn't read.
3. We must leave on time tomorrow morning.
4. Can you come with me tonight?
5. You shouldn't work so hard.
6. They might/could be here soon.
7. Shall we go and see a film tonight?
8. He won't give me answers.
9. May/Can I smoke in here?
10. You mustn't tell him any of this ...

10.

- | | |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. used to dream | 9. used to live |
| 2. am not used to speaking | 10. am not used to eating |
| 3. get used to living | 11. used to have |
| 4. used to stop | 12. used to be |
| 5. use to work | 13. didn't use to have – used to be |
| 6. am not used to drinking | 14. get used to living |
| 7. has got used to being | 15. aren't used to driving |
| 8. used to have | |

11.

- | | | | | |
|-----------|------------|------------|--------------------|------------|
| 1. buying | 2. to go | 3. to rent | 4. driving/talking | 5. to turn |
| 6. being | 7. to give | 8. playing | 9. cleaning | 10. drink |

12.

- | | | | | |
|------------------|--------------|------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1. to buy | 2. to arrive | 3. moving | 4. to feed | 5. to take |
| 6. to go fishing | 7. to meet | 8. jogging | 9. to arrive | 10. to give |

13.

- | | | |
|------------------------|---------------------|------------------------|
| 1. to have started | 2. to be know | 3. having been greeted |
| 4. to have been raised | 5. to be restricted | 6. being permitted |
| 7. having suffered | 8. hawking | |

14.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--------------------|
| 1. ask me to leave | 2. Taking |
| 3. Try not to keep interrupting | 4. my interrupting |
| 5. seems to have left | 6. used to driving |
| 7. not let their children watch | 8. losing |
| 9. to learn | 10. to be standing |
| 11. telling | 12. going |

15.

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. D | 2. C | 3. B | 4. B | 5. D |
| 6. A | 7. A | 8. C | 9. A | 10. D |

16.

- | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. C | 2. B | 3. A | 4. B | 5. C |
| 6. A | 7. A | 8. B | 9. D | 10. A |
| 11. D | 12. B | 13. C | 14. C | 15. D |
| 16. D | 17. B | 18. B | 19. D | 20. D |

Chương 7. GIỚI TỪ (PREPOSITIONS)

1.

- | | | |
|----------------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1. to, off | 5. in, on | 8. in, at |
| 2. between, opposite | 6. against, in | 9. at, in |
| 3. in, in | 7. on, over | 10. into, onto |
| 4. on, near | | |

2.

- | | | | |
|-------|--------|---------------|----------------------------|
| 1. at | 7. in | 13. at | 19. beside/next to, on, on |
| 2. at | 8. in | 14. in, in | 20. on, opposite |
| 3. on | 9. on | 15. on | 21. on, in, above, under |
| 4. at | 10. at | 16. on | 22. in, between |
| 5. in | 11. at | 17. under, on | 23. behind |
| 6. in | 12. on | 18. in/among | 24. below, above |

3.

- | | | | | |
|-------|-------|--------------|------------|--------------------|
| 1. on | 5. on | 9. in | 13. at, in | 17. in, for |
| 2. at | 6. at | 10. on | 14. on | 18. at, till |
| 3. in | 7. in | 11. in, till | 15. at, in | 19. in, in, at, in |
| 4. in | 8. at | 12. during | 16. in | 20. in, in |

4.

- | | | | |
|----------|----------|-----------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. from | 5. for | 9. at | 13. with |
| 2. at | 6. for | 10. by | 14. for, for <i>or</i> about, about |
| 3. by | 7. at | 11. by/at | 15. by, by |
| 4. about | 8. about | 12. at | 16. by |

5.

- | | | | |
|---------|----------|------------|-----------------|
| 1. with | 5. about | 9. for | 13. by, about |
| 2. at | 6. from | 10. at, at | 14. with |
| 3. for | 7. from | 11. from | 15. from, about |
| 4. from | 8. by | 12. with | 16. from, for |

6.

- | | | | | |
|--------|------------|-------|-----------|----------|
| 1. off | 2. At | 3. in | 4. out of | 5. under |
| 6. by | 7. without | 8. on | 9. to | 10. for |

7.

- | | | | |
|---------------|-----------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. in bed | 2. on time | 3. in all | 4. out of reach |
| 5. by chance | 6. out of doors | 7. at present | 8. in common |
| 9. on the way | 10. on business | | |

8.

- | | | | |
|---------|---------------|-------------|--------|
| 1. till | 4. throughout | 7. from | 10. by |
| 2. from | 5. until | 8. prior to | |
| 3. for | 6. over | 9. during | |

9.

- | | | |
|------------------|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. instead of | 5. on behalf of | 9. Because of |
| 2. Regardless of | 6. Apart from | 10. According to |
| 3. In cave of | 7. As for | |
| 4. in favour | 8. by means of | |

10.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|----------------|--------------------|------------|
| 1. in two | 3. out of work | 5. in difficulties | 7. in pain |
| 2. without a doubt | 4. by sight | 6. by heart | 8. on sale |

11.

- | | | | | |
|---------|----------|----------------|----------|------------|
| 1. in | 6. since | 11. till/until | 16. for | 21. during |
| 2. on | 7. for | 12. in | 17. at | 22. on |
| 3. from | 8. on | 13. about | 18. from | 23. in |
| 4. for | 9. with | 14. for | 19. till | 24. for |
| 5. in | 10. for | 15. in | 20. at | 25. after |

12.

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|--------|--------|
| 1. at | 5. at | 9. in | 13. in |
| 2. on | 6. in | 10. on | 14. on |
| 3. at | 7. at | 11. in | 15. on |
| 4. on | 8. At | 12. at | 16. on |

13.

- | | | | |
|-------|---------------|----------------|-------|
| 1. by | 2. until/till | 3. By the time | 4. at |
| 5. by | 6. until/till | | |

14.

- | | | | |
|------------------|-----------|---------------|---------|
| 1. within | 2. after | 3. afterwards | 4. from |
| 5. until/till/to | 6. within | 7. after | |

15.

- | | | | |
|-----------|----------|-------------|--------------|
| 1. up | 4. along | 7. in | 10. onto/off |
| 2. down | 5. past | 8. At | 11. from |
| 3. across | 6. into | 9. off/onto | 12. to |

16.

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------------|--------|
| 1. on | 4. at | 7. along/on | 10. on |
| 2. by | 5. by | 8. in/at | 11. on |
| 3. on | 6. in | 9. on | 12. by |

17.

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|--------|
| 1. on | 4. on | 7. By | 10. in |
| 2. on | 5. on | 8. on | 11. on |
| 3. by | 6. in | 9. in | |

18.

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. C | 2. A | 3. B | 4. D | 5. A |
| 6. B | 7. D | 8. D | 9. A | 10. D |

19.

- | | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|----------------------|
| 1. out of tune | 5. at most | 9. in captivity |
| 2. by heart | 6. out of order | 10. for safe-keeping |
| 3. on the whole | 7. on average | 11. in charge |
| 4. for a change | 8. in common | 12. on good terms |

20.

- | | | |
|-----------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. cause of | 6. attitude to/towards | 11. invitation to |
| 2. advantage of | 7. demand for | 12. damage to |
| 3. solution to/for | 8. cheque for | 13. difficultly with |
| 4. increase in | 9. contact with | 14. need for |
| 5. difference between | 10. reason for | 15. connection between |

21.

- 1) excited about the trip to the zoo.

- 2) afraid of the dark.
3. bored with the video.
4. interested in computers.
5. surprised at/ by the new.
6. proud of the/ their children.
7. annoyed with her/ the children.
8. satisfied with their pay increase.
9. nervous of speaking in font of the crowd.
10. disappointed with the loss.

22.

- | | | | |
|---------|---------|---------|-------------|
| 1. by | 4. like | 7. with | 10. except |
| 2. with | 5. on | 8. for | 11. without |
| 3. for | 6. of | 9. as | 12. by |

23.

- | | | | |
|----------------|---------------|---------------|------------|
| 1. out of work | 3. for sale | 5. at the end | 7. in time |
| 2. on time | 4. on average | 6. at last | 8. at once |

24.

- | | | | | | |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. d | 6. a | 11. d | 16. d | 21. b | 26. a |
| 2. c | 7. d | 12. c | 17. b | 22. a | 27. a |
| 3. b | 8. d | 13. a | 18. a | 23. d | 28. b |
| 4. c | 9. d | 14. d | 19. b | 24. c | 29. d |
| 5. b | 10. C | 15 a | 20. d | 25. c | 30. c |

25.

- | | | |
|----------------------|----------------|-------------|
| 1. with | 11. with - for | 21. in |
| 2. of | 12. about | 22. to |
| 3. to - to | 13. at/ by | 23. of - of |
| 4. with | 14. with/ by | 24. on |
| 5. with | 15. about | 25. of |
| 6. to | 16. for | 26. with |
| 7. about | 17. of | 27. of |
| 8. of | 18. for | 28. of |
| 9. about | 19. of | 29. in |
| 10. for/ about -with | 20. of - of | 30. of |

Chương 8. CỤM ĐỘNG TỪ (PHRASAL VERBS)

1.

- | | | | |
|---------|---------|-----------|------------|
| 1. wash | 2. look | 3. set | 4. called |
| 5. try | 6. fill | 7. turned | 8. dropped |

2.

- | | | | |
|---------|-----------|------------|---------|
| 1. for | 2. up | 3. against | 4. on |
| 5. in | 6. across | 7. round | 8. with |
| 9. into | 10. to | | |

3.

- | | | | | |
|--------------|-------------|-------------|-----------------|--------------|
| 1. took off | 2. ran into | 3. put off | 4. thought over | 5. went out |
| 6. stood out | 7. set out | 8. sold out | 9. saw to | 10. worn out |

4.

- | | | | |
|---------|--------|--------|---------|
| 1. at | 2. for | 3. to | 4. down |
| 5. over | 6. for | 7. up | 8. on |
| 9. up | 10. up | 11. to | 12. out |

5.

1. Brian takes after his mother.
2. We've run out of food!
3. Mike and Tom don't get on well with each other.
4. Jean is very good at dealing with people.
5. The handlebars on my bike need seeing to.
6. Julia was very ill, but she's got over it now.
7. What exactly are you getting at?
8. Paul's new school didn't live up to his expectations.

6.

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. C | 2. D | 3. C | 4. C |
| 5. A | 6. B | 7. D | 8. C |

7.

1. Jack always turns up late for work.
2. Look up their number in the phone directory.
3. I'm putting money aside to buy a new bike.
4. After a few days the pain in Dave's leg wore off.
5. I'm afraid the match has been called off.
6. The government refused to give in to the demands of the terrorists.
7. We offered them \$250,000 for the house but they turned our offer/turned it down.
8. We can put you up if you come to Cambridge.

9. I can't work out how much the whole trip will cost.

10. A large silver limousine drew up outside the house.

8.

1. Sorry, but I haven't got round to fixing your bike yet.

2. Oh bother, we have run out of milk.

3. It took me a long time to get over my illness.

4. Julie must have grown out of biting her nails.

5. I think we've come up with an answer to the problem.

6. I don't think I feel up to playing football today.

7. Ann is someone I really look up to.

8. I must see about having the kitchen painted.

9. Please help me. I'm counting on you.

10. Peter takes after his father.

9.

1. made up

2. broke down

3. sent for

4. blew up

5. cut off

6. carried on

7. brought up

8. did without

9. left out

10. help up

11. fell for

12. hung up

10.

1. B

6. C

11. D

16. A

21. C

2. A

7. A

12. A

17. B

22. A

3. C

8. D

13. B

18. B

23. B

4. D

9. B

14. C

19. C

24. D

5. B

10. C

15. D

20. D

25. C

Chương 9. LIÊN TỪ (CONJUNCTIONS)

1.

1. but

2. Unless

3. that

4. till (until)

5. until (before)

6. (al)though

7. if

8. unless

9. because

10. or

2.

1. My brother is well but my sister is ill./Though my brother is well, my sister is ill.

2. He sells mangoes and oranges/as well as oranges.

3. He did not succeed though he worked hard/He worked hard but he did not succeed.

4. Tom and Mary played well./Both Tom and Mary played well./Tom as well as Mary played well.

5. I honour him, because/as/since he is a brave man.
6. You may go but I will stay.
7. Tom reads for pleasure; but Mary (reads) for profit.
8. We decided to set out, though it was late.
9. He is rich but not happy, /Though he is rich, he is not happy.
10. He must be tired, because (as,since) he was waslkd twelve miles.

3.

1. I was raining and I felt cold so I went indoors.
2. He loves her and she loves him, so they are getting married.
3. I can paint the lounge or (I can) clear the fridge, but I can't do both.
4. Mr Downes seemed poor, but in fact he had a lot of money.
5. Tim is sleeping, so you can't speak to him at the moment.
6. The postman banged the gate and shouted at Lulu, so she bit him.
7. My mother wanted me to become a doctor but I didn't.
8. Nick didn't understand the lesson, so he couldn't do the homework.
9. A bee flew into the classroom this morning and (it) stung me.
10. You mustn't out this in the washing machine, you must wash it by hand or (you must) dry-clean it.
11. We lay in the sun and we got hot, so we swam and we cooled off.
12. Louis broke her watch, so she borrowed mine.
13. We might go to Spain or France.
14. Mike could speak French and Spanish, but he couldn't write them.
15. We went to the museum but it was closed, so we went to the cinema.

4.

- | | | | | |
|------------|-------------|----------------|----------------|-------------|
| 1. so that | 2. Although | 3. in order to | 4. because | 5. but |
| 6. if | 7. so | 8. unless | 9. in spite of | 10. In case |

5.

1. I'll love you until I die.
2. I must get to the post office before it closes.
3. My leg hurts when I walk.
4. Mark heard the news on the radio while he was driving home.
5. We're going to tidy up after everyone's gone.
6. It started to rain as soon as she had left.
7. You have to wait until the light changes to green.
8. I've been sad since you left me.
9. Think of me while I'm away.
10. Come back before I forget you.

6.

- | | | | | |
|-----------|----------|----------|----------|----------------|
| 1. before | 2. while | 3. as if | 4. since | 5. when |
| 6. since | 7. until | 8. after | 9. when | 10. as soon as |

7.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|---------------|------------|------------|
| 1. after | 2. as soon as | 3. to | 4. since |
| 5. but | 6. so that | 7. because | 8. in case |
| 9. until | 10. although | 11. if | 12. so |
| 13. in spite of | | | |

8.

- | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| 1. As a result | 2. Furthermore |
| 3. however | 4. In other words |
| 5. On the contrary | 6. After all |
| 7. for example | |

9.

1. Mary came to class late because her motorbike had a puncture.
2. Although Nick used to smoke, he seems to be in good health.
3. No one thought our team would win the championship, but we won by a large margin.
4. He was standing in the shadow, so I couldn't see his face clearly.
5. We couldn't get tickets in spite of queuing for an hour.
6. Both Tom and Ann were late.
7. You won't learn to use a keyboard properly unless you practice.
8. The man spoke very slowly so that I could understand what he said.
9. We can leave either today or tomorrow.
10. You can use my car as long as you drive carefully.

Chương 10. ARTICLES (MẠO TỪ)

1.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|-----------------------|-------------------|-----------------|
| 1. A/a | 2. the/the | 3. the/ the | 4. a/the |
| 5. a/nil/a | 6. the/nil | 7. nil/a | 8. The/the/the |
| 9. nil/nil/nil | 10. nil/the | 11. the | 12. the/an |
| 13. nil/nil/nil | 14. The/the/nil | 15. the/nil | 16. a/an |
| 17. a/an/the | 18. nil/the/nil | 19. nil/an/nil | 20. nil/the |
| 21. nil/the/nil | 22. nil/nil | 23. nil/nil/nil | 24. The/a/the |
| 25. a/nil/a/nil | 26. nil/the | 27. the/the/a/nil | 28. nil/the/nil |
| 29. nil/nil/nil | 30. nil/nil/the/a/the | 31. nil/nil | 32. a/a/a |
| 33. a/a | 34. nil/an | 35. the/the | |

nil: không dùng mạo từ

2.

- | | | | |
|-------------|---------------|------------|-------------|
| 1. Language | 2. experience | 3. an iron | 4. Play |
| 5. a tin | 6. work | 7. Charity | 8. a beauty |
| 9. law | 10. a speech | | |

3.

- | | | | |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1) – the d) | 2) – the e) | 3) – i) | 4) – the j) |
| 5) – h) | 6) – the b) | 7) – the a) | 8) – the g) |
| 9) – c) | 10) – f) | | |

4.

- | | | |
|------------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. the | 2. the – the | 3. Ø |
| 4. The | 5. Ø | 6. the |
| 7. the – the – Ø | 8. The | 9. the – the |
| 10. Ø – Ø – the | | |

5.

- | | | | | |
|--------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. A | 6. the | 11. the | 16. the | 21. the |
| 2. a | 7. the | 12. the | 17. a | 22. the |
| 3. a | 8. a | 13. a | 18. the | 23. the |
| 4. a | 9. the | 14. The | 19. the | 24. The |
| 5. The | 10. The | 15. the | 20. an | |

6.

- | | | |
|---|-------------------|--------------------|
| 1. at the shop | 6. to school | 11. at college |
| 2. in town | 7. to church | 12. in the factory |
| 3. at home | 8. to work | 13. to the pub |
| 4. in bed | 9. to the library | 14. at sea |
| 5. in (the) hospital –
to the hospital | 10. in prison | 15. to the cinema |

7.

1. the football – television – football – the news – the radio
2. dogs – the dogs
3. cars – pollution – cars – aeroplanes – the pollution – the atmosphere
4. the birds – birds – wildlife
5. sports – basketball – skiing
6. music – The music
7. breakfast – breakfast
8. Thanksgiving – November – Christmas
9. the rich – the poor – the unemployment
10. history – the history – museums – old buildings
11. the guitar – the piano
12. the telescope – the telescope – astronomy

8.

1. the British Museum
2. Waterloo Station
3. The Thames
4. The Grand Hotel – Baker Street
5. Harrison’s
6. Hyde Park
7. IBM – British Telecom
8. The Houses of Parliament
9. Buckingham Palace
10. Everest
11. the State – New York
12. The Statue of Liberty – New York harbour
13. West London
14. Cambridge University
15. the Metropolitan Museum of Art – Broadway – Macy’s department store

9.

- | | | | |
|--------|-----------|------------|---------|
| 1. Ø | 2. Ø | 3. the | 4. the |
| 5. Ø | 6. The/ Ø | 7. an | 8. a |
| 9. the | 10. the | 11. Ø/ the | 12. Ø |
| 13. a | 14. a | 15. Ø | 16. the |
| 17. Ø | 18. the | 19. Ø | 20. Ø |

10.

- | | | | |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| 1 – a | 2 – a | 3 – the | 4 – the |
| 5 – Ø | 6 – the | 7 – Ø | 8 – the |
| 9 – the | 10 – a | 11 – The | 12 – the |
| 13 – the | 14 – the | 15 – The | 16 – Ø |
| 17 – the | 18 – the | | |

11.

- | | | | |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| 1 – the | 2 – Ø | 3 – the | 4 – the |
| 5 – the | 6 – Ø | 7 – Ø | 8 – Ø |
| 9 – Ø | 10 – Ø | 11 – The | 12 – the |
| 13 – Ø | 14 – the | 15 – the | 16 – the |
| 17 – the | 18 – the | 19 – Ø | 20 – the |

12.

1 C	11 C	21 D	31 B	41 C
2 C	12 D	22 B	32 D	42 A
3 B	13 B	23 A	33 C	43 B
4 B	14 D	24 B	34 C	44 A
5 C	15 B	25 A	35 D	45 A
6 D	16 C	26 B	36 A	46 D
7 B	17 C	27 A	37 C	47 C
8 B	18 A	28 A	38 C	48 C
9 C	19 B	29 C	39 D	49 B
10 A	20 D	30 C	40 C	50 D

Chương 11. THÌ (TENSES)

1.

1. is watching / is reading / is doing / is playing
2. goes / does not go / likes / prefers
3. go / am going / takes / costs
4. is taking / is coming
5. lives / come / see / does not bother / knocks
6. are watching / are enjoying (enjoy diễn tả hành động đang xem một cách thích thú)/ do not understand.
7. is putting / sees / hates
8. speak / come
9. is making / makes
10. does / am doing

2.

- | | | |
|---------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| 1. see | 6. smell | 11. looks |
| 2. taste | 7. don't know | 12. is listening |
| 3. Are you enjoying | 8. are you feeling | 13. aren't looking |
| 4. are you thinking | 9. are you smelling | 14. weighs |
| 5. has | 10. comes | 15. is being |

3.

- | | | |
|------------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1. are you doing | 7. appears | 13. 'm seeing |
| 2. 'm looking | 8. is thinking | 14. is taking |
| 3. think | 9. is | 15. is being |
| 4. looks | 10. looks | 16. wants |
| 5. doesn't fit | 11. weighs | 17. see |
| 6. agree | 12. hope | |

4.

1. was she doing / arrived / was writing
2. was having (had) / was getting (got)
3. began / was studying
4. heard / got / left
5. asked / saw
6. was leaving / stopped
7. was crossing / raced
8. were just leaving / rang
9. heard / sent
10. went / were sleeping / looked / decided
11. arrived / was cleaning (cleaned)
12. worked / was studying
13. was writing / fell
14. suggested / were fighting
15. was just closing noticed
16. were fighting / ordered
17. was coming / saw / was climbing
18. was working / opened
19. opened / saw
20. struck/ were sheltering / had / were / came.

5.

- | | | |
|------------------|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. have worked | 4. have looked | 7. has learned |
| 2. have lived | 5. has happened | 8. has stopped |
| 3. Have you been | 6. has cooked | 9. have cooked |
| | | 10. has burnt |

6.

- | | |
|---|------------------------|
| 1. has taught | 6. am / have forgotten |
| 2. think / is knocking | 7. is sitting |
| 3. pays | 8. has worked |
| 4. has studied (6 months now= 6 months up to now) | 9. has done |
| 5. rains | 10. have made |

7.

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. B | 3. C | 5. B | 7. C | 9. B |
| 2. B | 4. D | 6. A | 8. D | 10. D |

8.

1. have not seen

2. have done
3. has not been / have waited (have been waiting)
4. have tried (have been trying) / have not succeeded
5. have lived (have been living) / have just decided
6. have already drunk / sat (have been sitting)
7. have waited (have been waiting) / has not come
8. has rested (has been resting) / has been
9. H. long have you learned (H. long have you been learning)
10. has slept (has been sleeping)

9.

- | | |
|----------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. did (had done) | 6. had gone / had lost |
| 2. had done | 7. died / had been |
| 3. was | 8. had not seen |
| 4. sat / rested | 9. had learned |
| 5. had gone / wanted | 10. found / had been damaged |

10.

- | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. told / had given | 6. had been attacked |
| 2. was / had had | 7. had / had spent |
| 3. came / had planted | 8. had made / was considered |
| 4. was | 9. wanted / had arrived |
| 5. had been / came | 10. had been treated / resigned |

11.

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. A | 3. C | 5. C | 7. B | 9. C |
| 2. A | 4. A | 6. C | 8. D | 10. A |

12.

- | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. will have written | 6. will have stopped |
| 2. will have left | 7. will have travelled |
| 3. will have met | 8. shall/will have been working |
| 4. will have finished | 9. shall have finished |
| 5. will have started | 10. wil have been staying |

13.

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1- D | 3. B | 5. D | 7. D | 9. B |
| 2. D | 4. D | 6. C | 8. C | 10. C |

14.

1. Have you been, couldn't, broke, had
2. Have you visited, have been, haven't seen
3. have burnt, phoned, forgot, have already eaten
4. bought, arrived, found, did you do, Have you taken/Did you take, haven't been

5. has grown, saw, wanted, was.
6. have never flown, felt, flew, enjoyed
7. have lost, Have you seen, did you put, put
8. Have you ever met, 've spoken, saw
9. did you go, Have you been, went, swam
10. have just started, left, didn't pay
11. did you leave, left, finished, have had
12. Did you see, have seen, didn't want.

15.

- | | | |
|--------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1. got up | 8. went | 15. happened |
| 2. went | 9. found | 16. had left |
| 3. opened | 10. had forgotten | 17. had gone |
| 4. found | 11. was | 18. was |
| 5. had drunk | 12. scraped | 19. had used |
| 6. had | 13. got | 20. had been/was |
| 7. got | 14. turned | 21. had forgotten |
| | | 22. headed |

16.

- | | | |
|----------------------|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. haven't heard | 7. went | 13. 'm calling |
| 2. have you been | 8. was | 14. need |
| 3. started | 9. did you stay | 15. told |
| 4. am | 10. stayed | 16. thought |
| 5. 'm enjoying/enjoy | 11. pays | 17. do you think |
| 6. sends | 12. is | 18. do I start |

17.

- | | |
|----------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. was washing, rang | 6. sang, ate |
| 2. did you feel | 7. fell, happened |
| 3. got, received | 8. was washing-up, broke |
| 4. went swimming | 9. see, missed |
| 5. bit, screamed | 10. were you doing, phoned |

18.

- | | |
|--------------|---------|
| 1. while | 6. ago |
| 2. Last week | 7. when |
| 3. when | 8. in |
| 4. at | 9. When |
| 5. While | 10. ago |

19.

1. When we had eaten lunch, we sat in the garden.

2. While I was looking for my keys, I remembered I'd left them at home.
3. Anna used to play badminton when she was at school.
4. When I got into bed, I fell asleep immediately.
5. When I finally/d finally found the house, I knocked at the door.
6. After Jill gave/had given Nick his books, she went home.
7. Maria used to live/lived in Sweden when she was a child.
8. I used to get up early when I went sailing.
9. The Vikings sailed to North America a thousand years ago.
10. Juliet was sure she'd seen me tall man before.

20.

- | | | | | |
|-----------|---------|--------|-----------|-------------|
| 1. since | 3. ever | 5. yet | 7. never | 9. often |
| 2. always | 4. just | 6. for | 8. So far | 10. already |

21.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. 've worked here | 6. haven't finished |
| 2. haven't been/'ve never been | 7. you been |
| 3. My pen has | 8. 've left |
| 4. have left | 9. haven't spoken |
| 5. 've just seen | 10. Anna/she woken |

22.

1. was trying, stopped,
2. offered
3. paid, had phoned
4. was not wearing, didn't notice, was driving
4. lay, were feeding
5. admitted, had hit, hadn't damaged
6. wasn't listening, was thinking
7. felt/was feeling, finished/had finished, fell
8. got, had disappeared
9. phoned, didn't answer, were you doing
10. didn't go, was raining

23.

- | | | | | |
|----------|-------------|-----------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. for | 3. recently | 5. before | 7. last night | 9. since |
| 2. since | 4. today | 6. since | 8. for ages | 10. how long |

24.

1. has been learning
2. since I went to
3. Mary has become
4. been here since
5. time I have been

6. did Helen and Robert get
7. been wearing those trousers for
8. haven't spoken for a
9. already had something to
10. haven't played water-polo/have never played water-polo

25.

1. This flower smells wonderful.
2. I think you are being very silly.
3. She is having a baby in the summer.
4. Nancy is thinking of moving to Scotland.
5. They are having a meeting.
6. I am seeing Janet this evening actually.
7. Good clothes cost more and more.
8. I am tasting the soup to see if it needs more salt.
9. Helen is having a bath at the moment.
10. I feel that you would be happier in another job.

26.

- | | |
|-------------------|---------------------|
| 1. loves | 8. was standing |
| 2. saw | 9. had been waiting |
| 3. thought | 10. saw |
| 4. goes | 11. didn't stop |
| 5. writes down | 12. were wearing |
| 6. has been doing | 13. had passed |
| 7. had collected | 14. had crashed |

27.

- | | |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. was walking | 13. turned |
| 2. had been | 14. (had) stopped |
| 3. were | 15. started |
| 4. was raining | 16. began/was beginning |
| 5. was looking forward | 17. were getting |
| 6. had been talking | 18. felt |
| 7. had escaped | 19. screamed |
| 8. had offered | 20. had been |
| 9. lived | 21. had decided |
| 10. (had) told | 22. couldn't |
| 11. heard | 23. had already fainted |
| 12. stopped | |

28.

- | | |
|------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. year | 11. take |
| 2. at | 12. reached (arrive in/at, get to) |
| 3. has been collecting | 13. couldn't |
| 4. buying | 14. At |
| 5. has found | 15. into |
| 6. too | 16. look |
| 7. because | 17. its |
| 8. across | 18. that |
| 9. ever | 19. entered |
| 10. in | 20. to |

29.

- | | |
|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. 'll meet | 9. 'll get on |
| 2. arrives | 10. miss |
| 3. 'll give | 11. 'll have to |
| 4. 'll recognise | 12. reaches |
| 5. doesn't say | 13. 'll meet |
| 6. 'll know | 14. 'll get |
| 7. 'll take | 15. drives |
| 8. comes | 16. 'll call |

30.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. sat | 11. suddenly realised |
| 2. read | 12. had stopped |
| 3. was wondering | 13. was opening |
| 4. noticed | 14. opened |
| 5. began | 15. called |
| 6. went | 16. pushed |
| 7. Do you go | 17. was waiting |
| 8. have you been putting off | 18. shouted |
| 9. was saying | 19. Have you ever done |
| 10. will hurt/is going to hurt | 20. hates |

31.

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|-------|-------|
| 1. B | 4. A | 7. D | 10. C | 13. C |
| 2. D | 5. C | 8. C | 11. B | 14. A |
| 3. A | 6. B | 9. A | 12. D | 15. C |

32.

- | | | | | |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. C | 6. B | 11. D | 16. C | 21. A |
| 2. C | 7. A | 12. A | 17. C | 22. A |
| 3. D | 8. D | 13. D | 18. D | 23. B |
| 4. A | 9. C | 14. D | 19. B | 24. C |
| 5. B | 10. A | 15. B | 20. A | 25. B |

SỰ PHỐI HỢP THÌ (SEQUENCE OF TENSES)

1.

- | | | |
|-----------------|----------------|--------------------|
| 1. will rain | 9. would end | 17. has lived |
| 2. would get | 10. built | 18. had helped |
| 3. had lost | 11. will take | 19. has just said |
| 4. would come | 12. is writing | 20. would capture |
| 5. is | 13. was | 21. will introduce |
| 6. has | 14. is | 22. has made |
| 7. was - turned | 15. had made | 23. wouldn't do |
| 8. had locked | 16. have taken | 24. has never seen |
| | | 25. is |

2.

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. D | 3. B | 5. B | 7. A | 9. B |
| 2. B | 4. A | 6. D | 8. B | 10. D |

3.

- | | | |
|------------------------|----------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. are you going to do | 5. does, start | 9. Are you doing/Will you be doing |
| 2. am going to try | 6. begins | 10. will feel |
| 3. am going | 7. am going | 11. is going to be |
| 4. won't be able | 8. Will, be | 12. 'll have |

4.

- | | | |
|------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. lost, 've just lost | 4. Have you seen, left | 7. hope, 've cooked |
| 2. work, 've decided | 5. had, caught | 8. have taken up |
| 3. 've been, 've come | 6. 've never eaten, ate | 9. reached, weren't |
| | | 10. has had, 's gone |

5.

1. Have you seen
2. has been washing
3. use
4. is
5. have been living/ have lived
6. have never seen
7. have washed
8. make
9. are always making (repeated action showing annoyance)
10. are always drinking (annoyance)
11. are you going
12. am seeing (= am visiting)

6.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. see; will tell | 13. went |
| 2. get, will phone | 14. go |
| 3. will go, do | 15. was making |
| 4. will wait, stops/has stopped | 16. hasn't been – broke |
| 5. will get, opens | 17. will have already left |
| 6. take/have taken, will feel | 18. had already opened |
| 7. finish/have finished | 19. see |
| 8. will let, hear | 20. live |
| 9. paint, will have | 21. saw |
| 10. will climb, gets/ has got | 22. has gone |
| 11. will have | 23. was |
| 12. left | 24. had gone |
| | 25. changes |

7.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. went | 11. had just left/ were just leaving |
| 2. had just left | 12. rang |
| 3. had been studying/had studied | 13. ran |
| 4. felt | 14. had stopped |
| 5. wanted | 15. reached |
| 6. looked | 16. arrived |
| 7. had been reading | 17. sat |
| 8. found | 18. had just made |
| 9. were | 19. had got up |
| 10. arrived | |

8.

- | | |
|---------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. had been cooking | 8. had left |
| 2. had burnt | 9. had been raining |
| 3. had visited | 10. had got |
| 4. (had) met | 11. had been |
| 5. had happened | 12. had been looking after |
| 6. had been playing | 13. had been doing |
| 7. had left | |

9.

- | | |
|----------------------|-----------------|
| 1. had always wanted | 7. decided |
| 2. was | 8. had been |
| 3. had told | 9. lived |
| 4. was | 10. arrived |
| 5. left | 11. was sitting |
| 6. was offered | 12. reading |

- | | |
|----------------|------------------|
| 13. looked up | 18. shouted |
| 14. approached | 19. told |
| 15. explained | 20. arrived |
| 16. listened | 21. was |
| 17. came out | 22. had happened |

10.

1. will have heard , see
2. 'll have finished , 'll give
3. will be , get in , 'll have been running around
4. will have been , 'll win
5. won't have got , 'll probably get back
6. 'll have finished , comes , 'll move in
7. 'll be , see , 'll have been working
8. come , 'll have seen , 'll love
9. will have gone , 'll be

11.

- | | | |
|--------------------|-----------------------|-----------------|
| 1. sat | 13. had thought | 25. had gone in |
| 2. felt | 14. had imagined | 26. came out |
| 3. didn't know | 15. was | 27. smiled |
| 4. had gone in | 16. couldn't remember | 28. hated |
| 5. had been | 17. had planned | 29. appeared |
| 6. had looked | 18. almost decided | 30. wished |
| 7. went in | 19. had to do | 31. had gone |
| 8. felt | 20. had spent | 32. got up |
| 9. had already got | 21. couldn't give up | 33. wondered |
| 10. was | 22. were | 34. looked |
| 11. wanted | 23. felt | 35. felt |
| 12. meant | 24. opened | |

12.

- | | | | | | |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. C | 6. C | 11. D | 16. C | 21. B | 26. C |
| 2. A | 7. B | 12. B | 17. D | 22. B | 27. C |
| 3. B | 8. C | 13. B | 18. D | 23. A | 28. D |
| 4. B | 9. B | 14. B | 19. A | 24. D | 29. C |
| 5. C | 10. C | 15. D | 20. C | 25. B | 30. B |

Chương 12. MỆNH ĐỀ VÀ CỤM TỪ (CLAUSES AND PHRASES)

A. PHRASES AND CLAUSES OF PURPOSE.

1.

- | | |
|-------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. so that | 5. for |
| 2. to | 6. couldn't/wouldn't |
| 3. in order to | 7. can |
| 4. dressed, could/would | 8. could |

2.

1. Rachel turned on the TV so that she could watch the news.
2. I'll post the card today in order that it gets/ will get there on Daniel's birthday.
3. Please turn down the radio so that I can get to sleep.
4. She locked the door in order that she wouldn't be disturbed.
5. I gave her my address so that she could contact me.
6. I'm going to cash a check in order that I will have enough money to go shopping.
7. Please arrive early so that we can start the meeting on time.
8. I slowed down in order that the car behind could overtake.
9. Jackson is planning to take a semester off so that he will travel/ travels in Europe.
10. The man spoke very slowly so that I could/ would understand what he said.
11. I whispered in order that nobody else could/ would hear our conversation.
12. I'll give you a map so that you can/ will find the way all right.
13. Please be quiet so that I can hear what Sharon is saying.
14. The little boy pretended to be sick in order that he would/ could stay home from school.
15. I turned off the TV in order that my roommate could study in peace and quiet.

3.

1. I went to the shops for some eggs.
2. Nicola came here to have a meeting with the director.
3. We went on holiday for a rest.
4. Mike plays chess to relax.
5. I opened the window for some air.
6. Cristina went shopping for some new clothes.
7. I went to a private school to learn English.
8. Sam went to a specialist for treatment.

4.

1. left work early, he could go
2. was rebuilt, make it
3. gave Jack her phone number, he could/would call

4. put on some suntan oil, I don't/won't get
5. hid the presents, nobody would/could see
6. had the party in a large hall, people would/could
7. arrived early, he could/would get
8. changed seats in the cinema., I could see
9. some sandwiches, wouldn't feel hungry
10. wore a funny hat, his friends would notice

5.

1. Melanie was hurrying so that she wouldn't miss her bus.
2. Ali borrowed an eraser to erase a mistake in his composition.
3. Most people work in order that they earn/ will earn money.
4. I wish we had a garden so that the children could/ would play in.
5. She is learning English in order to study in the United States.
6. The staff are working at weekends in order that they won't delay the project any further.
7. Can we stop so that I can buy a newspaper?
8. We moved to London so as to visit our parents more often.
9. We're having to borrow money so that we can/will pay our bills.
10. I left the door open for Harry to get in.
11. I'm going to be very careful in order not to have an accident.
12. The government took these measures so that they could reduce crime.
13. He wore glasses and false beard in order not to be recognized.
14. I lowered the volume on the TV set so that it wouldn't disturb my neighbors.
15. Yesterday I took my umbrella so as not to get wet.

6.

1. Ilona is learning English to get a better job.
2. Claude studies encyclopedias so that he can answer quiz questions.
3. Vicky is saving up for a holiday.
4. Nick keeps a dog to guard the house.
5. Olivia booked a babysitter so that she could go out for the evening.
6. Jessica is going on a diet in order to lose weight,
7. Trevor often switches off the heating to save money.
8. Sarah had to go to Birmingham for a business meeting.
9. Emma wore boots so that her feet wouldn't get wet.
10. I'm saving my money in order to travel in Europe next summer.

B. PHRASES AND CLAUSES OF RESULT

1.

- | | |
|------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. old enough to get married | 6. enough energy to play |
| 2. too busy to talk | 7. too far away to hear |
| 3. too late to go | 8. enough English to read |
| 4. warm enough to sit | 9. too big to put |
| 5. too nice to be | 10. enough qualifications |

2.

1. The food was too hot (for us) to eat.
2. I didn't have enough money for a taxi.
3. Sarah is too busy to take a day off.
4. It's too wet for a picnic./ It's too wet to have a picnic.
5. The piano was too heavy to move.
6. This coat isn't warm enough to wear in winter.
7. I haven't got enough chairs for all my guests.
8. The situation is too complicated to explain.
9. This sofa isn't wide enough for three people to sit on.
10. I had too much equipment to carry.
11. The wall was too high to climb over.
12. Natasha is good enough to be a professional musician.
13. This river isn't clean enough to swim in.
14. Some things are too small to see without a microscope.
15. He wasn't experienced enough to get the job.

3.

- | | | |
|---------|----------|---------------|
| 1. such | 6. so | 11. so |
| 2. so | 7. so | 12. so – such |
| 3. such | 8. such | 13. so |
| 4. such | 9. so | 14. such a |
| 5. So | 10. such | 15. so |

4.

1. The weather was so hot (that) you could fry egg on the sidewalk.
2. She talked so fast (that) I couldn't understand her.
3. Grandpa held me so tightly (that) I couldn't breathe for a moment.
4. There were so few people at the meeting (that) it was canceled.
5. Ted was worried about the exam (that) he couldn't get to sleep last night.
6. Jerry got so angry (that) he put his fist through the wall.
7. I have so many problems (that) I can use all the help you can give me.
8. His handwriting is so illegible (that) I can't figure out what this sentence says.
9. There was so little traffic (that) it took us only ten minutes to get there.
10. There were so many people came to the meeting (that) there weren't enough seats for everyone.

5.

1. It was such a nice day (that) we took a walk.
2. It was such an expensive car (that) we couldn't afford to buy it.
3. We're having such beautiful weather (that) I don't feel like going to class.
4. The classroom has such comfortable chairs (that) the students find it easy to fall asleep.
5. The tornado struck with such great force (that) it lifted automobiles off the ground.
6. This is such good coffee (that) I think I'll have another cup.
7. Karen is such a good pianist (that) I'm surprised she didn't go into music professionally.
8. It was such a good book (that) couldn't put it down.
9. We did such a lot of gymnastics (that) we couldn't walk afterwards.
10. They were such beautiful flowers (that) we took a photograph of them.

6.

1. Sarah was so late home (that) Mark had already gone to bed.
2. Mike hadn't cooked for such a long time (that) he'd almost forgotten how to.
3. The piano was so heavy (that) Mike and Harriet couldn't move it.
4. Tom was annoyed about United losing (that) he wouldn't speak to anyone.
5. The band was such a big attraction (that) all the tickets sold out.
6. Vicky had such a lot of work to do (that) she was sure she'd never finish it.
7. The party made such a lot of noise (that) it kept all the neighbors awake.
8. She speaks English so well (that) you would think it was her native language.
9. It was such horrible weather (that) we spent the whole day indoors.
10. The music was so loud (that) you could hear it from miles away.

C. PHRASES AND CLAUSES OF CAUSE OR REASON

1.

1. Since yesterday was a public day, we didn't have to go to work.
2. As we didn't want to wake anybody up, we came in very quietly.
3. We didn't know what time it was because none of us had a watch.
4. As it was a nice day, we went for a walk by the sea.
5. Since the door was open, I walked in.
6. As you paid for the theater tickets, please let me pay for our dinner.
7. Since oil is an irreplaceable natural resource, we must do whatever we can to conserve it.
8. Because we didn't see Lisa for a long time, we didn't recognize her.
9. Lilian was late for work because she missed the bus.
10. Sonia was fired because she'd been working very hard.

11. Since Eve had an attractive personality, she was very popular.
12. As mother had burnt the dinner, we ate out.
13. It's a really useful book because it explains everything very clearly.
14. Because Ellie hadn't fully recovered yet, she felt weak.
15. Since all the students had done poorly on the test, the teacher decided to give it again.

2.

1. Because the weather was cold, we stayed home.
2. Most people begin to jog because they hear jogging is a good exercise.
3. People like to live in this country because its climate is healthy.
4. A computer becomes very popular nowadays because it can be used for various purposes.
5. Stacey retired in 1987 partly because his health was ill.
6. We were late to the meeting because the traffic was heavy.
7. Harry had to stay in hospital because he broke his leg.
8. Because our leader couldn't attend the meeting, it. was canceled.
9. The young couple decided not to buy the house because it was in dilapidated condition.
10. Because I always enjoyed mathematics in high school, I decided to major in it in college.

3.

1. I am going to move aboard because the weather is so awful here.
2. My father gave up his job on account of (his) poor health.
3. Seeing (that) I'd worked all weekend, I had Monday off. Also possible.
Seeing as how I'd worked all weekend, I had Monday off
4. I didn't buy the coat as it was so expensive.
5. I feel much more confident now (that) I'm qualified.
6. Because of its excellent condition the car is a bargain.
7. I can't talk now because I'm working.
8. Since there is so much street crime, you had better take a taxi..
9. Joshua helped us out of kindness.
10. People are staying at home because of (their fear of) terrorism.

4.

1. Jim had to give up jogging because of his severely sprained ankle.
2. The water in most rivers is unsafe to drink because of its pollution.
3. We had to stay in London an extra day because of the fog at the airport.
4. Bill has to do all of the cooking and cleaning because of his wife's illness.
5. We all have received the best of everything because of our parents' generosity.
6. I couldn't get to sleep last night because of the noise in the next apartment.
7. John has to sit in the front row in class because of his poor eyesight.

8. We stopped our car because of the red traffic lights.
9. She couldn't see the road because of the high wall.
10. We postponed our trip because of the bad driving conditions.
11. Sarah won't walk across a bridge because of her fear of heights.
12. Mark's doctor has advised him to exercise regularly because of his overweight.
13. Piranhas can devour an entire cow in several minutes because of their extremely sharp teeth.
14. Most students couldn't do the final exam because of its difficulty.
15. John succeeded in his exam because of his hard and methodical work.

D. PHRASES AND CLAUSES OF CONCESSION

1.

- | | |
|----------------------|----------------|
| 1. however | 5. but |
| 2. Although | 6. despite |
| 3. Although | 7. In spite of |
| 4. On the other hand | 8. although |

2.

- | | |
|-------------|-------------|
| 1. Although | 5. still |
| 2. but | 6. although |
| 3. However | 7. Despite |
| 4. even | 8. spite |

3.

- | | |
|----------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Although | 9. Although |
| 2. in spite of | 10. in spite of |
| 3. because of | 11. became |
| 4. Because | 12. in spite of |
| 5. in spite of | 13. because of |
| 6. although | 14. although |
| 7. because of | 15. Because of-although |
| 8. because | |

4.

1. Despite the snow, we went out for a walk
2. While some experts think prices will fall, others disagree
3. Despite losing at half-time, City won in the end.
4. Although it was hot, Diana wore her winter clothes.
5. Last summer was good but/, however, this summer it's rained all the time.
6. In spite of having a headache, /his headache, James still read until late.

7. Jon hadn't studied but/, however, he (still) did well in the test.
8. Although it was cold, we all went for a walk.
9. While John has done well in French, he has not done so well in Maths.
10. Although I tried to persuade her, I didn't succeed.
11. In spite of the rain, I went swimming.
12. Despite feeling ill, Ann insisted on going to work.
13. Although he had an early lead, Hudson lost the race.
14. While I know that I should pay, I'm not going to.
15. Even though Larry was expected to accept the job, he didn't.

5.

1. I enjoyed the film in spite of the silly story.
2. We hardly ever see each other despite living in the same street.
3. Although my foot was injured, I managed to walk to the nearest village.
4. In spite of having very little money, they are happy.
5. Even though I had an umbrella, I got very wet in the rain.
6. I couldn't sleep despite being tired.
7. Though he liked the sweater, he decided not to buy it.
8. I didn't get the job in spite of having a'l the necessary qualifications.
9. Although Nick used to smoke, he seems to be in good health.
10. It was still hot in the room even though I had turned on the air conditioner.
11. Laura wants to fly in spite of the fact (that) she feels afraid.
12. Trevor didn't notice the sign even though it was right in front of him.
13. I'm no better despite the fact (that) I've taken the pills.
14. Matthew doesn't know any French though it was one of his school subjects.
15. Despite being a millionaire, Henry's friend hates spending money.
16. We couldn't get tickets in spite of queuing for an hour.
17. Although I'd met her twice before, I didn't recognize her.
18. Laura felt unwell in spite of this she went on working.
19. Even though I told the absolute truth, no one would believe me.
20. The good were never delivered despite the promise we had received.

6.

1. In spite of being over sixty/ his age, Mr. Pike doesn't wear glasses.
2. Despite having much experience in machinery, he...
3. In spite of the darkness, they...
4. Despite the noise, I...
5. In spite of the heavy rain,...
6. Despite his strength, I...
7. ... in spite of his poverty.
8. In spite of not having finished the paper, he...

9. Despite having been absent frequently, he...

10.... despite the red traffic lights.

7.

1. No matter how rich they are, they aren't happy.

2. I'd rather have a room of my own, however small it is.

3. No matter what jobs he got, he was not satisfied.

4. Whatever job you do, you should do it devotedly.

5. Whoever gains the most points wins the competition.

6. Whatever kinds of exercise he had taken, he got fatter and fatter.

7. No matter where he lived, he always thought of his homeland.

8. My roof leaks whenever it rains.

9. Don't trust him, no matter what he says.

10. Whatever difficulties you encounter, you should study hard.

11. No matter how intelligent she is, she can't answer my question.

12. She would still love him however badly he behaved.

13. Whatever nonsense the papers print, some people always believe it.

14. I'll find him, no matter where he has gone.

15. Phone me when you arrive, however late it is

E. AS IF, AS THOUGH, IT'S HIGH TIME, IT'S TIME, WOULD RATHER

1.

1. as if she was enjoying it.

2. as if he meant what he was saying.

3. as if it has just been cut.

4. as if it never gets fed.

5. as if I'm going to be sick.

6. as if she didn't want to come.

7. as if he's been up all night.

8. as if he hadn't eaten for a week.

9. as if they are going to get married.

10. as if someone has been smoking here.

2.

1. as if/ as though he was/ were

2. as if it had been made

3. as if she had... met

4. as if I was/ were
5. as if she hadn't heard
6. as if he didn't have
7. as if it was/ were
8. as if she was/ were
9. as if she had taken
10. as if she wouldn't be

3.

1. It's time the children were in bed.
2. It's time I had a holiday.
3. It's time she was here.
4. It's time the train left the station.
5. It's time I/ we had a party.
6. It's time some changes were made./ It's time there were some changes.
7. It's time he got up.
8. It's time my parents stopped treating Tommy like a child.
9. It's too late. It's time we went home.
10. It's time the windows were cleaned./ It's time we cleaned the window

4.

1. have gone to an opera
2. have studied Chinese
3. be an engineer
4. not tell you
5. go out with their friends...stay home with their parents
6. not have gone out
7. stay home
8. lie on the beach/be lying on the beach

5.

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|-------|-------|
| 1. A | 4. D | 7. C | 10. B | 13. B |
| 2. B | 5. B | 8. D | 11. C | 14. C |
| 3. A | 6. A | 9. A | 12. A | 15. A |

6.

1. I had been run over by a ten-ton truck
2. eat at home than go to the restaurant
3. to go to the concert tonight
4. he was/ were a billionaire
5. (for us) to go home/ we went home
6. reviewed your lessons for the exams
7. it was/ were her native tongue

8. you would stop fighting
9. they had told me the truth
10. he came to my house tonight

F. CLAUSE AFTER WISH AND IF ONLY

1.

- | | |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| 1. hadn't sunbathed | 11. didn't live |
| 2. could stay | 12. had brought |
| 3. could swim | 13. didn't have to |
| 4. had | 14. had told |
| 5. could see | 15. wouldn't make |
| 6. didn't sit | 16. could be |
| 7. had | 17. had come |
| 8. enjoy | 18. would give |
| 9. could | 19. were |
| 10. I'll | 20. hadn't bought |

2.

- | | |
|---------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. had gone | 10. went/could go |
| 2. had | 11. had brought |
| 3. would do | 12. had bought |
| 4. hadn't forgotten | 13. went |
| 5. wouldn't do | 14. knew |
| 6. hadn't eaten | 15. had taken |
| 7. had studied | 16. hadn't bought |
| 8. wouldn't leave | 17. had finished |
| 9. knew | 18. spoke/could speak |

3.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. I hadn't eaten | 11. I hadn't said. |
| 2. it'd/ it would stop | 12. you'd/ you would slow down |
| 3. I knew | 13. we hadn't gone |
| 4. I'd/I had taken | 14. you wouldn't go/ didn't go |
| 5. Ann were/ was | 15. I'd/I had saved |
| 6. they'd/ they would hurry up | 16. it was/ were |
| 7. didn't have | 17. I had found |
| 8. we'd/ we had had | 18. somebody would answer |
| 9. it wasn't/ weren't | 19. there weren't |
| 10. I could | 20. you had told |

4.

1. I was/were as confident as.

2. I'd got up/I had got up
3. We could afford a new computer..
4. I had
5. You hadn't told everyone (the/our secret).
6. You'd lock /you would lock the front door.
7. only it would work/only the DVD player would work
8. I could have been at your wedding/I'd been/I had been at your wedding

5.

1. I wish Ann was/ were here, or If only Ann was/ were here.
2. John wishes he could be a pilot when he grows up.
3. I wish I had come to the party last night, or if only I had come...
4. I wish you had given me a chance to tell you the truth, or If only you had given ...
5. Mary wishes she could attend your wedding next week.
6. I wish I had learned to play a musical instrument, or if only I had learned ...
7. I wish you drove more slowly. If only you drove...
8. I wish it would stop raining. or If only it would stop...
9. I wish I had enough money to buy this book. or If only I had...
10. I wish I. didn't live in a big city. or If only I didn't live...
11. Nam wished he had accepted the job.
12. I wish I wouldn't have to work tomorrow. or If only I wouldn't have ...
13. I wish I hadn't eaten too much ice-cream. or If only I hadn't eaten ...
14. I wish you had been here last week. or If only you had been...
15. I wish people didn't drop litter in the street. or If only people didn't drop...
16. I wish I had brought my camera. or If only I had brought...
17. I wish it wasn't/ weren't cold. or If only it wasn't/weren't...
18. I wish I could go to the party. or If only I could go...
19. I wish I had applied for that job. or If only I had applied...
20. I wish my life was/ were more interesting. or If only my life was/ were ...

6.

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. C | 3. A | 5. A | 7. C | 9. A |
| 2. C | 4. C | 6. B | 8. B | 10. D |

G. RELATIVE CLAUSES

1.

- | | | | | |
|----------|----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. who | 5. that | 9. that | 11. which | 15. whose |
| 2. whose | 6. whose | 10. that | 13. which | 16. which |
| 3. who | 7. whose | 11. which | 14. who | 17. that |

4. which 8. whose

2.

1. whose	5. whose	9. blank, blank	13. blank	17. who
2. that	6. who	10. which	14. whose	18. whose
3. whose	7. who	11. blank	15. blank	19. who
4. who	8. which	12. who	16. which	20. whose

3.

1. who	3. none	5. which	7. which	9. who
2. none	4. that	6. none	8. none	10. that

4.

1. that I told you about	6. that have been damaged
2. not possible	7. not possible
3. not possible	8. not possible
4. that arrested her	9. that serves very good meals
5. that knows you	10. that park outside

5.

1. Thank you very much for the present you sent me.
2. She was dancing with a student who had... (The student with whom she was dancing had...)
3. Romeo and Juliet were lovers whose parents...
4. This is Mrs Jones, whose son won...
5. The man (whom/that) I had come to see was sitting...
6. His girlfriend, whom he trusted absolutely, turned out...
7. The car crashed into a queue of people, four of whom were...
8. The roads were crowded with refugees, many of whom were...
9. He wanted to come at 2 a.m., which didn't...
10. They gave me four very bad tyres, one of which burst...
11. Who lives in the house that/which has a white door?
12. We visited a patient whose eyesight had been restored by the surgeon.
13. The girls whose names begin with the letters A-K should go to the main office.
14. The countries that/which have very large debts will not be helped.
15. The people whose houses were damaged by the bomb will be compensated
16. The shop whose turnover is the largest will make a big profit.
17. The player whose shirts were dirty changed their shirts at half-time.
18. Those people that/who are ill treated should go on strike.
19. The car that/which had a white roof was involved in an accident, or,
The car whose roof was white was involved in an accident.
20. The guard who/that let a prisoner escape was punished.

6.

1. Tom, who had been..., was tired...
2. Jack, whose tyres were..., wanted...
3. He... manager, who passed...
4. She... thieves, which turned out...
5. The... of schoolchildren, six of whom were...
6. The Smiths, whose house... explosion, were given...
7. The... the next, which makes it...
8. He... windows, most of which hadn't been cleaned...
9. Tom ... patched jeans, which surprised the other guests, most of whom were wearing
10. I ... train (which/that) I usually catch and had to travel on the next, which was...

7.

1. This is the place where the accident occurred.
2. 7:05 is the time when my plane arrives.
3. I'll show you the second-hand bookshop where you can find valuable books.
4. The reason why I'm phoning you is to invite you to my party.
5. Mark likes to travel at night when the roads are quiet.
6. The Riverside Restaurant, where I once had lunch with Henry, is very beautiful.
7. She doesn't want to speak to the cause why she divorced her husband.
8. The days when I lived far from home were the saddest ones.
9. A cafe where people can get a light meal is a small restaurant.
10. You didn't tell us the reason why we had to cut down our daily expenses.

8.

1. Do you know the woman coming toward us?
2. The road joining the two villages is very narrow
3. Most of the goods made in this factory are exported.
4. My grandmother, being old and sick, never goes out of the house.
5. Kuala Lumpur, the capital city of Malaysia, is a major trade center in Southeast Asia.
6. The woman living here before us is a romantic novelist.
7. The scientists researching the causes of cancer are making progress.
8. Our solar system is in a galaxy called the Milky Way.
9. All students not handing in their papers will fail in the exam.
10. Simon Bolivar, a great south American general, led the fight for independence early in the 19th century.
11. Some of the people invited to the party can't come.
12. Ann is the woman responsible for the error.
13. Mr Jackson, working in the company for over ten years. was nominated as the new director.

14. English has an alphabet consisting of 26 letters.

15. We noticed a pile of stones left in the road.

9.

1. We used to have a room to play music in.
2. The child will be happier if he has someone to play with.
3. David was the only person to offer his help.
4. We had to sit on the ground because we hadn't anything to sit on.
5. She didn't have anyone to send cards to.
6. There is a big yard for your children to play in.
7. Emma Thompson is the most famous actress to appear on stage here.
8. We have some picture books for children to read.
9. He was the second man to be killed in this way.
10. Here are some novels for her to read.

10.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. a river to swim in | 6. anyone to go with |
| 2. someone to play with | 7. a garden for him to play in |
| 3. a family to cook for | 8. the first man to Leave |
| 4. anything to open it with | 9. a brush to sweep it with |
| 5. letters to write | 10. the fifth man to be interviewed |

11.

1. ...what to wear.
2. ...to lose weight.
3. ...what school to go to.
4. ...what to do / what procedure to go through
5. ...to drop the-class.
6. ...when to go.
7. ...where to buy the dress.
8. ...what to do with her sick dog.
9. ...what to do.
10. ... what to do with his/her problem.

12.

- | | | |
|--|----|--------------------------------------|
| 1. why was there | => | why there was |
| 2. told to | => | told |
| it is crucial | => | it was crucial |
| 3. they were given | => | they be given |
| 4. to not worry | => | not to worry |
| 5. What's my father's annual income is | => | What my father's annual income is is |
| 6. exactly that | => | exactly what |
| 7. What are we | => | That we are |

8. That at what age => At what age
is that a parent => is what a parent

13.

1. the only person to offer his help.
2. the youngest girl to swim a length of the pool.
3. the only people to get a pay rise.
4. the last person to leave the aircraft.
5. the first woman to become Managing Director.
6. the most suitable candidate to apply for the job,
7. the first person to solve the puzzle.
8. the only person to write a letter of thanks.

14.

- | | | |
|-------------|-----------------------|-----------------|
| 1. blocking | 6. working - studying | 11. published |
| 2. ringing | 7. blown | 12. to survive |
| 3. played | 8. to leave | 13. struck |
| 4. to fill | 9. living | 14. overlooking |
| 5. called | 10. sitting-reading | 15. to offer |

15.

1. The hotel, which was miles . from anywhere, was full of guests who had gone there to admire the scenery.
2. The book I lent you was written by a friend of mine who lives in France.
3. The woman whose jewels were stolen was interviewed by a police officer who was staying in the same hotel.
4. The goal which won the match was scored by a teenager who had come on as a substitute.
5. The boy I was sitting next to in the exam told me the answers.
6. My wallet, which contained over #100, was found in the street by a schoolboy who returned it/was returned by a schoolboy who found it in the street.
7. My friend Albert, whose car was stolen last week, has decided to buy a motorbike.
8. Carol, who is a vegetarian, enjoyed the meal I cooked for her last week.

16.

- | | | | | |
|---------|----------|----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. who | 4. blank | 7. whose | 10. which | 13. blank |
| 2. who | 5. who | 8. which | 11. which | 14. whose |
| 3. whom | 6. which | 9. who | 12. which | 15. who |

Chương 13. CÂU (SENTENCES)

1.

- | | | | | |
|---------------|-------------|-------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1. shall we | 3. has he | 5. are you | 7. can he | 9. didn't they |
| 2. should you | 4. will you | 6. will you | 8. haven't you | 10. is he |

2.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| 1. what the time is | 5. if/whether i'm in the right seat |
| 2. what this means | 6. where Asham Street is |
| 3. how much this costs | 7. if/whether this is Trafalgar Square |
| 4. what time the museum opens | 8. when this bus leaves |

3.

1. Is it raining?
2. Where do you live?
3. Has Mark been to Los Angeles?
4. Where did you buy your coat?
5. Does Laura play tennis?
6. Can I borrow your squash racket?
7. Who am I speaking to?
8. How much do video recorders cost?
9. What did you lock the door for?
10. Will you be at the club tonight?
11. Did you enjoy your holiday?
12. How long does the journey take?
13. Where are we going to have lunch?
14. Is the train on time?
15. Do Mike and Harry go camping?
16. When does the course finish?
17. What happens next?
18. Shall we go for a walk? Why don't we go for a walk?
19. Have you got a motorbike? Do you have a motorbike?
20. May/ Can I come in?

4.

1. How is Christopher going to London?
2. How many cars have the Smiths got/ do the Smiths have?
3. Where does Janet work?
4. Why is Ann learning English?
5. How was the film?/ What was the film like?

6. When will the meeting take place?

7. Who switched off the computer?

8. Whose burglar alarm was ringing?

9. Who(m) did Ann go to the dance with?/ With whom did Ann go to the dance?

10. How often are the Olympic Games held?

11. What is your weight?/ How many kilos do you weigh?

12. What does your father do?

13. How much money do you earn?

14. How far is it from here to the post office?

15. What color is the Vietnamese flag?

16. What did you buy?

17. What time are your friends arriving?/ When are your friends arriving?

18. How long will the meeting last?

19. Which shop does Susan work in?/ What kind of shop does Susan work in?

20. What did you buy this computer magazine for?/ Why did you buy this computer magazine?

5.

1. aren't we

6. don't they

11. will you

16. do you

2. have you

7. do you

12. isn't he

17. does it

3. aren't you

8. don't you

13. won't you

18. shall we

4. will you

9. hasn't he

14. wasn't he

19. are you

5. isn't he

10. should I

15. do they

20. doesn't he

6.

1. Paul doesn't like football, does he?

2. You've got a sister, haven't you?

3. You haven't done your homework, have you?

4. You sat next to Ellen, didn't you?

5. The guests haven't arrived, have they?

6. Your name is John, isn't it?

7. Your name isn't John, is it?

8. I didn't leave my wallet on the desk, did I?

9. William hasn't got married, has he?

10. This book is by Martin Amis, isn't it?

7.

1. Place

3. Use

5. Don't put

7. Don't eat

9. Keep

2. Make

4. Don't place

6. Don't leave

8. Clean

10. switch

8.

1. What a clever boy!

2. Isn't she tall!

552

3. How interesting the novel was!
4. Didn't they write slowly!
5. What fast horses!
6. How expensive the dress is!
7. Wasn't the film frightening!
8. What warm weather!
9. How effectively they work!
10. What a lovely cat my friend has!
11. Doesn't he look like his father!
12. How dirty those trousers are!
13. What awful noise!
14. How cold it is!
15. What nice shoes you've got on!
16. How tired I feel!
17. What an old house!
18. Isn't that a great song!
19. How beautifully Marta sings!
20. What a beautiful smile she has!

9.

1. Helen is giving Jack some cassettes on his birthday.
2. I bought some new jeans recently.
3. This climate doesn't suit me.
4. Diana is becoming more and more beautiful these days.
5. They have painted their front door a bright yellow!
6. I found my purse under the bed.
7. Dad sold the old Renault to our next door neighbor yesterday.
8. Our friend sent us some tulips by express mail.
9. Bob saw Mary crossing the street in town.
10. We took a bus to the airport.
11. She hates answering the phone all the time.
12. All the neighbors supposed her to be a widow.
13. Her father would not consent to her living alone in a big city.
14. Can you spare me a few minutes of your valuable time?
15. It is important to go to school regularly.
16. We must give the encyclopedia back to them.
17. The trouble is (hat we are short of money.
18. No one heard John leave the house.
19. We are waiting for John to arrive.
20. The bus knocked him down.

10.

- | | |
|--------------------|-----------------|
| 1. she does help | 3. you do look |
| 2. it did cost | 4. it does stop |
| 5. I did go | 8. I did enjoy |
| 6. they do quarrel | 9. I do worry |
| 7. he does care | 10. she did see |

11.

1. It isn't expensive to buy a CompeX computer.
2. It's very simple to use a computer.
3. It isn't difficult to understand the handbook.
4. It's easy to run any kind of software.
5. It's absolutely fascinating to explore the world of CompeX.
6. Are you ready to try the ultimate computer experience?
7. It isn't safe to play on ladders.
8. It was silly to make such a fuss.

12.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. I service it myself | 6. We decorated it ourselves. |
| 2. She painted them herself. | 7. He types them himself. |
| 3. He cleans them himself. | 8. I develop them myself. |
| 4. I bake it myself. | 9. She makes them herself. |
| 5. They grow them themselves. | 10. We cut it ourselves. |

13.

1. What kept me awake was Rachel's stereo.
2. What Vicky is looking for is a job in television.
3. What I want to do is (to) make a fresh start.
4. What you must pay attention to are the details.
5. What they did was (to) book a holiday together.
6. What you have to think about is your profit.
7. What you must know are the needs of your customers.
8. What made me happy was your news.
9. What you should work towards is a realistic target.
10. What you need to do is (to) plan ahead.

14.

1. It was Marconi who invented radio.
2. It was in 1492 that Columbus sailed to America.
3. It's golf that Tiger Woods plays.
4. It was in Greece that the Olympic Games first took place.
5. It's Mercury that is nearest the sun.
6. It was A. G. Eiffel who designed the Eiffel Tower.
7. It was the structure of DNA that was discovered by Crick and Watson.
8. It were the Ancient Egyptians who built the Pyramids.

9. It's Mount Everest that is the highest mountain in the world.
10. It was John F. Kennedy who was the 35th President of the US.

15.

1. Do bring another chair.
2. Don't you be silly.
3. Do send me a copy of your catalogue,
4. Don't you make so much noise.
5. Do be quiet.
6. Don't you lean out of the window.
7. Do forgive me.
8. Don't you do that again or you'll be in trouble.
9. Do give me a hand.
10. Don't you tell anybody what happened.

16.

1. Ted himself broke the news to me./ The person who broke the news to me was Ted./ It was Ted who broke the news to me.
2. It is important to know your limitations.
3. It is money, not affection that they want.
4. He did misunderstand my intentions.
5. It was after she had gone that I remembered her name.
6. I did do my English test very well.
7. Does Mary herself wash up every day?
8. It was from Francis that she first heard the news.
9. It is pilots, not ground staff that we need. .
10. It is better to be early.
11. It was Peter who lent us money, not Paul./ The person who lent us money was Peter, not Paul.
12. We found it's impossible to get a visa.
13. It was on Thursday that Mike's uncle died./ The day when Mike's uncle died was Thursday.
14. Bad roads don't cause accidents. Speed itself does./ It is speed, not bad roads that cause accidents.
15. It is cruel to tease animals.
16. I do love you; I myself love you; It's you that I love.
17. It was England that won the World Cup in 1966.
18. We did enjoy ourselves.
19. It is unlikely that income tax will be reduced.
20. It is in the Fall that the countryside is most beautiful.
21. It was Ann, not Mary (that) I saw.
22. Do remember to lock the door before you leave.
23. I think it's not a good idea to take up Yoga.

24. It was kind of him to help me.
25. Do visit us again some time.
26. Don't you make too much noise.
27. I did do my English test very well.
28. It's chocolate cake (that) I'm eating./ What I'm eating is chocolate cake.
29. David himself teaches in a Technical College./ It's David who teaches.../
David is the person who teaches...
30. Don't you let me wait so long.

17

1. Only by training hard can you become a good athlete.
2. Not a single word did my grandfather say during his dinner with us.
3. Not only did he spend all his money but he also borrowed some from me.
4. No sooner had he left the office than the telephone rang.
5. Hardly had I put the phone down when the boss rang back.
6. Not until the bell rang did he finish his work.
7. Under the table was lying a sleeping dog.
8. Rarely had his brother been more excited.
9. Only after several months did we begin to see the symptoms of the disease
10. Never have I seen anyone in my life drink as much as you.

18.

1. Not only was Tony late, but he had left all his books behind.
2. No sooner had I gone to bed than someone rang my doorbell.
3. Seldom have I stayed in a worse hotel.
4. Never have I heard such nonsense.
5. Only then did I realise that I had lost my keys.
6. Rarely has the economic situation been worse.
7. Not once did the manager offer us an apology.
8. Under no circumstances should you send money to us by post.
9. Only after seeing Hamlet on the stage did I understand it.
10. Little did the embassy staff realise that Ted was a secret agent.

Chương 14. CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN (CONDITIONAL SENTENCES)

1.

- | | |
|----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. we're, will be | 10. had. I'd give |
| 2. lived, we'd see | 11. had come, would have enjoyed |
| 3. take, we'll arrive | 12. I'd known, would have sent |
| 4. don't hurry, we'll be | 13. helped, might be |
| 5. were, would be able to | 14. had scored, could have won |
| 6. don't wear, you'll feel | 15. wore, wouldn't get |

556

7. studied, would get

8. had, I'd ride

9. lend. I'll let

16. had phoned, would have given

17. took, might feel

18. had driven, wouldn't have crashed

2.

1. would

3. would

5. Would

7. would

9. would

2. unless

4. Unless

6. Would

8. If

10. unless

3.

1. He'll help

2. You'll make

3. had crossed

4. you've drunk

5. worked

6. will be

7. I would have called/I'd have called

8. would notice

9. you wouldn't mind

10. I could drive

11. I could have let

12. it might stan

13. you won't get

14. I didn't agree

15. I might not have been listening /
I wouldn't have been listening

16. had, 'd be able

17. take, 'll feel ate.

18. ate, would live

19. became, 'd buy

20. leave, will give

21. follow, 'll come

22. used, wouldn't be

23. touch, won't bite

24. leave, 'll give

25. owned, wouldn't visit

4.

1. had left early, wouldn't have missed

2. 'd bought more milk, would have had

3. 'd taken/'d remembered to take a map, wouldn't have got lost

4. 'd gone to bed, would have woken up

5. had made a shopping list. Wouldn't have forgotten to buy/would have remembered to buy

6. 'd realized you were tired, I wouldn't have asked you to go

7. had sailed across the Atlantic, would have reached

8. 'd turned left at the station, wouldn't have lost

5.

1. I could take a photo.

2. If they had bought a group ticket,

3. I'm going to be angry.

4. If you could have gone to the concert,

5. if anyone approaches the house.

6. and you'll regret it.

7. If anything should go wrong, goes wrong,

8. it would take longer.

9. if they know you can pay it back.

10. I would have refused.
11. Had we delayed any longer, delayed any longer
12. it will burst into flames.

6.

1. I wouldn't have got wet if I'd had an umbrella with me.
2. Unless you leave me alone, I'll call the police.
3. If it's snowing, we don't go to school.
4. If Jack hadn't helped me, I wouldn't have been able to move the table.
5. If you make me some coffee, I'll give you one of my biscuits.
6. Unless you'd told me about Sue's hair, I wouldn't have noticed.
7. Should you see Peter, tell him to be here at 8.00.
8. If you were to ask me to marry you, I wouldn't accept!
9. If I were you, I'd see a doctor.
10. Unless you ask him, he won't help you.
11. If you don't take your medicine, you won't get better.
12. If you use a dictionary, you won't make any spelling mistakes.
13. Don't park here, or/otherwise/or else you'll be fined #20.
14. If I was/were you, I would confess my crime.
15. If she hadn't been exhausted, she wouldn't have gone home early.
16. If you don't finish the book, you won't understand the story.
17. Unless she promises to be back early, she can't go out.
18. Provided (that) you stay still, the bee won't sting you.

7.

- | | |
|------------------------|--|
| 1. stops, press | 11. had told, would have helped |
| 2. treated, would be | 12. hadn't stolen, wouldn't be |
| 3. help, will | 13. hadn't driven, wouldn't have crashed |
| 4. leaves, will | 14. smoked, wouldn't feel |
| 5. is, will go | 15. hadn't fallen, would have won |
| 6. find, will get | 16. had invited, would have been able |
| 7. take, will lose | 17. had come, would have noticed |
| 8. I'd be, lived | 18. would you feel, offered |
| 9. did, would play | 19. lent, would pay |
| 10. phone, will you be | 20. caught, would throw |

8.

- | | |
|---------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. we'll miss | 6. she would have watched |
| 2. I'll watch | 7. will / is going to be |
| 3. I record | 8. did |
| 4. we wouldn't keep | 9. she won't mind/ she wouldn't mind |
| 5. I'd thought | 10. there's (going to be) |

9.

558

1. You don't get there in time unless you hurry.
2. We can't do the job unless we get help.
3. You can't allowed into the club you're member.
4. I don't like fish. I wouldn't eat it unless I was extremely hungry.
5. Don't leave the TV on unless you are watching it.
6. The doctor won't see you today unless it's an emergency.
7. I wouldn't have bought the picture unless I liked it.
8. You can't get a driver's license unless you are at least eighteen years old.
9. I'm not going to the party unless you go with me.
10. The dog won't attack you unless you move suddenly.

10.

- | | | | | |
|---------------|------------|-------------|---------------|-------------|
| 1. if | 3. unless | 5. unless | 7. when | 9. if |
| 2. as long as | 4. in case | 6. provided | 8. so long as | 10. in case |

11.

1. Unless you leave me alone, I'll call the police.
2. If it's snowing, we don't go to school.
3. If you press this button, the machine stops.
4. If you make me some coffee, I'll give you one of my biscuits.
5. If you see Peter, tell him to be here at 8.00.
6. Should the news turn out to be true, I'll sell my shares at once.
7. Unless he passes the final examination, he won't be able to graduate.
8. If you persist in defying instructions, we'll be forced to act.
9. Unless you leave an address, we will not be able to contact you.
10. Provided that you save some money, you will be able to buy a car.
11. If I'd had an umbrella with me, I wouldn't have got wet.
12. If Jack hadn't helped me, I wouldn't have been able to move the table.
13. Unless you'd told me about Sue's hair, I wouldn't have noticed.
14. If only we hadn't eaten all the food.
15. I wish I had gone to university.
16. If only I had bought that car.
17. I wish I had realized how cheap it was.
18. If the policeman hadn't showed me the way, I wouldn't have found the house.
19. Had I gone to the party, I'd have met Melanie.
20. Had you asked (him), he would have lent you his violin.

12.

- | | | | | |
|------|------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. D | 6. C | 10. A | 14. C | 18. A |
| 2. D | 7. C | 11. D | 15. D | 19. B |
| 3. C | 8. B | 12. A | 16. B | 20. D |
| 4. B | 9. D | 13. B | 17. C | |

Chương 15. LỜI NÓI GIÁN TIẾP (INDIRECT SPEECH)

1.

- | | | | |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. told | 6. told | 11. said | 16. speak |
| 2. said | 7. told | 12. asked | 17. said |
| 3. asked | 8. asked | 13. told | 18. tell |
| 4. talked | 9. talked | 14. said | 19. say |
| 5. said | 10. told | 15. tell | 20. speak |

2.

1. She said that she had finished all her work.
2. She asked him why he was looking at her like that.
3. His mother told him not to play with matches.
4. He said (that) he had forgotten to bring his lunch with him.
5. She asked her husband if/whether he would be home soon.
6. Father told the children to go to bed.
7. Tim told his father (that) he would clean the car the following/next day/the day after.
8. Gary asked his wife where she had been.
9. He told me (that) he had been working for the same company since 1960.
10. She asked me if/whether I knew Garfield.

3.

1. She asked how she should tell Tom the bad news.
2. He said (that) I must/had to try his home-made pie.
3. He asked if/whether he could go home then.
4. He asked her if he might call her by her first name.
5. She told him (that) he could go in but he mustn't make any noise.
6. He asked what time they would arrive in London. (information)
7. He said (that) she must/had to try harder if she wanted to succeed.
8. She said (that) her father would be angry with her if he found out.
9. He told her (that) she ought not to drive so fast.
10. He said (that) they didn't have to go if they didn't feel like it.
11. She told him (that) he had better speak to the manager.
12. He told her (that) he might not be able to meet her at the airport.

4.

1. advise – He advised me to go to bed.
2. beg - He begged her not to leave him.
3. order/command - He ordered/commanded them to do it immediately.
4. deny - He denied killing/having killed him/that he had killed him.
5. agree - He agreed to do the washing-up.
6. remind - He reminded me to take the dog out.
7. order/command - He ordered/commanded everybody to stand up immediately.

560

8. refuse - He refused to give them/me his money.
9. ask - She asked if she could use my phone.
10. apologise - He apologised for shouting/having shouted at me.
11. threaten - She threatened to punish him/us if he/we didn't behave. /She threatened that she would punish him/us if he/we didn't behave.
12. admit - He admitted stealing/having stolen the book./He admitted that he had stolen the book.
13. explain - He explained that it only worked if you pressed the green button.
14. agree - He agreed that it was a brilliant film.
15. complain - She complained that she had been feeling dizzy all day.
16. promise - She promised to write to me/that she would write to me.
17. offer - He offered to give me/us a lift home.
18. suggest - She suggested going/that we (should) go for a swim.
19. accuse - He accused me of breaking/having broken the TV.
20. advise - He advised me to tell them the truth.

5.

1. I asked Peter what time the film started.
2. The interviewer asked Chris if he watched television every evening.
3. The sales manager asked me why I had applied for the job.
4. My bank manager wanted to know if I was taking much money with me to France.
5. Maria asked the examiner when she would know the results of the examination.
6. The flight attendant asked me If I was enjoying my flight.
7. I asked the salesman how the photocopier worked.
8. Sue asked Paul if he had ever been to Japan.

6.

1. Do you think you could tell me what time the nex boat leaves?
2. Can you tell me where I can change some money?
3. Could you possibly tell me where the toilet is?
4. I'd like to know how much this pullover costs?
5. Can you explain how I get to Victoria station?
6. Could you tell me if this train goes to Gatwick Airport?
7. Would you mind telling me where you come from?
8. Do you think you could tell me what you think of London?

7.

1. Henry denied stealing the car.
2. She asked if she might have a piece of cake.
3. He agreed to tell him about the accident.
4. The boss insisted on having the report by the following day/the next day.
5. Sue begged her mother to let her go to the party.

6. Ted promised his father never to be naughty again. / Ted promised his father that he would never be naughty again.
7. The sergeant commanded/ordered the soldier to stand up straight.
8. He admitted robbing/having robbed the bank/that he had robbed the bank.
9. She explained to her boss that she hadn't come to work because she had been ill.
10. He suggested playing chess/that they (should) play chess.
11. He apologised to her for forgetting/having forgotten to phone her.
12. She reminded him to go to the bank.
13. The doctor advised him to relax more.
14. She complained that Mark was always shouting at her.
15. He agreed that it was a nice dress.
16. He offered to carry Tracy's bag.
17. Bill refused to do Graham's homework.
18. He accused her of scratching/having scratched his record.
19. She threatened to phone the police if the salesman didn't leave immediately.
20. She agreed to lend/that she would lend Tom her car.
21. He admitted breaking/having broken/that he had broken the window.
22. She promised to phone/that she would phone me as soon as she arrived.
23. She agreed that she was beautiful.
24. She refused to marry John.
25. He threatened to shoot the prisoner if he tried to escape.
26. He suggested having chicken for dinner.
27. She insisted on Mr Harrison's signing/that Mr Harrison (should) sign the contract.
28. He threatened to punish the boy if he did that again.
29. She offered to show me how to use the/that computer.
30. He agreed that it was a good idea.

8.

1. Paul reminded Sue to buy some bread.
2. I doubt if/whether it will snow tomorrow.
3. Jill apologised for not phoning me earlier.
4. Brenda agreed to share the bill with Dave.
5. Catherine refused to work on Saturday.
6. Wendy suggested going out to the cafe for lunch.
7. Larry denied ever having been arrested.
8. Ann offered to help Bob do the decorating.
9. Tom promised the children that he would take them to the park on Sunday.
10. William advised Chris to see a doctor.

9.

- | | | | | |
|--------|---------|---------|----------|----------|
| 1. it | 4. √ | 7. me | 10. √ | 13. was |
| 2. to | 5. were | 8. √ | 11. were | 14. that |
| 3. had | 6. had | 9. them | 12. √ | 15. √ |

10.

1. The doctor advised me to take more exercise.
2. He complained to his mother that the film was boring.
3. She begged her mother to let her go out to play.
4. He offered to carry her shopping (for her).
5. She warned Jane not to get dirty in the garden.
6. Tim refused to tidy Helen's bedroom.
7. He denied having eaten/eating the cake.
8. She exclaimed that that was a silly thing to say.
9. She insisted on his getting his hair cut.
10. She accused him of breaking/having broken her record player.
11. She apologised for not writing/having written to him.
12. He suggested going to Jamaica for their holiday./He suggested that they (should) go to Jamaica for their holiday.
13. The sales assistant agreed that it was a nice colour.
14. She told her she preferred to watch/watching a film rather than the news.
15. She exclaimed that he was very rude.
16. She advised him to go on a diet.
17. She denied taking/having taken her sister's dress.
18. He exclaimed that it was a nice gift.
19. The boy threatened to hit his brother if he didn't stop talking.
20. He apologised to his mother for speaking/having spoken to her like that.

11.

1. He asked what time the next bus left because he needed to get to the station.
2. She warned them not to go swimming in the lake because/as the water was filthy.
3. She suggested going shopping the next day as/because/explaining that the sales had started.
4. The teacher ordered the pupils to stand up because/as the headmaster was coming.
5. She begged him not to take her ring, explaining that it had been/was a present.
6. Martin's mother told him it was very late and asked him where he had been.
7. He offered to cook the dinner, adding that she looked very tired.
8. She asked him to stop making that noise, explaining that she couldn't concentrate.
9. She admitted (to) dropping the vase while she was/had been cleaning the shelf.
10. She asked if she could use the car because/as/explaining that she needed to run some errands.
11. He apologised for being late, explaining that the car wouldn't start.
12. She asked him why he was teasing his sister, reminding him that it made her unhappy.

- ThichTiengAnh.Com - Website chia sẻ đề thi, tài liệu Tiếng Anh hay, mới nhất
13. He asked her why she wouldn't go to the party, adding that everyone would love to see her.
 14. He accused Rob of breaking/having broken the window because/explaining that he was/had been kicking the football.

Chương 16. CÂU BỊ ĐỘNG (PASSIVE SENTENCES)

1.

- | | |
|------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. cut | 11. hasn't been finished |
| 2. taken | 12. were arrested |
| 3. sent | 13. had been born |
| 4. serviced | 14. will be cancelled |
| 5. broken | 15. had stopped |
| 6. offered | 16. were you told |
| 7. were you born | 17. were swimming |
| 8. repaired | 18. was ridden |
| 9. was given | 19. had vanished |
| 10. was made | 20. will be asked |

2.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. has already been sold | 6. has since been discovered |
| 2. was knocked down | 7. was announced |
| 3. was John given/will John be given | 8. have been asked |
| 4. was not discovered | 9. was written |
| 5. are dealt with/will be dealt with | 10. being invited |

3.

1. The Acropolis was built by the ancient Greeks.
2. The company report is being written by Martin this year.
3. The room will be cleaned tomorrow.
4. Fresh flowers are put in the hotel rooms every day.
5. Your flight may be delayed by bad weather.
6. Sandy was given a present./ A present was given to Sandy.
7. The President is thought to be dying. / It is thought that the President is dying.
8. She was made to cry.
9. The car has been repaired.
10. The building was destroyed by the bomb.
11. A cure for cancer might be discovered.
12. The old woman should be helped across the street.
13. The escaped prisoner might have been arrested.
14. More food should have been provided at the reception.

15. The public ought to be warned about him.
16. More bus lanes should be built.
17. The answers could have been written more clearly.
18. The casino has been dosed.
19. The match has been postponed.
20. English is spoken all over the world.
21. The new swimming-pool has been opened.
22. This purse was left in the classroom yesterday.
23. Traffic has been banned from the city centre.
24. A new government has been elected.
25. The flat was broken into last week.

4.

1. ... was give a watch when he retired./... was given to him when he retired.
2. ... has been offered the job./... has been offered to him.
3.will be sent a fax./... will be sent to you.
4. am going to be shown a new technique./... is going to be shown to me.
5. ... was given a book./... was given to her.
6. ... are given extra lessons./... are given to the students.
7. ... has been shown the plans for the house./... have been shown to her.
8. ... should have been sent a receipt./... should have been sent to you.

5.

1. ... is expected to win./ It is expected that he will win.
2. ... has been reported to be ill./... has been reported that the President is ill.
3. ... is known to have been untrue./... is known that the statement was untrue.
4. ... is believed to be changing./... is believed that the climate is changing.
5. ... is known to have been in prison./... is known that he has been in prison.
6. ... are said to be too high./... is said that the new prices are too high.
7. ... is claimed to be the largest in the world./... is claimed that this diamond is the largest in the world.

6.

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------|
| 1. aren't respected. | 7. will be broadcast on Sunday. |
| 2. is cutting the grass. | 8. was torn / had been torn. |
| 3. is going to be repaired. | 9. has to be done |
| 4. was lost / had been lost. | 10. is being looked into. |
| 5. the mistakes been corrected? | 11. are just laughed at. |
| 6. should have locked the door behind us. | 12. must have been delayed. |

7.

1. The team members were told to work together.
2. The old man was found wandering around the streets.
3. The workers have been persuaded to accept lower wages.

4. Two young men were seen fighting.
5. The victims have been advised (by their lawyers) to take legal action.
6. The children were made to pick up all the litter.
7. The woman was caught smuggling cigarettes into the country.
8. The refugees aren't allowed to/won't be allowed to get a job.
9. \$50,000 was/were spent (on) decorating the ballroom.
10. You were warned not to drive so fast.

8.

1. It is rumoured that the company is in difficulties.
2. It was believed that the Emperor was a god.
3. It was reported that the fighting had just begun.
4. It will be shown that poverty is increasing.
5. It is estimated that 200 people were killed by the pollution.
6. It was agreed that wages would be raised by five per cent.
7. It has been decided that the project will have to be cancelled.
8. It was suggested that the tickets should cost five pounds.

9.

1. Paul has had his jacket cleaned.
2. Angela is having her flat decorated.
3. Lisa had her car damaged last week.
Also possible: Lisa's car got damaged (by vandals) last week.
4. My friends had a house built (for them).
5. I really must get my homework finished/done soon.
6. Mark has had his credit card withdrawn (by the bank).
7. Where did Tom have/get his hair cut?
8. We had our house painted last month.
9. I am having my hair cut this afternoon.
10. I have had my motorbike stolen.
11. Ricky has had all his teeth taken out.
12. I haven't had my car washed for a long time.
13. We are having the new central heating put in on Saturday.
14. Harry had his nose broken in a fight.
15. Isn't it time you had your television fixed?

10.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. marketing manager was appointed | 6. to get your hair |
| 2. is being supplied with furniture | 7. were being followed by the |
| 3. was built by | 8. has not been seen since |
| 4. has been decided | 9. about the trip was put |
| 5. is believed that Jenkins was | 10. is thought to be good |

11.

1. Freddie is said to have a wife in Scotland.
2. Nothing is known about Brenda's family.
3. The fire is thought to have been started deliberately./It is thought that the fire was started deliberately.
4. You should have that cut seen to by a doctor.
5. Chris is said to have been in the army.
6. I must have my trousers pressed before I leave.
7. This letter has not been signed.
8. Mary hasn't had her hair cut yet.

12.

- | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. were sold | 9. seemed |
| 2. applied | 10. is ... admired |
| 3. were promised | 11. is said to be |
| 4. were spent | 12. have been preserved/are preserved |
| 5. had to be approved | 13. is now used/is now being used |
| 6. had ... renovated | 14. can be visited |
| 7. created | 15. are asked not to come |
| 8. to do | 16. being disturbed |

13.

1. shows *Also possible*: has shown
2. are being driven *Also possible*: are driven
3. have been increasing/have increased
4. were made
5. include/included *Also possible*: have included
6. can be heard
7. do ... have to be used
8. are ... carried
9. is still increasing
10. starts/is starting
11. stay/are staying
12. must be tackled
13. can be driven
14. is ... done/is ... being done/has ... been done
15. has paid
16. is needed
17. will not be ignored/ are not ignored.

14.

1. Ten foreign passports are known to have been confiscated by customs officials last week.

2. Most small corner shops are said to be losing business.
3. Tax increases are expected to be announced in tomorrow's budget.
4. The Crown Prince was thought at first / was at first thought to have been attacked.
5. Inner-city crime rates are known to be increasing.
6. The star's wife is said to have had at least two face-lifts.
7. The Princess is rumoured to be in hiding in Scotland.
8. Nine crew members are feared to have been lost overboard.
9. His speech was considered (to be/to have been) one of the best.
10. It can't be denied that we made certain mistakes early on.
11. A man was reported to have been helping police with their interview.
12. It was alleged that the accused had committed fraud.

15.

- | | | | | |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. A | 6. D | 11. B | 16. D | 21. D |
| 2. C | 7. B | 12. C | 17. B | 22. A |
| 3. A | 8. C | 13. B | 18. A | 23. A |
| 4. B | 9. C | 14. A | 19. B | 24. B |
| 5. A | 10. B | 15. A | 20. B | 25. B |

Chương 17. Sự diễn tả về số lượng (EXPRESSION OF QUANTITY)

1.

- | | | | | |
|---------|---------------|--------|---------|-------------|
| 1. any | 3. any - some | 5. any | 7. some | 9. any/some |
| 2. some | 4. some | 6. any | 8. any | 10. any |

2.

- | | |
|---------------------|--|
| 1. any – some | 6. anyone/ anybody – some |
| 2. some – anything | 7. somewhere |
| 3. someone – any | 8. something – anyone/ some |
| 4. anyone – any | 9. something – anything – something – anything |
| 5. something - some | 10. anywhere |

3.

- | | | |
|------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1. a lot of | 4. many | 7. many |
| 2. a lot of | 5. a lot of | 8. many/ a lot of |
| 3. many/a lot of | 6. much/ a lot of | 9. much |

4.

- | | | |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1. a little | 4. little | 7. little |
| 2. Few | 5. a little | 8. a few |
| 3. few | 6. a few | 9. a little |
| | | 10. a few |

5.

- | | | |
|-----------|---------|-----------|
| 1. many | 4. much | 6. few |
| 2. much | 5. many | 7. little |
| 3. little | | |

6.

- | | | |
|--------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. much | 8. any | 15. a great deal of |
| 2. little | 9. many – a lot | 16. A large number of |
| 3. much | 10. How much | 17. a lot of – many |
| 4. many | 11. somebody – anybody | 18. a few |
| 5. less | 12. a little | 19. only a few |
| 6. too much | 13. a lot of | 20. How many |
| 7. some – a little | 14. few | |

7.

- | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------|
| 1. plants | 6. of a chicken |
| 2. of my friends | 7. accidents |
| 3. of my life | 8. birds |
| 4. European countries | 9. of these clothes |
| 5. of that food | 10. cars |

8.

- | | |
|---------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. All milk | 5. most of the money |
| 2. most of the time | 6. All cars |
| 3. most people | 7. All fruit/ Most fruit |
| 4. No student | 8. all (of) the lights |

9.

- | | | | | |
|----------|----------------|----------|----------|----------|
| 1. each | 3. Each/ Every | 5. Each | 7. every | 9. Every |
| 2. every | 4. Every | 6. every | 8. each | 10. each |

10.

- | | |
|----------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. few | 11. much |
| 2. None of | 12. much – a lot of/a little |
| 3. Some of | 13. many |
| 4. a few of/ some of | 14. much |
| 5. Most | 15. most of |
| 6. a little | 16. little – a lot of/ a little |
| 7. any – much | 17. each |
| 8. little | 18. all of – any of |
| 9. all of/ most of | 19. many – much |
| 10. none of | 20. half (of)-all of – any of |

11.

- | | | | |
|-------------|------------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. many | 5. none of the | 9. somebody | 13. no |
| 2. anything | 6. them | 10. somewhere | 14. anywhere |
| 3. All | 7. every morning | 11. little | 15. the whole |
| 4. both | 8. Neither of | 12. a few | 16. nothing |

12.

- | | | | |
|------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. B | 6. D | 11. A | 16. D |
| 2. C | 7. D | 12. C | 17. B |
| 3. B | 8. B | 13. D | 18. C |
| 4. C | 9. C | 14. C | 19. D |
| 5. B | 10. C | 15. D | 20. A |

Chương 18. TỪ VỰNG (WORD STUDY)

C. THÀNH NGỮ (IDOMATIC EXPRESSIONS)

1.

- | | |
|------------------|---------------------|
| 1. uninteresting | 5. disappears |
| 2. disadvantage | 6. unemployed |
| 3. unfortunately | 7. disagree |
| 4. impatient | 8. misunderstanding |

2.

- | | | | |
|--------------|--------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. overslept | 3. overcoat | 5. rewrite | 7. renew |
| 2. underwear | 4. outplayed | 6. overcooked | 8. underpaid |

3.

- | | | |
|---------------|------------------|--------------|
| 1. friendship | 5. teenager | 8. handful |
| 2. foreigner | 6. spoonful | 9. machinery |
| 3. childhood | 7. neighbourhood | 10. booklet |
| 4. stewardess | | |

4.

- | | | |
|------------------|----------------|-------------------|
| 1. inhabitants | 5. refusal | 9. cooker |
| 2. boredom | 6. actor | 10. advertisement |
| 3. building | 7. employee | |
| 4. accommodation | 8. imagination | |

5.

- | | | | | |
|-----------------|---------------|-----------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. shortness | 3. darkness | 5. tiredness | 7. happiness | 9. thinness |
| 2. friendliness | 4. loneliness | 6. thoroughness | 8. silliness | 10. sickness |

6.

- | | | | | |
|-------------|----------------|------------|------------|--------------|
| 1. unlikely | 3. impossible | 5. useful | 7. sleepy | 9. cheerful |
| 2. shortage | 4. photography | 6. dislike | 8. unusual | 10. kindness |

7.

- | | |
|------------------|-------------------|
| 1. unusually | 6. thoroughly |
| 2. surprisingly | 7. awfully |
| 3. Interestingly | 8. unsuccessfully |
| 4. successfully | 9. unnecessarily |
| 5. beautifully | 10. obviously |

8.

- | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1. uncomfortable | 6. unselfish |
| 2. independent | 7. unhealthy |
| 3. reusable | 8. uncontrollable |
| 4. disappointment | 9. unshrinkable |
| 5. relationship | 10. inexperienced |

9.

- | | | |
|------------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. overwork | 5. ex-wife | 8. unable |
| 2. invisible | 6. misleading | 9. non-stop |
| 3. subway | 7. semi-final | 10. disappeared |
| 4. autobiography | | |

10.

- | | |
|------------------|----------------|
| 1. neighbourhood | 6. greenish |
| 2. employer | 7. partnership |
| 3. widen | 8. drinkable |
| 4. handful | 9. equality |
| 5. hopeless | 10. harmful |

11.

- | | |
|----------------|------------------|
| 1. inedible | 6. mountaineer |
| 2. youngster | 7. tricycle |
| 3. semi-circle | 8. hopeful |
| 4. friendly | 9. international |
| 5. foreground | 10. artist |

12.

- | | |
|------------------|-------------------|
| 1. kind-hearted | 6. good-looking |
| 2. empty-handed | 7. loud-mouthed |
| 3. fully-clothed | 8. short-tempered |
| 4. long-legged | 9. dog-eared |
| 5. absent-minded | |

13.

- | | | | | |
|--------------|-------------|--------------|-------------|--------------|
| 1. diagnosis | 3. analysis | 5. failure | 7. emphasis | 9. paralysis |
| 2. enclosure | 4. hypnosis | 6. signature | 8. seizure | 10. closure |

14.

- | | | |
|-------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. delivery | 5. discovery | 9. conspiracy |
| 2. injury | 6. prosperity | 10. expiry |
| 3. forgery | 7. Assembly | 11. enquiry |
| 4. recovery | 8. apology | |

15.

- | | | |
|-------------------|----------------|------------------|
| 1. correspondence | 6. reference | 11. offence |
| 2. defence | 7. dependence | 12. coincidence |
| 3. obedience | 8. existence | 13. interference |
| 4. preference | 9. insistence | 14. residence |
| 5. pretence | 10. difference | |

16.

- | | | |
|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1. performance | 5. disturbance | 9. entrance |
| 2. attendance | 6. insurance | 10. resistance |
| 3. resemblance | 7. assistance | 11. endurance |
| 4. acceptance | 8. annoyance | 12. avoidance |

17.

- | | | |
|--------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1. dismissal | 5. approval | 9. survival |
| 2. burial | 6. rehearsal | 10. denial |
| 3. arrival | 7. trial | 11. refusal |
| 4. Renewal | 8. proposal | 12. removal |

18.

- | | | |
|-------------|-------------|---------------|
| 1. storage | 5. postage | 8. usage |
| 2. passage | 6. wreckage | 9. breakage |
| 3. marriage | 7. leakage | 10. shrinkage |
| 4. stoppage | | |

19.

- | | | |
|---------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1. persuasion | 4. Admission | 7. inclusion |
| 2. division | 5. explosion | 8. exclusion |
| 3. expansion | 6. revision | 9. conclusion |

20.

- | | |
|------------------|------------------|
| 1. arrangement | 5. improvement |
| 2. enlargement | 6. encouragement |
| 3. entertainment | 7. advertisement |
| 4. postponement | |

21.

- | | |
|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. competition | 6. introduction |
| 2. pronunciation | 7. acquisition |
| 3. qualification | 8. revolution |
| 4. Production | 9. repetition |
| 5. solution | 10. reduction |

22.

- | | |
|----------------------------|---------------|
| 1. interruption | 6. addiction |
| 2. prediction ... election | 7. Protection |
| 3. reaction | 8. suggestion |
| 4. Prevention | 9. selection |
| 5. invention | |

23.

- | | | |
|-----------------|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. comfortable | 18. visitor | 35. careful |
| 2. dangerous | 19. economist | 36. departure |
| 3. dirty | 20. comedian | 37. healthy |
| 4. famous | 21. owner | 38. reporter |
| 5. national | 22. receptionist | 39. scholarly |
| 6. foolish | 23. liar | 40. trainee |
| 7. southern | 24. director | 41. industrious |
| 8. friendly | 25. sensible | 42. competitors |
| 9. sensible | 26. application | 43. inhabitants |
| 10. fashionable | 27. personal | 44. alcoholic |
| 11. powerful | 28. approval | 45. singers |
| 12. foggy | 29. juicy | 46. useful |
| 13. foreigner | 30. decision | 47. grammatical |
| 14. inventor | 31. various | 48. cloudy |
| 15. leader | 32. Photography | 49. unkind |
| 16. novelist | 33. sleepy | 50. incorrect |
| 17. operator | 34. arrangement | |

D. VĂN PHONG (STYLES)

1.

1. He didn't intend to make along journey with her.
2. Has the city government decided to build....?
3. She isn't interested in what she...
4. Do most school-leavers strongly desire to work...
5. I don't think they disagree with what...
6. The plan didn't succeed just because most members weren't determined to do it well.

7. During the lesson, she always looks carefully at all the sentences...
8. My friend wished to become a pilot.
9. You needn't answer all the questions...
10. Please call me when you arrive, and we'll meet at a...
11. She doesn't know what will be because she never thinks about it.
12. She said she would visit me someday.
13. He decided to leave home.
14. I didn't intend to stay here.
15. She is greatly interested in music.
16. The two schoolgirls exchanged their English lessons.
17. He bathes every morning.
18. I arranged with the neighbors...
19. She didn't explain her plan.
20. She was examined by a doctor.

2.

1. I had an argument with the referee about his decision.
2. Are you in agreement with John about this?
3. She usually gives her hair a brush before going out.
4. She had a number of complaints about his rudeness.
5. Because of engine trouble, the plane had to make a land on the fields.
6. Take a look at this picture.
7. I'm in love with her.
8. We must make an early start.
9. He was in receipt of her letter of the 10th,
10. After lunch time she usually takes a rest.

3.

1. They tend to minimize problems.
2. They strongly desire to put aside ...
3. They gave a lot of thought to their work.
4. They knew little about the job of their choice.
5. They are determined to overcome problems.
6. He pays us a visit whenever he's in town.
7. They have tended to choose well-paid jobs.
8. Millions of dollars are spent on advertising every year.
9. You'd better not contact her.
10. I had a good sleep last night.
11. Carol Stuart is a good cooker and swimmer.
12. She strongly desires for a scholarship.
13. The villagers cordially welcomed us.
14. He doesn't intend to leave the city.
15. She is a good English teacher.

16. They have to do this job at once.
17. She is a careful typist.
18. Hardly had we begun our walk when it rained.
19. This woman sleeps very little.
20. My grandfather loves music.
21. He drives carefully.
22. She is a good singer.
23. They have made all the arrangements.
24. No one in his team plays football as well as him.
25. She is a good tennis player.
26. English is spoken in Australia.
27. A hospital is being built for the poor.
28. She hasn't been seen since 1980.
29. His parents were visited by him last week.
30. We had a decision to go to Boston.

**Phụ lục. BẢNG LIỆT KÊ CÁC ĐỘNG TỪ BẤT QUY TẮC.
(LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS)**

Present	Past	Past Participle	Meaning
abide	abode	abode	<i>chờ đợi, giữ gìn</i>
arise	arose	arisen	<i>nổi dậy, nổi lên</i>
awake	awoke	awoken	<i>đánh thức, tỉnh</i>
backbite	backbit	backbitten	<i>nói xấu, nói lén</i>
backslide	backslid	backslid	<i>tái phạm, lại xa ngã</i>
be	was/were	been	<i>thì, là, ở</i>
bear	bore	born	<i>sinh</i>
bear	bore	born	<i>mang, chịu</i>
beat	beat	beaten	<i>đập, đánh</i>
become	became	become	<i>trở nên</i>
befall	befell	befallen	<i>xảy tới</i>
beget	begot	begotten	<i>gây ra, sinh ra</i>
begin	began	begun	<i>bắt đầu</i>
behold	beheld	beheld	<i>nhìn, ngắm</i>
bend	bent	bent	<i>cúi xuống, uốn cong</i>
bereave	bereft	bereft	<i>đoạt cướp</i>
beseech	besought	besought	<i>nài, van xin</i>
beset	beset	beset	<i>nhốt, vây</i>
bet	bet	bet	<i>đánh cuộc (cá)</i>
bestride	bestrode	bestridden	<i>ngồi, đứng giàng</i>

betake	betook	betaken	<i>đi dần thân vào</i>
bethink	bethought	bethought	<i>nghĩ, nhớ lại</i>
bid	bid, bade	bid (den)	<i>đặt giá</i>
bind	bound	bound	<i>làm dính vào</i>
bite	bit	bitten	<i>cắn</i>
bleed	bled	bled	<i>(làm) chảy máu</i>
blend	blended	blended	<i>hợp nhau</i>
bless	blessed	blest	<i>ban phước</i>
blow	blew	blown	<i>thổi</i>
break	broke	broken	<i>đập vỡ</i>
breed	bred	bred	<i>nuôi dạy</i>
bring	brought	brought	<i>mang, đem</i>
broadcast	broadcast	broadcast	<i>truyền thanh</i>
browbeat	browbeat	browbeat (en)	<i>đọa nạt</i>
build	built	built	<i>xây dựng</i>
burst	burst	burst	<i>nổ</i>
buy	bought	bought	<i>mua</i>
cast	cast	cast	<i>liệng, ném</i>
catch	caught	caught	<i>bắt được</i>
chide	chid, chided	chid (den), chided	<i>rầy máng</i>
choose	chose	chosen	<i>chọn lựa</i>
cleave	clove	cleft, cloven	<i>bám víu vào</i>
cling	clung	clung	<i>bám, giữ lấy</i>
clothe	clothed	clothed	<i>mặc (quần áo)</i>
come	came	come	<i>đến</i>
cost	cost	cost	<i>trị giá</i>
creep	crept	crept	<i>bò, leo</i>
crow	crowed, crew	crowed	<i>gáy, gà gáy</i>
cut	cut	cut	<i>cắt</i>
dare	dared	dared	<i>dám</i>
deal	dealt	dealt	<i>giao thiệp</i>
dig	dug	dug	<i>đào</i>
do	did	done	<i>làm</i>
draw	drew	drawn	<i>rút vé</i>
dream	dreamed, dreamt	dreamed, dreamt	<i>mơ, mộng</i>
drink	drank	drunk	<i>uống</i>
drive	drove	driven	<i>lái xe</i>
dwell	dwelt	dwelt	<i>ở, trú ngụ</i>
eat	ate	eaten	<i>ăn</i>
fall	fell	fallen	<i>rơi, ngã</i>
feed	fed	fed	<i>nuôi</i>
feel	felt	felt	<i>cảm thấy</i>
fight	fought	fought	<i>chiến đấu</i>

find	found	found	<i>tìm ra</i>
flee	fled	fled	<i>tẩu thoát, chạy</i>
fling	flung	flung	<i>ném, liệng</i>
fly	flew	flown	<i>bay</i>
forbear	forbore	forborne	<i>kiêng</i>
forbid	forbade	forbidden	<i>cấm</i>
forego	forewent	foregone	<i>bỏ, chừa</i>
foreknow	foreknew	foreknown	<i>biết trước</i>
foresee	foresaw	foreseen	<i>thấy trước</i>
foretell	foretold	foretold	<i>nói trước</i>
forget	forgot	forgotten	<i>quên</i>
forgive	forgave	forgiven	<i>tha thứ</i>
forsake	forswore	forsaken	<i>bỏ</i>
forswear	forsore	forsworn	<i>thề bỏ</i>
freeze	froze	frozen	<i>đông lại</i>
gainsay	gainsaid	gainsaid	<i>chối, cãi</i>
get	got	gotten	<i>được, trở nên</i>
gild	gilded, gilt	gilded, gilt	<i>mạ vàng</i>
gird	girt	girt	<i>cuốn thắt</i>
give	gave	given	<i>cho</i>
go	went	gone	<i>đi</i>
grind	ground	ground	<i>nghiền xay</i>
grow	grew	grown	<i>mọc, trồng</i>
hamstring	hamstrung, hamstringed	hamstrung hamstrunged	<i>cắt gân cho què</i>
hang	hung	hung	<i>treo</i>
hang	hanged	hanged	<i>treo cổ</i>
have	had	had	<i>có</i>
hear	heard	heard	<i>nghe</i>
heave	-ed, hove	-ed, hove	<i>nâng lên</i>
hew	hewed	-ed, hewn	<i>đốn chặt</i>
hide	hid	hidden	<i>ẩn, trốn</i>
hit	hit	hit	<i>dụng, đập</i>
hold	held	held	<i>cầm, giữ</i>
hurt	hurt	hurt	<i>(làm) đau</i>
inlay	inlaid	inlaid	<i>khảm, dát</i>
keep	kept	kept	<i>cầm, giữ</i>
kneel	knelt	knelt	<i>quỳ gối</i>
knit	knit (ted)	knit (ted)	<i> đan</i>
know	knew	known	<i>biết</i>
lade	laded	laded, laden	<i>chất lên tàu</i>
lay	laid	laid	<i>đặt, để, để</i>
lead	led	led	<i>dẫn, đưa đến</i>

lean	leaned, leant	leaned, leant	<i>dựa vào</i>
leap	leaped, leapt	leaped, leapt	<i>nhảy</i>
learn	learned, earnt	learned, learnt	<i>học</i>
leave	left	left	<i>ra đi, bỏ</i>
lend	lent	lent	<i>cho mượn</i>
let	let	let	<i>để, cho</i>
lie	lay	lain	<i>nằm</i>
light	lit, lighted	lit, lighted	<i>thắp sáng</i>
lose	lost	lost	<i>mất</i>
make	made	made	<i>làm, chế tạo</i>
mean	meant	meant	<i>ý muốn nói</i>
meet	met	met	<i>gặp</i>
misdeal	misdealt	misdealt	<i>chia bài sai</i>
misgive	misgave	misgiven	<i>gây lo âu</i>
mislay	mislaid	mislaid	<i>để lại sai</i>
mislead	misled	misled	<i>làm lạc đường</i>
mistake	mistook	mistaken	<i>phạm sai lầm</i>
misunderstand	misunderstood	misunderstood	<i>hiểu lầm</i>
mow	mowed	mowed, mown	<i>xén, cắt</i>
outbid	outbade	outbid (den)	<i>trả giá cao hơn</i>
outdo	outdid	outdone	<i>làm quá</i>
outgo	outwent	outgone	<i>đi quá</i>
outgrow	outgrew	outgrown	<i>lớn hơn</i>
outride	outrode	outridden	<i>cưỡi đi trước</i>
outrun	outran	outrun	<i>chạy trước</i>
outshine	outshone	outshone	<i>sáng hơn</i>
outspread	outspread	outspread	<i>căng rộng ra</i>
outwear	outwore	outworn	<i>bền hơn</i>
overbear	overbore	overborn (e)	<i>để xuống, đàn áp</i>
overcast	overcast	overcast	<i>làm u ám</i>
overcome	overcame	overcome	<i>thắng, chế ngự</i>
overdo	overdid	overdone	<i>làm quá</i>
overdraw	overdrew	overdrawn	<i>rút quá số tiền có trong ngân hàng</i>
overeate	overate	overeaten	<i>ăn quá</i>
overfeed	overfed	overfed	<i>cho ăn quá</i>
overgrow	overgrew	overgrown	<i>mọc nhiều quá</i>
overhang	overhung	overhung	<i>treo lơ lửng</i>
overhear	overheard	overheard	<i>vô tình nghe</i>
overlay	overlaid	overlaid	<i>phủ lên</i>
overlie	overlay	overlain	<i>đặt nằm trên</i>
overleap	overleapt	overleapt	<i>nhảy qua</i>
overpay	overpaid	overpaid	<i>trả quá</i>

override	overrode	overridden	<i>gạt ra một bên</i>
overrun	overran	overrun	<i>tràn qua</i>
oversee	oversaw	overseen	<i>quan sát</i>
overset	overset	overset	<i>(lật) đổ nhào</i>
overshoot	overshot	overshot	<i>bắn trượt qua</i>
oversleep	overslept	overslept	<i>ngủ quá</i>
overtake	overtook	overtaken	<i>vượt qua</i>
overthrow	overthrew	overthrown	<i>phá đổ</i>
partake	partook	partaken	<i>tham gia, dự phần</i>
pay	paid	paid	<i>trả tiền</i>
put	put	put	<i>đặt, để</i>
quit	quit	quit	<i>bỏ</i>
read	read	read	<i>đọc</i>
steal	stole	stolen	<i>ăn cắp, ăn trộm</i>
stick	stuck	stuck	<i>gắn, dính</i>
sting	stung	stung	<i>chích, đốt</i>
stink	stank	sunk	<i>bốc mùi hôi</i>
strew	strewed	-ed, strewn	<i>ri, ri lên</i>
stride	strode	stridden	<i>bước dài</i>
strike	struck	struck	<i>đánh đập</i>
string	strung	strung	<i>cột dây</i>
strive	strove	striven	<i>cố gắng</i>
swear	swore	sworn	<i>thề thốt</i>
sweep	swept	swept	<i>quét</i>
swell	swelled	swollen	<i>sưng, phù lên</i>
swim	swam	swum	<i>bơi lội</i>
swing	swung	swung	<i>đánh đu</i>
take	took	taken	<i>lấy, đem, dẫn</i>
teach	taught	taught	<i>dạy học</i>
tear	tore	torn	<i>xé rách</i>
tell	told	told	<i>nói, kể, bảo</i>
think	thought	thought	<i>nghĩ, tưởng</i>
thrive	thrived, throve	thrived	<i>thịnh vượng</i>
throw	threw	thrown	<i>liệng, ném</i>
thrust	thrust	thrown	<i>đẩy mạnh, đâm</i>
tread	trod	thrust	<i>chà đạp, giẫm</i>
unbend	unbent	trod (den)	<i>uốn thẳng, thẳng ra</i>
unbind	unbound	unbent	<i>mở, tháo ra</i>
underbid	underbid	unbound	<i>bỏ thầu thấp hơn</i>
undergo	underwent	underbid (den)	<i>chịu, trải qua</i>
undersell	undersold	undergone	<i>bán rẻ hơn</i>
understand	understood	undersold	<i>hiểu biết</i>
undertake	undertook	understood, undertaken	<i>đồng ý thực hiện</i>

underwrite	underwrote	underwritten	<i>ký xác nhận ở dưới</i>
undo	undid	undone	<i>tháo, cởi</i>
upset	upset	upset	<i>lật, làm đổ</i>
wake	waked, woke	waked, woken	<i>(đánh) thức</i>
waylay	waylaid	waylaid	<i>chờ, rình</i>
wear	wore	worn	<i>mặc, đội, mang</i>
weave	wove	woven	<i>dệt, kết lại</i>
wed	wedded	wedded, wed	<i>kết hôn</i>
weep	wept	wept	<i>khóc</i>
win	won	won	<i>thắng, được</i>
wind	wound	wound	<i>quanh co, uốn khúc</i>
withdraw	withdrew	withdrawn	<i>rút ra, kéo ra</i>
withhold	withheld	withheld	<i>rút lại, kiềm chế</i>
withstand	withstood	withstood	<i>chống, kháng cự</i>
wring	wrung	wrung	<i>ép, vắt</i>
write	wrote	written	<i>viết</i>
rebuild	rebuilt	rebuilt	<i>xây lại</i>
recast	recast	recast	<i>đúc lại</i>
relay	relaid	relaid	<i>đặt lại</i>
rend	rent	rent	<i>xé nát</i>
repay	repaid	repaid	<i>hoàn trả lại</i>
reset	rest	reset	<i>đặt lại, lắp lại</i>
retell	retold	retold	<i>kể lại</i>
rid	rid	rid	<i>giải thoát</i>
ride	rode	ridden	<i>đi xe ..., cưỡi</i>
ring	rang	rung	<i>rung (chuông)</i>
rise	rose	risen	<i>mọc, nổi lên</i>
rive	rived	rived, riven	<i>bổ, xẻ, bửa</i>
rot	rotted	rotten	<i>ri, mục, thối</i>
run	ran	run	<i>chạy</i>
saw	sawed	sawed, sawn	<i>cưa, xẻ</i>
say	said	said	<i>nói</i>
see	saw	seen	<i>trông thấy</i>
seek	sought	sought	<i>tìm</i>
sell	sold	sold	<i>bán</i>
send	sent	sent	<i>gửi</i>
set	set	set	<i>lặn (mặt trời)</i>
sew	sewed	sewn	<i>may, khâu</i>
shake	shook	shaken	<i>lắc</i>
shear	-ed, shored	-ed, shorn	<i>cắt bằng kéo</i>
shed	shed	shed	<i>làm đổ, chảy</i>
shine	shone	shone	<i>chiếu sáng</i>
shoe	shod	shod	<i>mang giày</i>

shoot	shot	shot	<i>bắn</i>
show	showed	showed/ shown	<i>chỉ cho xem</i>
shred	-ed, shred	-ed, shred	<i>xé vụn ra</i>
shrink	shrank	shunk	<i>co lại</i>
shrive	shrove	shrive	<i>giải tội, ngồi tòa</i>
shut	shut	shut	<i>đóng</i>
sing	sang	sung	<i>hát</i>
sink	sank	sunk	<i>chìm, đắm</i>
sit	sat	sat	<i>ngồi</i>
slay	slew	slain	<i>giết, sát hại</i>
sleep	slept	slept	<i>ngủ</i>
slide	slid	slid	<i>trơn trượt</i>
sling	slung	slung	<i>quăng, ném</i>
slink	slunk	slunk	<i>lén, chuồn</i>
slit	slit	slit	<i>rạch, khứa</i>
smell	smelt	smelt	<i>ngửi, bốc mùi</i>
smite	smote	smit (ten)	<i>đánh, đập</i>
sow	sowed	sown	<i>gieo hạt</i>
speak	spoke	spoken	<i>nói</i>
speed	sped	sped	<i>đi mau</i>
spell	spelt	spelt	<i>đánh vần</i>
sped	spent	spent	<i>tiêu, xài</i>
spill	spilt	spilt	<i>làm đổ</i>
spin	spun	spun	<i>quay tròn</i>
spit	spat	spat	<i>khạc, nhổ</i>
split	split	split	<i>chẻ, bửa</i>
spoil	spoilt	spoilt	<i>làm hư hỏng</i>
spread	spread	spread	<i>trải ra</i>
spring	sprang	sprung	<i>nảy, nhảy lên</i>
stand	stood	stood	<i>đứng, dựng</i>
stave	stove	staved	<i>bóp dẹp</i>

Sách được chia sẻ miễn phí tại thichtienganh.com

MỤC LỤC

Chương 1. DANH TỪ	3
I. Định nghĩa	3
II. Các loại danh từ	3
III. Chức năng của danh từ	15
IV. Sở hữu cách	16
V. Giống của danh từ	20
VI. Sự tương hợp giữa chủ ngữ và động từ	24
<i>Exercises</i>	30
Chương 2. ĐẠI TỪ	37
I. Định nghĩa	37
II. Các loại đại từ	37
<i>Exercises</i>	60
Chương 3. TÍNH TỪ	66
I. Định nghĩa	66
II. Các loại tính từ	66
III. Tính từ được phân loại theo vị trí	80
IV. Tính từ đơn và tính từ ghép	81
V. Phân từ dùng như tính từ	82
VI. Danh từ dùng như tính từ	83
VII. Vị trí của danh từ	84
VIII. Trật tự của tính từ đứng trước danh từ	86
IX. Tính từ được dùng như danh từ	87
<i>Exercises</i>	88
Chương 4. TRẠNG TỪ	94
I. Định nghĩa	94
II. Các loại trạng từ	94
III. Chức năng của trạng từ	100
IV. Vị trí của trạng từ	101
V. Phép đảo động từ sau các trạng từ	103
<i>Exercises</i>	104
Chương 5. SO SÁNH TÍNH TỪ VÀ TRẠNG TỪ	111

I. So sánh bằng	111
II. So sánh hơn	112
III. So sánh nhất	113
IV. Cách thêm <i>-es</i> và <i>-est</i> , <i>more</i> và <i>most</i>	114
V. Hình thức so sánh bất quy tắc	116
VI. Hình thức so sánh đặc biệt	117
VII. So sánh giống nhau	119
VIII. So sánh khác nhau	119
<i>Exercises</i>	120
Chương 6. ĐỘNG TỪ	127
I. Định nghĩa	127
II. Các loại động từ	127
III. Ngoại động từ và nội động từ	127
IV. Động từ quy tắc và bất quy tắc	128
V. Trợ động từ và động từ thường	129
<i>Exercises</i>	154
Chương 7. GIỚI TỪ	162
I. Định nghĩa	162
II. Vị trí của giới từ	162
III. Các loại giới từ	163
IV. Giới từ theo sau các tính từ, danh từ và động từ	176
<i>Exercises</i>	182
Chương 8. CỤM ĐỘNG TỪ	195
I. Định nghĩa	195
II. Nghĩa của cụm động từ	195
III. Cách dùng	195
IV. Một số cụm động từ thường dùng	197
<i>Exercises</i>	205
Chương 9. LIÊN TỪ	211
I. Định nghĩa	211
II. Các loại liên từ	211
<i>Exercises</i>	215
Chương 10. MẠO TỪ	220
I. Định nghĩa	220
II. Các loại mạo từ	220
<i>Exercises</i>	233
	583

Chương 11. THÌ	243
I. Thì hiện tại đơn	243
II. Thì hiện tại tiếp diễn	245
III. Thì hiện tại hoàn thành	249
IV. Thì hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn	253
V. Thì quá khứ đơn	255
VI. Thì quá khứ tiếp diễn	258
VII. Thì quá khứ hoàn thành/tiền quá khứ	260
VIII. Quá khứ hoàn thành tiếp diễn	261
IX. Thì tương lai đơn	261
X. Thì tương lai tiếp diễn	265
XI. Thì tương lai hoàn thành	266
XII. Thì tương lai hoàn thành tiếp diễn	267
<i>Exercises</i>	268
Chương 12. MỆNH ĐỀ VÀ CỤM TỪ	300
A. Cụm từ và mệnh đề chỉ mục đích	300
<i>Exercises</i>	302
B. Cụm từ và mệnh đề chỉ kết quả	305
<i>Exercises</i>	307
C. Cụm từ và mệnh đề chỉ nguyên nhân hoặc lý do	310
<i>Exercises</i>	312
D. Cụm từ và mệnh đề chỉ sự tương phản	314
<i>Exercises</i>	316
E. As if, As though, It's high time, It's time, would rather	319
<i>Exercises</i>	322
F. Mệnh đề sau <i>wish</i> và <i>if only</i>	326
<i>Exercises</i>	328
G. Mệnh đề quan hệ	332
<i>Exercises</i>	342
Chương 13. CÂU	351
I. Định nghĩa	351
II. Phân loại câu	351
III. Chức năng và trật tự từ trong câu	364
IV. Trật tự của từ trong câu	366
V. Hình thức nhấn mạnh	375
VI. Sự đảo câu	378
<i>Exercises</i>	380
Chương 14. CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN	389

I. Các loại câu điều kiện	389
II. Thì của động từ trong câu điều kiện	389
III. Những cách khác để diễn tả điều kiện	395
IV. Những từ ngữ dùng với <i>if</i>	396
<i>Exercises</i>	397
Chương 15. LỜI NÓI GIÁN TIẾP	406
I. Lời nói trực tiếp và lời nói gián tiếp	406
II. Câu trần thuật trong lời nói gián tiếp	406
III. Câu hỏi trong lời nói gián tiếp	412
IV. Câu mệnh lệnh, câu yêu cầu, đề nghị, lời khuyên, v.v. trong lời nói gián tiếp	414
V. Câu cảm thán và câu trả lời Yes/No trong lời nói gián tiếp	417
VI. Các loại câu hỗn hợp trong lời nói gián tiếp	418
VII. Động từ giới thiệu trong lời nói trực tiếp và gián tiếp	419
<i>Exercises</i>	420
Chương 16. CÂU BỊ ĐỘNG	429
I. Câu chủ động và câu bị động	429
II. Cách chuyển sang câu bị động	430
III. Các cấu trúc bị động đặc biệt	432
IV. Những câu không thể chuyển sang bị động	438
V. Thể sai khiến	440
<i>Exercises</i>	441
Chương 17. SỰ DIỄN TẢ VỀ SỐ LƯỢNG	453
I. Some, any	453
II. Much, many, a lots of, a great deal of, a large number of	455
III. Few, a few, little, a little	457
IV. All, most, some, no, all of, most of, some of, none of	458
V. Every, each	459
<i>Exercises</i>	461
Chương 18. TỪ VỰNG HỌC	468
A. Cách thành lập từ	468
B. Hình thức của từ	476
C. Thành ngữ	481
<i>Exercises</i>	482
D. Văn phong	494
<i>Exercises</i>	497
KEYS	500
	585

NHÀ XUẤT BẢN VĂN HÓA - THÔNG TIN

43 LÒ ĐÚC, HÀ NỘI

GIẢI THÍCH NGỮ PHÁP TIẾNG ANH

TÁC GIẢ : TRẦN MẠNH TUỒNG

THÔNG TIN GÓP Ý GỬI THEO ĐỊA CHỈ

Email: tranmanhtuongenglishbook@yahoo.com

Chịu trách nhiệm xuất bản

LÊ TIẾN DŨNG

Biên tập: VŨ THANH VIỆT

Vẽ bìa : MINH TÂN

Trình bày : HẢI YẾN

LIÊN KẾT XUẤT BẢN:

NHÀ SÁCH MINH THẮNG

ĐỊA CHỈ: 808 ĐƯỜNG LÁNG - HÀ NỘI

ĐT:043.9997777 - FAX:046.2661133

Email: nhasachminhthang@yahoo.com

In số lượng 3.000 cuốn khổ 17 x 24 cm.

Tại Công ty TNHH văn hoá Minh Tân-NS Minh Thắng

Số ĐKKHXB: 15/7 - 2012/CXB/100/01-06/VHTT.

In xong và nộp lưu chiểu năm 2012.